MINISTRY OF EDUCATION

GHANA ASSOCIATION OF SCIENCE TEACHERS

(GAST)

Manufacturing Engineering

for Senior High Schools



Year 3

Isaac Appiah Mensah
Benjamin Asaaga

MINISTRY OF EDUCATION

GHANA ASSOCIATION OF SCIENCE TEACHERS

Manufacturing Engineering

for Senior High Schools

Year 2

Isaac Appiah Mensah
Benjamin Asaaga

Ghana Education Service (GES)

(GAST)



© Ministry of Education 2026

This publication is not for sale. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced without prior written permission from the Ministry of Education, Ghana.

Contents

FOREWORD.....iv

CLASSIFICATION AND APPLICATION OF ADVANCED MATERIALS.....1

Manufacturing Materials and Technologies.....2

Classification of Materials.....2

UNDERSTANDING MECHANICAL PROPERTIES AND FAILURE OF MATERIALS.....34

Manufacturing Materials and Technologies.....35

Properties of materials.....35

DRAWING PRINCIPLES FOR MANUFACTURING.....79

Design and Prototyping.....80

Design and drawing for manufacture.....80

RAPID PROTOTYPING TECHNOLOGIES AND APPLICATIONS.....129

Design and prototyping.....130

Rapid prototyping.....130

APPLICATIONS OF MACHINE TOOLS AND COMPUTER NUMERICALLY CONTROLLED MACHINES (CNC).....168

MANUFACTURING TOOLS, EQUIPMENT AND PROCESSES.....169

MANUFACTURING TOOLS AND EQUIPMENT.....169

PRINCIPLES OF MATERIAL REMOVAL PROCESSES AND APPLICATIONS OF THE CENTRE-LATHE MACHINE.....223

Manufacturing tools, equipment and processes.....224

Manufacturing processes.....224

SAFETY AND QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN MANUFACTURING.....262

Manufacturing tools, equipment and processes.....263

Safety, Quality and the Environment.....263

FOREWORD

Ghana's new Senior High School Curriculum aims to ensure that all learners achieve their potential by equipping them with 21st Century skills, knowledge, character qualities and shared Ghanaian values. This will prepare learners to live a responsible adult life, progress to further studies and enter the world of work. This is the first time that Ghana has developed a Senior High School Curriculum which focuses on national values, attempting to educate a generation of Ghanaian youth who are proud of our country and can contribute effectively to its development.

The Ministry of Education is proud to have overseen the production of these Learner Materials which can be used in class and for self-study and revision. These materials have been developed through a partnership between the Ghana Education Service, teacher unions (Ghana National Association of Teachers- GNAT, National Association of Graduate Teacher -NAGRAT and the Coalition of Concerned Teachers- CCT) and National Subject Associations. These materials are informative and of high quality because they have been written by teachers for teachers with the expert backing of each subject association.

I believe that, if used appropriately, these materials will go a long way to transforming our Senior High Schools and developing Ghana so that we become a proud, prosperous and values-driven nation where our people are our greatest national asset.

Haruna Iddrisu MP

Minister for Education



SECTION

1

CLASSIFICATION AND APPLICATION OF ADVANCED MATERIALS



Manufacturing Materials and Technologies

Classification of Materials

INTRODUCTION

This section talks about advanced materials and their role in manufacturing. You'll learn about different types of advanced materials like semiconductors (used in electronics), nanomaterials (tiny materials that enhance properties), smart materials (that react to changes), biomaterials (used in medical applications), and energy-saving materials. Understanding these materials is important because they can improve how products work, help create sustainable solutions, and push technology forward. This section will explain how these materials are classified and how semiconductors work. It connects what you learned in the earlier years with modern manufacturing technologies. By grasping these concepts, you'll see how material science plays a crucial role in the products we use every day.

KEY IDEAS

- Advanced materials are specially developed to outperform traditional options like steel or wood, addressing challenges such as energy efficiency, durability, and sustainable innovation in daily life and industry.
- Types of Advanced Materials include semiconductors (vital for electronics), nanomaterials (exceptional strength at tiny scales), smart materials (change properties with their environment), biomaterials (work safely with living systems), and energy-saving materials (reduce environmental impact).
- Semiconductors, such as silicon, are essential in devices like computers, solar panels, and LED lights. Their unique ability to control electricity enables miniaturised, energy-efficient innovations in modern electronics.
- Nanomaterials, invisible to the naked eye, bring remarkable strength and special functions. They are used in sports equipment, medicine delivery systems, scratch-resistant coatings, and lightweight components for vehicles and buildings.
- Smart materials respond to changes in heat, light, or pressure, enabling applications like self-healing concrete, shape-memory medical devices, and energy-saving smart windows which paves the way for safer, more efficient, and adaptive technologies

CLASSIFICATION OF ADVANCED MATERIALS

INTRODUCTION TO ADVANCED MATERIALS

Advanced materials are specially developed to perform better than traditional ones, such as steel, wood, or plastic. These materials are designed to solve modern challenges like saving energy, increasing durability, and enabling new technologies. They make products lighter, medical tools safer, and renewable energy systems more effective. Advanced materials are important for protecting the environment, driving innovation, and supporting economic growth.

Common examples include materials used in electronics (semiconductors), extremely tiny materials known as nanomaterials, smart materials that can change in response to their environment, special materials for use in medicine, and materials that help reduce energy use. In summary, advanced materials contribute to improving daily life and shaping a modern world.

SEMICONDUCTORS

Semiconductors are special materials, such as silicon, that can carry electricity, but not as well as metals like copper, and not as poorly as materials like rubber. These materials are very important because they are used to make things like computers, solar panels, and energy-saving lights. For example, the tiny chips inside phones and computers are made from semiconductors. Solar panels can turn sunlight into electricity because of semiconductors. They help technology become smaller and use less energy, making devices like smartwatches and medical tools possible. Semiconductors also help save energy; for example, LED bulbs made with semiconductors last longer and use less electricity than older types of bulbs. ***Figure 1.1*** shows a schematic diagram of inorganic semiconductors and amorphous oxide

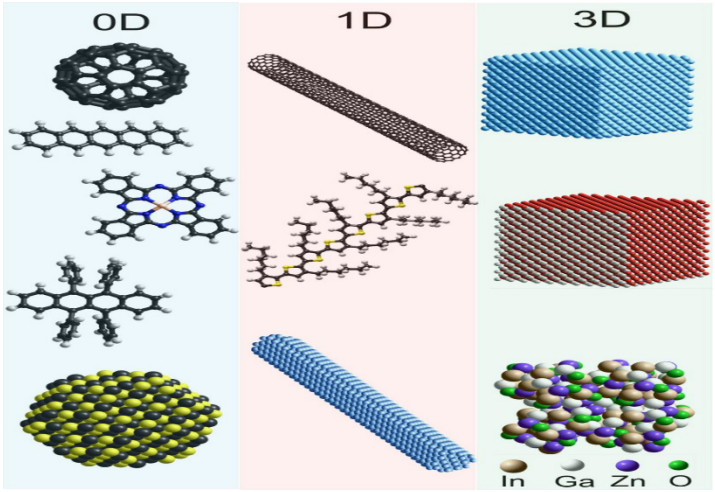


Figure 1.1: Schematic diagram of inorganic semiconductors and amorphous oxide (0D, 1D, and 3D semiconductor materials. 0D (top to bottom): fullerenes (C60), small organic molecules (pentacene, copper phthalocyanine, rubrene), and lead sulphide quantum dot. 1D: single-walled carbon nanotubes (SWCNTs), semiconducting conjugated polymers (poly 3-hexathiophene), and Si semiconductor nanowire. 3D: bulk inorganic semiconductors (Si, GaAs) and amorphous oxide semiconductors (IGZO)) (Jariwala et al., 2017)

NANOMATERIALS

Nanomaterials are materials so tiny that you cannot see them with your eyes; they are much smaller than a strand of your hair. Because they are so small, they have special abilities. For example, carbon nanotubes are very strong—about ten times stronger than steel—so they are used to make light but tough sports gear and parts for aeroplanes. Some nanomaterials are used as coatings on phone screens to stop them from getting scratched. In medicine, tiny particles can carry medicine directly to sick cells, helping patients feel better with fewer side effects. These materials help make things lighter, stronger, and more effective, improving many areas of life. Figure 1.2 shows examples of carbon-based nanomaterials.

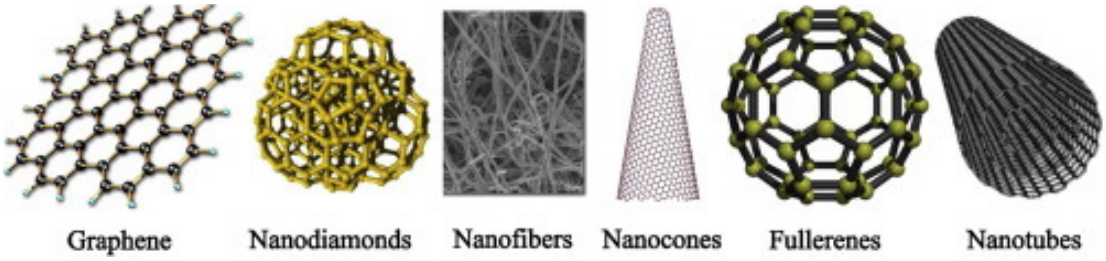


Figure 1.2: Carbon-based nanomaterials (Zhang et al., 2013)

SMART MATERIALS

Smart materials are special materials that change their properties when they are influenced by things like heat, light, or pressure. For example, shape-memory alloys, found in items like eyeglass frames and dental braces, can go back to their original shape when they are heated. Another type is piezoelectric materials, which produce electricity when they are bent or pressed. These materials are used in everyday items like lighters, certain types of shoes, and touchscreens. Electrochromic windows are another interesting development; they can automatically darken to block out sunlight, which helps keep buildings cool and saves on energy costs. Smart materials also improve safety and efficiency. For instance, self-healing concrete can fix its own cracks, which helps roads and bridges last longer. These materials are paving the way for exciting future innovations, such as clothing that can change based on the weather. Figure 1.3 displays an example of a smart material application (piezoelectric element) in a lighter.

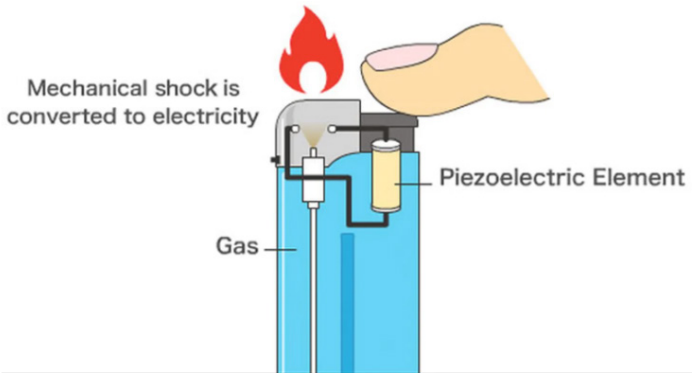


Figure 1.3: Piezoelectric element in a lighter (ElProCus, 2019)

BIOMATERIALS

Biomaterials are materials designed to work with living things, often for medical or environmental reasons. For example, titanium hip implants and special heart valves made from polymers help replace damaged body parts, making life better for patients. Some stitches dissolve on their own once a wound heals, so there's no need for a doctor to remove them later. Additionally, biodegradable plastics made from plants help reduce pollution. Some tiny particles, called nanoparticles, can go right after sick cells in the body without hurting the healthy ones. These new materials not only help save lives but also support a cleaner environment. Figure 1.4 shows some biomaterials used in the medical industry.

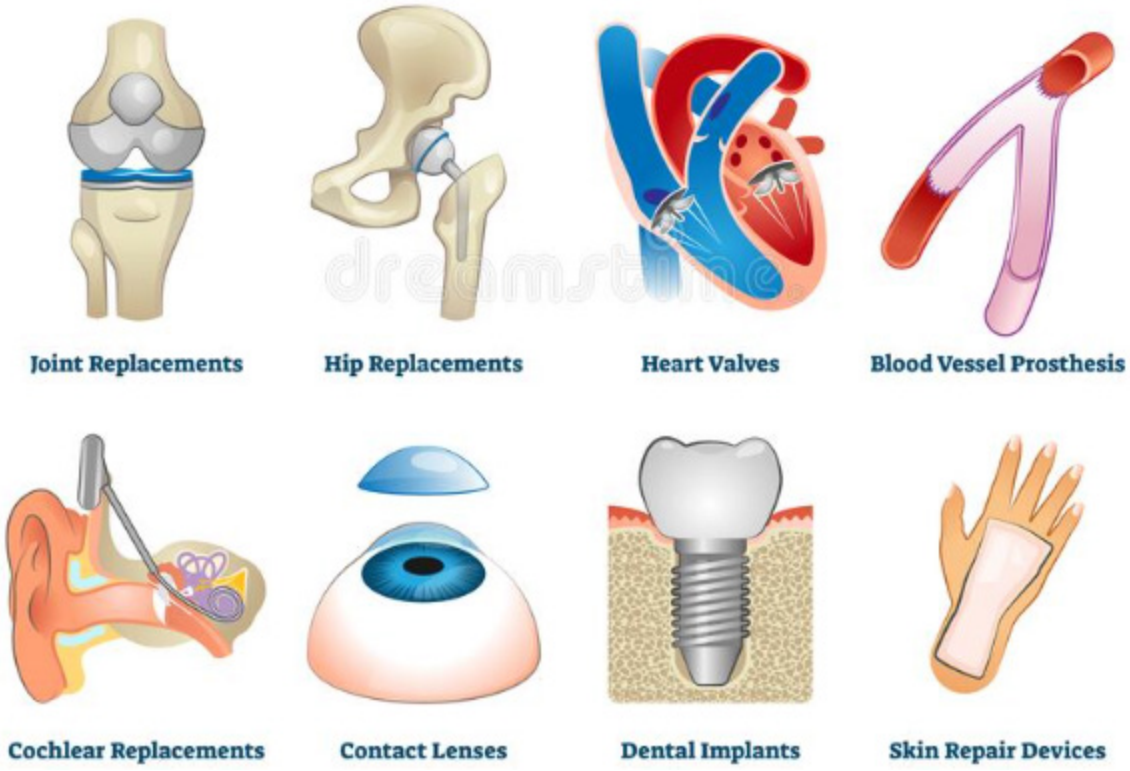


Figure 1.4: Sample biomaterials used in the medical industry (Neupane, 2022)

ENERGY-SAVING MATERIALS

Energy-saving materials help us use less energy in buildings, cars, and factories. For example, aerogels, which are very light and thin, act like great insulators to keep buildings warm while using very little material. This can help save on heating costs. Phase-change materials, like special wax found in walls, can absorb heat during the day and release it at night, which helps keep indoor temperatures steady. Another example is smart windows that can change how much light and heat come through them. They block heat during hot months and keep warmth inside during cold months, reducing the need for air conditioning. There are also materials like sodium acetate in heating pads that can create warmth by changing from liquid to solid (***Figure 1.5***). Using these energy-saving materials is important because they help decrease carbon emissions, which is good for the environment. For instance, lightweight materials used in wind turbine blades help produce more energy from wind.



Figure 1.5: Heating pad (Cadu, 2018)

IMPORTANCE OF ADVANCED MATERIALS IN MANUFACTURING

In today's fast-changing world of manufacturing, advanced materials are very important because they help make things better in many industries. These materials improve how products work and can lead to new inventions that we could not create before. By learning about advanced materials, you can understand how materials like semiconductors, composites, and smart materials are helping industries become more efficient, lighter, and cheaper. They also support innovation, help protect the environment, and make countries more competitive globally. Understanding these materials shows how crucial they are in modern manufacturing. This knowledge can encourage students to think about how these materials are used in real life, helping to appreciate the new ideas that strengthen our global economy (Callister & Rethwisch, 2020; Groover, 2012). Examples of advanced materials in manufacturing are shown in **Figure 1.6**.



Figure 1.6: Advanced materials in manufacturing (Monikh et al., 2022)

ENHANCED PERFORMANCE AND FUNCTIONALITY

Advanced materials are important for making products work better and do more things. These materials, like semiconductors and smart materials, help create devices that are faster, more reliable, and can handle complicated tasks. For example, semiconductors are key in electronics, allowing us to build better gadgets. Using advanced materials can also make products lighter and more efficient. For instance, materials like carbon fibre and composites help manufacturers create lighter items that use less energy. This is especially helpful in areas like cars and aeroplanes, making them easier to operate and more efficient.

COST SAVINGS AND RESOURCE EFFICIENCY

Advanced materials bring important benefits like saving money and being more efficient. When manufacturers use materials with better qualities, they create less waste and cut down on production costs. For example, new types of metals and ceramics can handle higher temperatures and pressures, making them last longer and needing less maintenance. These materials also encourage innovation, allowing companies to make unique products that stand out. By using new materials, they can create items with better looks or improved features, making their products more appealing in the market.

ENVIRONMENTAL SUSTAINABILITY

Environmental sustainability is a big concern in manufacturing today. Advanced materials play an important role in making production more eco-friendly. For example, biodegradable plastics and recycled materials help reduce waste and pollution. These materials not only help lessen the environmental impact but also cut down on the carbon footprint of making products. One of the benefits of advanced materials is their durability. Products made from these materials last longer and are more resistant to damage. This means they don't need to be replaced as often, which saves resources and helps protect the environment. Using advanced materials is a smart move for creating a more sustainable future in manufacturing.

TECHNOLOGICAL ADVANCEMENTS

New materials play a big role in technology. When we discover and improve these materials, we unlock new possibilities for inventions and applications. This progress is important for countries to stay competitive and take advantage of market opportunities. Nations that invest in research and development of advanced materials can become leaders in technology and sell innovative products around the world.

WEIGHT REDUCTION AND EFFICIENCY

Advanced materials like carbon fibre and composites play a big role in making products lighter and more efficient. This is especially important in industries like automotive and aerospace, where being lighter means using less energy. When companies use these materials, they can save money and use resources more wisely because these materials have better properties that lead to less waste and lower production costs. For example, advanced alloys and ceramics can handle higher temperatures and pressures,

meaning the parts made from them last longer and need less maintenance. Overall, using these materials helps create better and more cost-effective products.

INNOVATION AND PRODUCT DIFFERENTIATION

Innovative ideas and unique products come from using advanced materials. These materials help manufacturers make items that look better or work more effectively. When it comes to making things, caring for the environment is very important today. Using materials like biodegradable plastics and recycled materials helps reduce the negative effects of production on our planet. This approach supports sustainable practices, which means creating products in a way that is better for the Earth.

DURABILITY AND LONGEVITY

Durability and long lifespan are important qualities of modern materials. When materials last longer and resist damage better, we don't have to replace them often. This helps save resources. Also, as we discover and improve new materials, we can create new technologies and applications. This is very important for keeping up with the world and taking advantage of business opportunities.

GLOBAL COMPETITIVENESS AND MARKET OPPORTUNITIES

Using advanced materials in manufacturing is important for staying competitive in the global market and taking advantage of new opportunities. These materials, like semiconductors (used in electronics) and biomaterials (used in medicine), have special features that improve product quality and encourage new ideas. This helps companies stand out and reach different groups of customers. As people become more aware of environmental issues, using advanced materials that are eco-friendly can help companies attract eco-conscious buyers. Countries that invest in researching these materials often become leaders in technology, which can boost their economies by exporting high-tech products and working with other nations. In summary, advanced materials play a key role in encouraging innovation and helping businesses grow in today's global economy.

Activity 1.1 Material Classification Recap

Aim: To review and classify common engineering materials and relate them to the manufacturing of products.

Mode of Work

1. Independent or small group (2–4 learners)
2. Teacher assistance only for clarifying concepts.

Materials / Resources

- Year 1 and Year 2 Learner Manuals, textbooks or notes

- Examples of materials from home, school, or local market (e.g., aluminium pot, wooden stool, plastic bucket, ceramic tile)
- Notebook and pen

Instructions

3. Review your Year 1 and Year 2 Learner Manuals, notes or textbooks on material types and industrial applications.
4. Group common materials into categories (e.g., metals, ceramics, polymers, composites) found in your home, school, or local market (such as aluminium pots, wooden stools, plastic buckets, or ceramic tiles).
5. Group them by type and note their typical uses in Ghanaian manufacturing or daily life.
6. Draw a tree map that indicates the type of materials, their properties, importance and real-world applications in manufacturing.
7. Share your classification with peers and compare examples. Discuss similarities and differences in findings.

Note

Include your classification table and discussion notes in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 1.2 Advanced Materials Exploration

Aim: To explore advanced materials, their properties, and applications in local and global contexts.

Mode of Work

1. Individually or in a small group with 2 classmates
2. Teacher assistance for clarifying technical terms.

Materials / Resources: Internet access or textbook chapters on advanced materials, notebook and pen

Safety Note

1. Follow ICT lab rules when using computers.
2. Avoid unsafe or unrelated websites.

Instructions

1. Watch short videos or read textbook chapters on advanced materials (e.g., semiconductors, nanomaterials, smart materials, biomaterials, energy-saving materials).

Scan this QR code or use the links below to watch the video, some sample videos

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=hRTHyxl6C78	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=iMEl6GpTe5c
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=gUmDVe6C-BU	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=IkYimZBzguw
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=FP4L4VdeFAM	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ZtbI2KwKrjs

2. For each material type, note one key property and one local application (e.g., solar panels in Ghana, bioplastics in packaging).
3. Discuss with peers or write a short paragraph on how these materials are improving everyday products and industries.
4. Share your findings with peers and compare applications. Identify which materials have the most potential for Ghanaian industries.

Note

Include your notes and discussion summary in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 1.3 Case Study Comparison of Smart Materials

Aim: To compare the properties, applications, and industrial benefits of two smart materials.

Mode of Work

1. Independent
2. Teacher assistance for clarifying technical terms.

Materials / Resources: Library or internet access, notebook and pen

Safety Note

1. Follow ICT lab rules when using computers.
2. Follow library rules when using the library

Instructions

1. Select two smart materials (e.g., shape-memory alloys, piezoelectric materials).
2. Research each material's properties and industrial impact.
3. Create a comparison table showing:
   a. Properties
   b. Applications
   c. Industry benefits
4. Share your table with peers for feedback.
5. Present your table to the class or in small groups. Discuss which material has greater potential for Ghanaian industries.

Note

Include your comparison table and peer feedback notes in your Learner Portfolio

Activity 1.4 Sustainability in Manufacturing

Aim: To investigate eco-friendly advanced materials and their role in sustainable manufacturing.

Mode of Work

1. Independent or in pairs
2. Teacher assistance for accessing reliable resources.

Materials / Resources

- Internet or library access
- Poster paper or digital slide software, notebook and pen

Safety Note

1. Follow ICT lab rules when researching online.
2. If handling physical samples, use caution and follow safety guidelines.

Instructions

1. Investigate eco-friendly advanced materials (e.g., biodegradable plastics, recycled composites, energy-saving ceramics).
2. List their environmental benefits and how they reduce waste and pollution in manufacturing.
3. Discuss how these materials support sustainable practices in Ghana and globally.
4. Present your findings as a poster or digital slide. Engage in a Q&A session with peers.

Note

Include a copy or photo of your poster/slide and your written explanation in your Learner Portfolio.

THE STRUCTURE OF SEMICONDUCTORS

INTRODUCTION TO SEMICONDUCTORS

Semiconductors are materials that can conduct electricity, but not as well as metals, and not as poorly as insulators like rubber. This means they can control the flow of electricity, making them very important for modern electronics. You'll find semiconductors in everyday devices like smartphones, computers, solar panels, and LED lights. Unlike metals, which always let electricity flow easily, semiconductors can switch between allowing electricity to flow and blocking it. This ability is achieved by adding tiny amounts of other elements (a process called doping) or by changing the temperature, light, or electrical pressure applied to them. Silicon is the most commonly used semiconductor because it is abundant, stable, and can form strong, high-quality crystals. Other types include germanium and compound semiconductors like gallium arsenide, which are used in special devices like high-frequency equipment and lasers. Semiconductors are crucial for making important components such as diodes, transistors, and integrated circuits. These parts are the building blocks of all electronic systems we use today. Examples of everyday devices and equipment that use semiconductors are portrayed in ***Figure 1.7***.

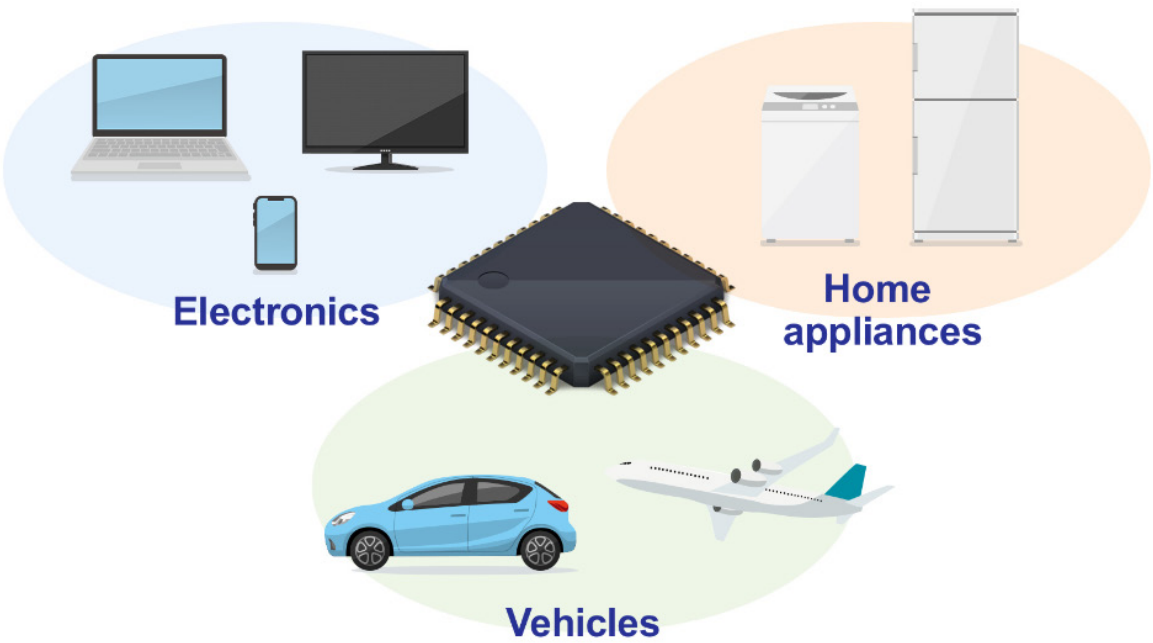


Figure 1.7: Examples of everyday devices that use semiconductors (AGC, 2024)

ATOMIC AND CRYSTAL STRUCTURE

Semiconductors are materials, such as silicon, that are essential to electronics. Their atomic structure is important for how they conduct electricity. Silicon has a special arrangement of atoms in a 3D pattern called a lattice, where each silicon atom bonds with four others, creating a stable structure (***Figure 1.8***). At low temperatures, electrons in silicon are tightly bound and cannot move, so the material does not conduct electricity. However, when heat or energy is added, some electrons can break free from their bonds. This movement of electrons creates "free charges," which allows electricity to flow. The quality of the silicon crystal is crucial. Even small defects or impurities can disturb the flow of electrons, negatively affecting how well the material works. Modern methods, like the Czochralski process, are used to create very pure silicon crystals for use in technology.

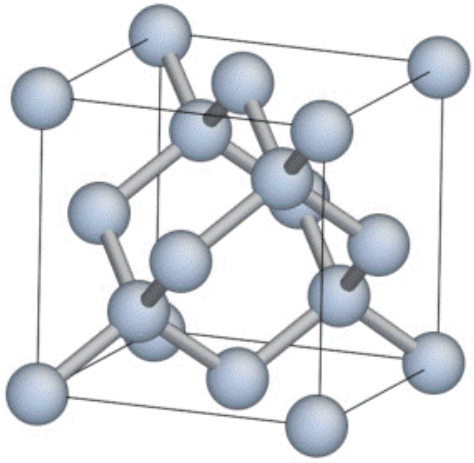


Figure 1.8: Diamond cubic crystal structure of silicon, with each atom bonded by four neighbouring atoms through covalent bonding (Wen et al., 2022)

DOPING AND IMPURITIES

Doping is a way to change the electrical properties of a semiconductor, which is a material used in electronics. It involves adding very small amounts of other elements to the semiconductor. For example, when phosphorus is added to silicon, it creates an n-type semiconductor. This happens because phosphorus has one extra electron compared to silicon, which helps conduct electricity better. On the other hand, when boron is added to silicon, it creates a p-type semiconductor. Here, boron has one less electron, which creates "holes" where electrons should be, acting like positive charge carriers. The combination of n-type and p-type materials is what makes essential electronic devices like diodes and transistors work. Generally, lightly doped semiconductors are used for most applications, but if too much doping occurs, they can act almost like conductors, which are materials that allow electricity to flow easily. By controlling the amount of doping, engineers can design electronic components with specific features, such as faster transistors for computers or sensors that can detect small changes in medical devices. An image of n-doped silicon with phosphorus and p-doped with boron is displayed in ***Figure 1.9***.

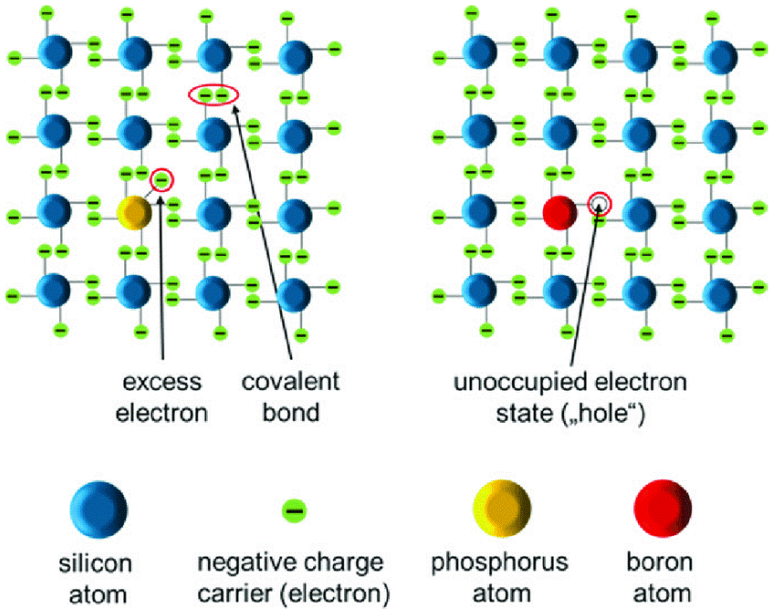


Figure 1.9: n-doped silicon with phosphorus (left) and p-doped with boron (right) (Buttgenbach, 2022)

BAND THEORY

Band theory helps explain how electrons behave in solids, particularly in materials known as semiconductors. In every material, electrons are arranged in energy levels called bands. The lower band, known as the valence band, has electrons that are tightly attached to atoms. The upper band, called the conduction band, has electrons that can move around freely and carry an electric current. The difference in energy between these two bands is called the band gap. This gap is what helps determine if a material is a conductor (like metals), a semiconductor (like silicon), or an insulator (like rubber). Semiconductors have a small band gap, which means that at room temperature, some electrons can move from the valence band to the conduction band, allowing them to conduct electricity ***(Figure 1.10)***. Doping is a process used to change the properties of semiconductors. By adding small amounts of other elements, we can create extra energy levels close to the conduction band or the valence band. For example, n-type doping introduces new levels just below the conduction band, making it easier for electrons to jump up and move freely. This process is essential for creating efficient electronic devices.

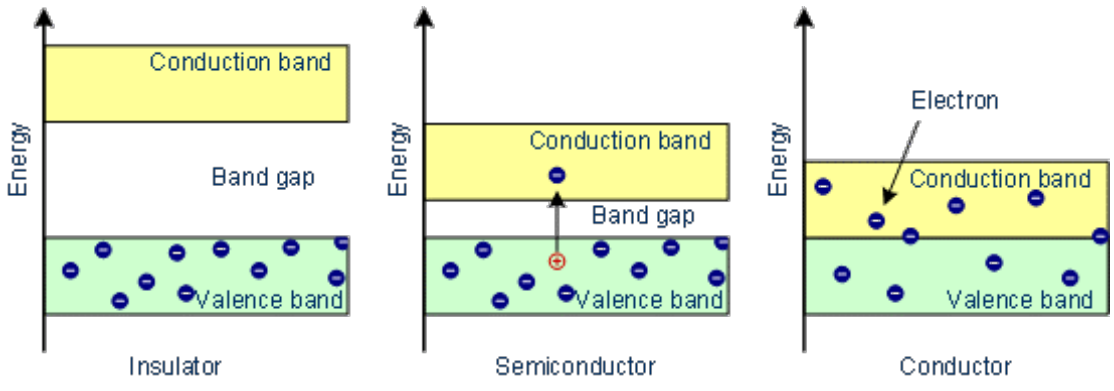


Figure 1.10: The band model for an insulator, semiconductor and conductor (Halbleiter, 2020)

TYPES AND PROPERTIES OF SEMICONDUCTORS

Semiconductors are materials that play a key role in electronics and can be grouped into three main types:

1. **Intrinsic Semiconductors**

These are pure materials like silicon or germanium. Their ability to conduct electricity changes with temperature. When the temperature increases, more electrons can move across the energy gap, which means better conductivity.

2. **Extrinsic Semiconductors**

These are made by adding small amounts of other elements to intrinsic semiconductors. This process, known as doping, creates two types: n-type and p-type. N-type semiconductors have extra electrons, making them useful in devices like solar cells where electron-rich areas are needed. P-type semiconductors, on the other hand, have "holes" (places where electrons can be) and are used in different applications.

3. **Compound Semiconductors**

These materials are made from combining elements from different groups in the periodic table, such as gallium arsenide (GaAs) or indium phosphide (InP). They often have better electron movement than silicon, making them suitable for high frequency uses like satellite communications and radar systems.

Some important characteristics of semiconductors include their sensitivity to temperature, how they respond to light (which is useful in devices like photodetectors), and their ability to emit light when electrons jump back into holes (as seen in LEDs). However, compound semiconductors tend to be more expensive and more challenging to produce than silicon.

RECENT ADVANCES AND EMERGING CONCEPTS

The semiconductor industry is changing quickly because of the need for faster, smaller, and more energy-saving devices. One exciting new material is gallium carbide (GaC), which is useful for powerful electronics and can work in extreme temperatures. There are also flexible semiconductors, like very thin silicon wires or organic materials, that can be used to create wearable medical sensors or bendable screens. Another technique called 3D chip stacking involves stacking layers of transistors on top of each other, making devices faster while taking up less space. Artificial intelligence (AI) is also making a big impact by helping to design semiconductors. Machine learning, a part of AI, can predict how new materials will perform, speeding up the research process. Additionally, there are educational tools like virtual labs that let students practice semiconductor manufacturing techniques, such as photolithography (a process to print patterns on chips) or etching (removing parts of the material). These advancements show how semiconductor engineering mixes different fields like physics, chemistry, and computer science.

Activity 1.5 Materials Classification Recap

Aim: To review and classify engineering materials by type, use and structure, and relate them to real-world applications.

Mode of Work

1. Independent or small group (2–4 learners)
2. Teacher assistance only for clarifying concepts.

Materials / Resources

- Engineering materials textbook or reliable online resource
- Notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Gather your textbook or visit a reliable online resource on engineering materials.
2. Review definitions and examples of metals, ceramics, and polymers.
3. List at least two examples for each category, noting their typical uses (e.g., metals for roofing sheets, polymers for water tanks).
4. Summarise how materials are classified by:
    a. Use (e.g., building, electronics)
    b. Structure (e.g., crystalline, amorphous)
5. Share your classification with peers and compare examples. Discuss any differences in classification.

Note

Include your classification table and summary in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 1.6 Atomic Structure Video Watch

Aim: To understand the atomic and crystal structures of metals, insulators, and semiconductors, and how structure affects conductivity.

Mode of Work

1. Independent or small group (2–3 learners)
2. Teacher assistance for clarifying technical terms.

Materials / Resources

- Internet access (e.g., YouTube)
- Notebook and pen

Safety Note

1. Follow ICT lab rules when using computers.
2. Avoid unsafe or unrelated websites.

Instructions

1. Search for an educational video on the atomic and crystal structures of metals, insulators, and semiconductors (e.g., "crystal structure of silicon explained").
2. Take brief notes on:
   a. How atoms are arranged in each material type
   b. How structure affects conductivity
3. Sketch a simple diagram showing the differences between the structures.
4. Discuss how the structure of semiconductors influences their real-world engineering applications.
5. Share your diagrams and notes with peers. Discuss how structure influences material properties.

Note

Include your notes and diagrams in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 1.7 Build a Crystal Model

Aim: To model the diamond cubic crystal structure of silicon and explain its effect on electrical behaviour.

Mode of Work

1. Independent or small group (2–3 learners)
2. Teacher supervision required if using sharp tools or fragile materials.

Materials / Resources

- Beads and toothpicks or a virtual modelling tool
- Camera or screenshot tool
- Notebook, pen, pencil, eraser, and pencil sharpener

Safety Note

1. Handle toothpicks or other pointed objects carefully.
2. Keep the workspace tidy to avoid accidents.

Instructions

1. Using beads and toothpicks (or a virtual modelling tool), build a 3D model of silicon's diamond cubic structure.

2. Show how each silicon atom bonds with four neighbours via covalent bonds.
3. Take a photo or screenshot of your model for your portfolio.
4. Write a short paragraph explaining how this structure affects electrical behaviour.
5. Select common semiconductor-based devices such as solar panels, microchips, and LEDs, and discuss how the atomic and electronic structure of semiconductors enables their function.
6. Each group then makes a short presentation summarising the structural relevance and application of semiconductors.
7. Display your model to peers and explain your findings. Compare models for accuracy.

Note

Include the photo/screenshot of your model and your written explanation in your Learner Portfolio.

APPLICATIONS OF ADVANCED MATERIALS

Advanced materials are specially designed to work better than regular materials. They have unique features, such as special electrical, mechanical, or chemical qualities, that make them ideal for modern industries. In manufacturing, these materials are changing how products are created and used, leading to stronger, lighter, smarter, and more environmentally friendly items.

ADVANCED MATERIALS USED IN MANUFACTURING

Four important types of advanced materials used in manufacturing include:

SEMICONDUCTORS

Used in electronics for controlling electrical flow. Real-world examples of semiconductors in action include:

1. Microchips found in computers and smartphones, which process information and manage device functions.
2. Solar panels that use silicon-based semiconductor cells to convert sunlight into electricity.
3. LEDs (Light Emitting Diodes) in televisions, torches, and traffic lights, which rely on semiconductors to emit light efficiently.
4. Transistors within amplifiers and radios, where they act as switches or signal boosters in electronic circuits.

5. Sensor systems in cars and industrial machinery, such as temperature or pressure sensors, that use semiconductors to detect and respond to environmental changes.

SMART MATERIALS

Can change their properties in response to their environment, like shape or colour. Real-world examples include:

1. Shape Memory Alloys (SMAs): Used in eyeglass frames and medical stents, these materials return to their original shape after being bent or deformed when exposed to heat.
2. Piezoelectric Materials: Found in sensors, actuators, and 3D printers, these materials generate electricity or change shape when subjected to mechanical stress.
3. Thermochromic Materials: Used in mood rings, battery indicators, and safety labels, these materials change colour depending on temperature.
4. Electrochromic Glass: Used in smart windows, this glass can change its tint in response to an electric current, helping control light and heat inside buildings.

BIOMATERIALS

Made from natural or synthetic materials and are safe to use in medical applications. Real-world examples include:

1. Titanium and its alloys: Commonly used in orthopaedic implants such as hip and knee replacements due to their strength, light weight, and compatibility with the human body.
2. Biodegradable polymers: Used for single-use medical items like sutures (stitches) and tissue scaffolds, which safely break down in the body after fulfilling their purpose.
3. Dental implants: Often manufactured from biocompatible materials such as titanium, ensuring they integrate safely with jawbone tissue.
4. Custom 3D-printed implants: Created using biomaterials tailored to the patient, improving fit and recovery outcomes.
5. Biodegradable packaging and cutlery: In some countries, plant-based biomaterials are used to produce eco-friendly food packaging and utensils, supporting sustainable manufacturing.

NANOMATERIALS

Extremely small materials that have special properties, used in various applications, including medicine and electronics. Real-world examples include:

1. Carbon nanotubes: Used to strengthen sports equipment such as tennis rackets and bicycle frames due to their outstanding strength and lightness.
2. Silver nanoparticles: Incorporated into wound dressings and plasters for their antibacterial properties, helping to prevent infections.

3. Quantum dots: Employed in modern TV screens and medical imaging for their ability to emit bright, precise colours when exposed to light.
4. Gold nanoparticles: Used in diagnostic tests, such as pregnancy kits and some rapid COVID-19 tests, as well as in targeted drug delivery in cancer treatments.
5. Nanoscale titanium dioxide: Commonly found in sunscreens and paints, providing transparent UV protection.
6. Graphene: Integrated into flexible electronics, sensors, and high-speed transistors owing to its exceptional electrical conductivity and strength.

APPLICATIONS OF SEMICONDUCTORS IN MANUFACTURING

Semiconductors are special materials that can either conduct electricity or block it, depending on how they are treated. This property makes them very important in making electronic devices and systems. In factories, semiconductors are used in various tools, like microcontrollers, sensors, and circuits that control machines. The production of semiconductors involves precise techniques like photolithography and doping, which are important for making these materials work correctly.

The main applications of semiconductors in manufacturing

1. Microcontrollers and sensors: Semiconductors are used to make microcontrollers and sensors that control machines and monitor processes in factories (Figure 1.11).
2. Control circuits: They form the basis of circuits that manage robotic arms, conveyor belts, and temperature regulation in automated systems.
3. Solar panels: Semiconductor materials like silicon are key components in solar cells that convert sunlight into electricity for renewable energy solutions.
4. Computer numerical control (CNC) machinery: Semiconductors operate the logic boards that run CNC machines, enabling precise cutting and shaping.
5. Precision manufacturing: The production of semiconductors involves advanced techniques such as photolithography and doping, which are essential for creating accurate and reliable electronic components used in manufacturing equipment.

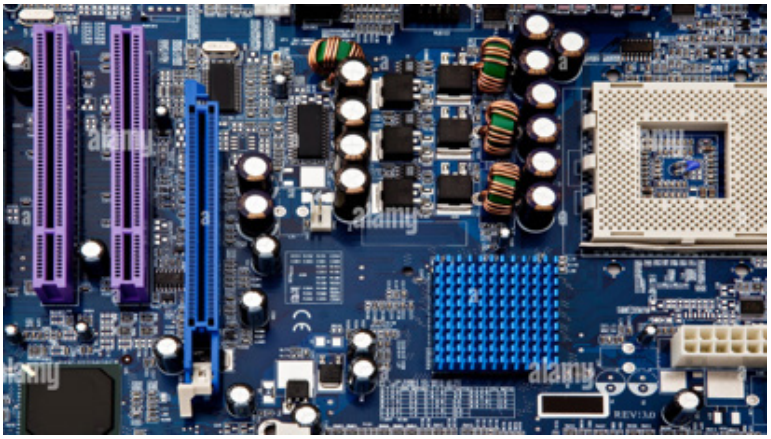


Figure 1.11: Silicon microchips on a printed circuit board (Alamy, 2009)

APPLICATIONS OF SMART MATERIALS IN MANUFACTURING

Smart materials are special types of materials that can change based on their surroundings, like temperature, stress, or electricity (***Figure 1.12***). These materials are being used more and more in industries like aerospace (aircraft), automotive (cars), and robotics. One example is shape memory alloys (SMAs). These are materials that can return to a specific shape after being bent or changed. They are often used in parts like valves and couplings that need to work automatically without any help from a person. In aerospace, smart materials are used to create wings and control surfaces on aeroplanes that can change shape depending on how the plane is flying. This helps save fuel and makes the aeroplane perform better.

Another type of smart material is called piezoelectric materials. These materials can create tiny vibrations and are used in machines for precise movements, like in 3D printers and cutting tools. They're also found in cars to help reduce shaking and in sensors that measure pressure. Lastly, there are thermochromic materials, which change colour when the temperature changes. These materials are helpful as safety indicators on machines or packaging, showing if something has been exposed to high temperatures.

The Main Applications of Smart Materials in Manufacturing

1. Shape memory alloys (SMAs) are used in valves and couplings that operate automatically, as well as in aeroplane wings and control surfaces that adapt to flight conditions for improved performance and fuel efficiency.
2. Piezoelectric materials are employed in machines for precise movements, such as 3D printers and cutting tools, and are also used in cars to reduce vibrations and in sensors to measure pressure.
3. Thermochromic materials serve as safety indicators by changing colour in response to temperature changes, making them useful on machines and packaging to signal exposure to high temperatures.

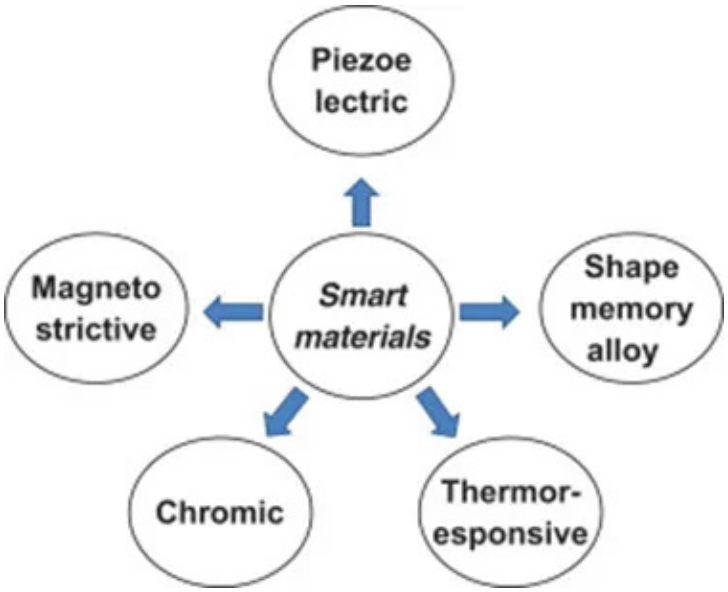


Figure 1.12: Examples of smart materials in manufacturing

APPLICATIONS OF BIOMATERIALS IN MANUFACTURING

Biomaterials are special materials that are safe to use in the human body. They are often used to make medical devices and implants (Figure 1.13). In factories, biomaterials create surgical tools, dental implants, joint replacements, and even biodegradable packaging. One common biomaterial is titanium and its alloys, which are used in orthopaedic implants because they are strong, lightweight, and work well with the body.

Another type of biomaterial is biodegradable polymers. These are used for single-use medical items like sutures (stitches) and tissue scaffolds. The great thing about these materials is that they break down safely in the body after they have done their job, which means patients do not need extra surgeries to remove them. Biomaterials are also used in 3D printing to make custom implants and medical devices.

In Ghana and other African countries, there is an increasing interest in creating biodegradable food packaging and sustainable cutlery made from plant-based biomaterials. This helps promote green manufacturing, which is better for the environment.

The Main Applications of Biomaterials in Manufacturing

1. Production of medical devices and implants, such as surgical tools, dental implants, and joint replacements.
2. Manufacture of biodegradable packaging, including sustainable cutlery and food packaging made from plant-based biomaterials.
3. Creation of orthopaedic implants using materials like titanium and its alloys, valued for their strength, lightness, and biocompatibility.
4. Fabrication of single-use medical items, such as sutures and tissue scaffolds, from biodegradable polymers that safely break down in the body.
5. Custom manufacturing of implants and medical devices through 3D printing with biomaterials.



Figure 1.13: 3D-Printed surgical models (Calderone, 2018)

APPLICATIONS OF NANOMATERIALS IN MANUFACTURING

Nanomaterials are tiny materials that are really small, usually between 1 and 100 nanometres. Because they are so small, they have special properties that make them strong and useful in different ways. In manufacturing, these materials are used to make products stronger, more durable, and more effective.

For example, carbon nanotubes can be mixed with metals and plastics to create lightweight and strong materials used in things like aeroplane parts, sports gear, and bicycle frames. Another use is silver nanoparticles, which are added to surfaces like medical tools and food packaging to kill bacteria and keep things clean. In electronics, special coatings made from nanomaterials can be applied to circuit boards to protect them from water and dust.

Nanomaterials are also found in paints and coatings, giving them the ability to block harmful UV rays from the sun and even clean themselves. This is especially useful in industries like construction and automotive. Overall, nanomaterials play an important role in improving many products we use every day.

The Main Applications of Nanomaterials in Manufacturing

1. Reinforcement of metals and plastics to create lightweight, strong materials for use in aerospace, sports equipment, and automotive components.
2. Antibacterial coatings for medical tools and food packaging by incorporating nanoparticles such as silver.
3. Protective coatings for electronics, including circuit boards, to shield them from moisture and dust.
4. Functional additives in paints and coatings to provide UV protection and self-cleaning properties.
5. Improvement of mechanical, thermal, and electrical properties of materials used across various industries.

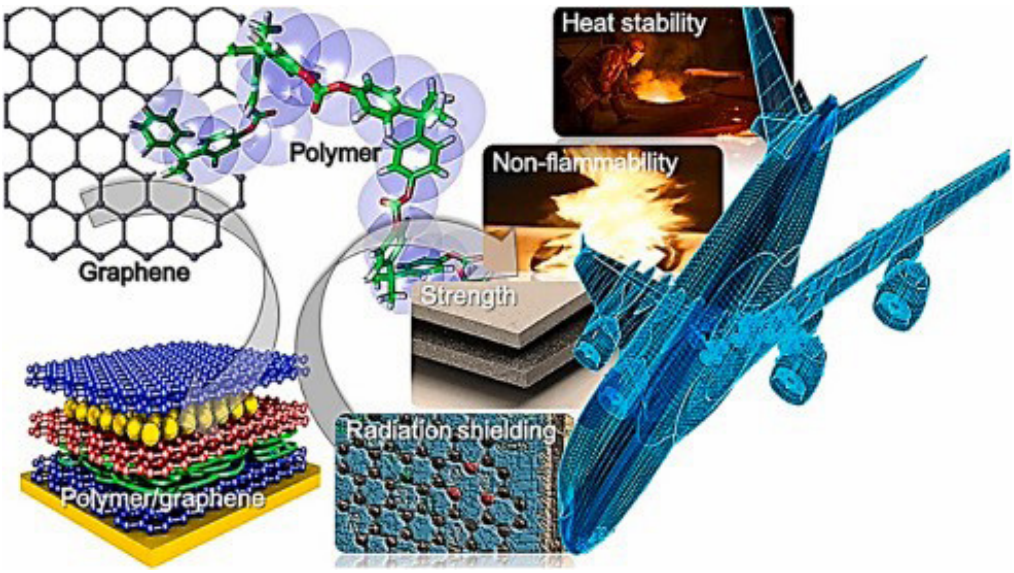


Figure 1.14: Polymer nanocomposites for aerospace applications (Rashid et al., 2024)

Activity 1.8 Material Properties Recap

Aim: To recall and classify engineering materials by structure, identify their key properties, and link them to typical processing methods.

Mode of Work

1. Independent or small group (2–4 learners)
2. Teacher assistance only for clarifying concepts.

Materials / Resources

- Year 1 and Year 2 Learner Manuals and notes or textbooks
- Notebook and pen

Instructions

1. List materials you remember from Year 1 and Year 2, grouping them by structure (metals, ceramics, polymers, composites).
2. For each group, note at least two key physical, thermal, or electrical properties (e.g., conductivity, ductility, thermal expansion).
3. Classify each material further by its typical processing method (e.g., casting, moulding, sintering, 3D printing).
4. Present your completed table or chart to a peer for quick feedback.
5. Exchange tables/charts with peers for review. Discuss any differences in classification or property identification.

Note

Include your completed table/chart and peer feedback notes in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 1.9 Industrial Applications Mind Map

Aim: To visualise the link between material types and their industrial applications using a mind map.

Mode of Work

1. Independent or small group (2–3 learners)
2. Teacher assistance for clarifying technical terms.

Materials / Resources

- Blank sheet of paper or digital mind-mapping tool
- Coloured pens or digital colour-coding features

Safety Note

1. Follow ICT lab rules if using a computer.

2. Keep the workspace tidy when using drawing tools.

Instructions

1. Write "Industrial Applications" at the centre of your page or digital canvas.
2. Branch out to include both common materials (metals, ceramics, polymers) and advanced materials (semiconductors, smart materials, biomaterials, nanomaterials).
3. For each material, add at least one real-world application (e.g., titanium implants, nanomaterial coatings, shape-memory alloys in actuators).
4. Use colour coding to distinguish between material categories.
5. Share your mind map with peers and compare applications.
6. Suggest additional examples to expand each other's maps.

Note

Include a copy or photo of your mind map in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 1.10 Researching Industrial Use of Advanced Materials

1. Conduct guided internet research or explore reading packs that present categorised real-life case studies of the industrial use of advanced materials.
2. Become 'expert' in one type of advanced material and orally share your findings with your peers.

Activity 1.11 Real-world Use and Application of Advanced Materials

1. In a small group, identify a real-world industrial or community challenge and develop a product or material substitution solution using advanced materials, indicating their potential advantages and implications.
2. Make a written report of your proposed solution.

STRUCTURE, PHYSICAL PROPERTIES AND PROCESSING OF BAMBOO

INTRODUCTION TO BAMBOO

Bamboo is one of the quickest-growing plants on the planet and has been used for a long time in building, making tools, and art. It has played an important role in cultures across Asia, Africa, and South America, where it has been used to construct homes, bridges, and even weapons because it is strong and flexible. Unlike trees, bamboo is actually a type of grass. It has long, hollow stems called culms that grow in groups from a system of roots underground. Today, people appreciate bamboo as a sustainable material because it grows very fast (some types can grow up to 1 meter in just one day!). It also absorbs carbon dioxide well and doesn't need pesticides to grow. Because of its many uses, bamboo is an important material in making eco-friendly products today, including furniture and textiles.

STRUCTURE OF THE BAMBOO PLANT

Bamboo is a really interesting plant because it is both light and strong. It has a special structure made up of a few key parts.

1. Rhizomes: These are underground stems that help the plant grow.
2. Culms: These are the tall, vertical stems you see above ground.
3. Nodes: These are the joints found along the culm.
4. Internodes - These are the hollow spaces between the nodes (Figure 1.15).

The nodes are important because they make the culm stronger, helping it to stay straight and not easily break. Inside the culm, there are small tubes called vascular bundles, which move water and nutrients throughout the plant. These bundles have fibres that give bamboo its strength and parenchyma cells that store food. The outer layer of the culm is called the epidermis, and it has a protective coating of silica. This helps bamboo resist pests and stay safe from moisture. Overall, bamboo's structure acts like a natural combination of materials, making it flexible and durable.

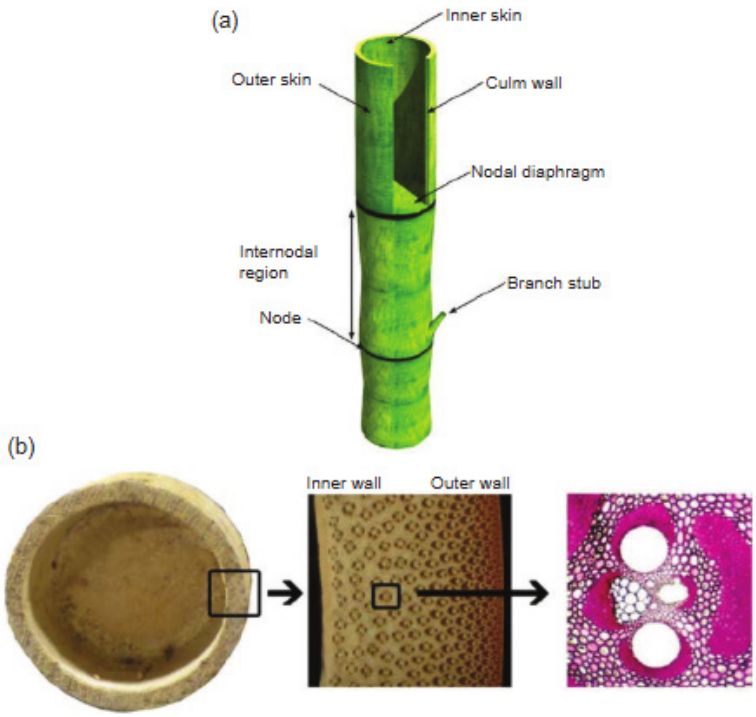


Figure 1.15: Anatomy of a bamboo culm (a) Schematic view of a culm segment (b) Section of culm wall showing grading of vascular bundles (Trujillo and Lopez, 2020)

PHYSICAL PROPERTIES OF BAMBOO

Bamboo has some impressive characteristics that make it unique. Different types of bamboo have varying physical properties, but generally, it is known for being very strong, light, and flexible. Its density ranges from 500 to 800 kg/m^3, which means it is lighter than most hardwoods. When freshly cut, bamboo contains a lot of moisture (about 30-40%). After it dries, the moisture content drops to around 10-15%, which helps it become more durable. Bamboo also insulates well against heat and can handle high temperatures (up to 100°C) without losing its strength. However, bamboo that isn't treated can easily get damaged by insects and fungi because of its starch. These qualities make bamboo suitable for making products like flooring, scaffolding, and bicycle frames. Its flexibility allows it to be woven into mats or shaped into curved furniture. In summary, bamboo is a strong and useful material, perfect for a variety of applications.

COMPARISON BETWEEN THE TENSILE STRENGTH OF STEEL AND BAMBOO

The tensile strength of a material indicates how much stretching force it can withstand before breaking. ***Table 1.1*** compares the tensile strength and breaking elongation of high-yield steel bars, mild steel bars, and bamboo across a range of sample sizes. As shown, high-yield steel bars have the highest tensile strength, with values ranging from 457.13 N/mm^2 for a 10 mm sample up to 792.90 N/mm^2 for a 25 mm sample. Mild steel bars also demonstrate considerable strength, though generally lower than high yield steel, with tensile strengths from 290.49 N/mm^2 to 701.74 N/mm^2 depending on the sample size.

Bamboo, while significantly lower in tensile strength compared to both types of steel, still demonstrates notable performance for a natural material. Its tensile strength increases with sample size, from 31.55 N/mm^2 at 10 mm up to 94.60 N/mm^2 at 25 mm. Notably, bamboo's breaking elongation—how much it can stretch before breaking—is much lower than steel for smaller sizes, but increases for larger samples, reaching up to 15.07% for the 16 mm sample. This suggests that although bamboo is not as strong as steel, it can still absorb some deformation, particularly in larger samples.

Overall, steel remains the superior material in terms of both tensile strength and ductility, making it suitable for heavy-duty structural applications. However, bamboo, with its moderate strength and increasing ductility at larger sizes, offers a sustainable alternative for certain uses, especially where lightweight and flexibility are advantageous. The comparison highlights the potential of bamboo as a construction material, particularly in contexts where environmental impact and resource renewability are important considerations.

Table 1.1: Comparative tensile strength of steel and bamboo (Ogunbiyi et al., 2015)

Sample size (mm)	High-yield steel bar		Mild steel bar		Bamboo	
	Tensile strength (N/mm^2)	Breaking elongation (%)	Tensile strength (N/mm^2)	Breaking elongation (%)	Tensile strength (N/mm^2)	Breaking elongation (%)
10	457.13	19.25	290.49	51.61	31.55	0.00
12	689.12	26.10	508.08	39.57	31.07	0.00
16	711.61	35.27	508.81	55.53	68.82	15.07
20	713.40	30.72	372.98	23.68	62.66	12.10
25	792.90	26.11	701.74	29.65	94.60	10.91

PROCESSING OF BAMBOO

Processing bamboo involves three main steps: harvesting, preserving, and shaping.

1. **Harvesting**

Bamboo is typically harvested when it's 3 to 5 years old. This age makes the bamboo strong enough for use.

2. **Preserving**

After cutting the bamboo, it needs to be treated to remove starch and protect it from insects. Common methods for preserving bamboo include:

a. **Smoke treatment:** Using smoke to protect the bamboo.

b. **Borax soaking:** Soaking the bamboo in a borax solution.

c. **Heat treatment:** Applying heat to kill any pests.

3. Shaping

Once preserved, the bamboo can be cut into strips, flattened, or glued together in layers for different products. Traditional methods like hand-splitting are still used, but modern technology like CNC machines and laser cutting allows for more precise shapes.

Bamboo can be turned into boards, which are similar to plywood, or even spun into yarn for making textiles. Additionally, there are new uses for bamboo, such as bamboo charcoal for cleaning the air and bamboo composites that mix bamboo with plastics or resins for stronger materials. These advancements are broadening the ways bamboo can be used in industries.

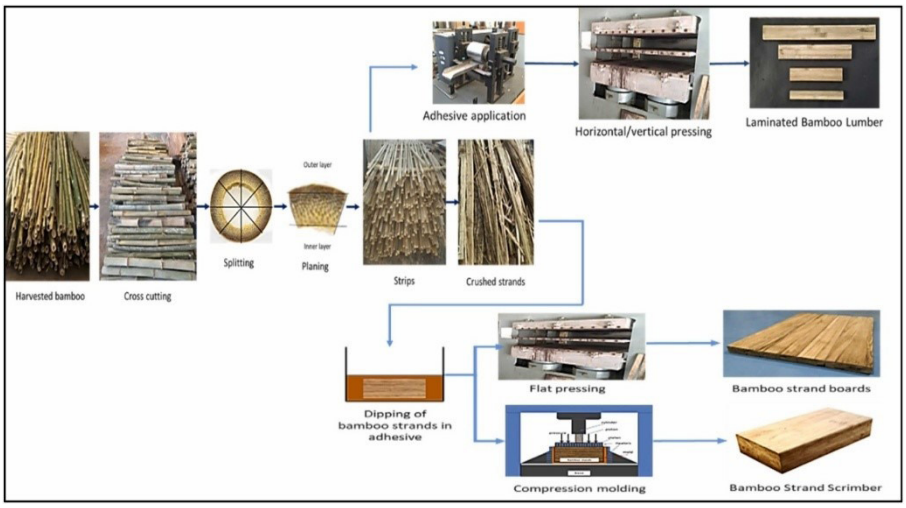


Figure 1.16: Typical bamboo processing method (Kelkar et al., 2023)

Bamboo is a special plant that grows quickly and can be used in many ways, making it a great renewable resource. To understand bamboo, it's important to know some of its features, like how its joints are arranged and how strong its fibres are. Learning about bamboo helps in understanding how natural materials can help solve big problems like cutting down too many trees and climate change.

Activity 1.12 Revision on Material Properties

Aim: To review and summarise the key thermal, electrical, and mechanical properties of engineering materials

Mode of Work

1. Small group (3–5 learners)
2. Teacher assistance for clarifying concepts.

Materials / Resources

- Year 1 and Year 2 Learner Manuals and class notes
- Recommended textbooks
- Reliable online videos (e.g., YouTube, BBC Bitesize)

- Notebook and pen

Safety Note

1. Follow ICT lab rules when using computers.
2. Handle any physical samples with care.

Instructions

1. In small groups, revisit the thermal, electrical, and mechanical properties of materials studied in Year 1 and Year 2 Learner Manuals and class notes (e.g., conductivity, toughness, elasticity).
2. Use class notes, textbooks, or reliable online videos to review these concepts.
3. Create a quick reference chart summarising definitions and examples for each property.
4. Share your chart with another group for feedback. Discuss any differences in definitions or examples.

Note

Include your completed chart and any peer feedback in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 1.13 Bamboo Structure Exploration

Aim: To identify and describe the structural features of bamboo.

Mode of Work

1. Independent or pair work
2. Teacher assistance for handling physical bamboo samples.

Materials / Resources

- Internet access (e.g., YouTube search: “bamboo plant structure”)
- Provided images or physical bamboo samples
- Notebook and pen

Safety Note

1. Handle bamboo samples carefully to avoid splinters or cuts.
2. Use gloves if necessary.

Instructions

1. Watch a short online video or animation showing bamboo’s anatomy.
2. Examine provided images or physical samples, noting:
    a. Rhizomes
    b. Culms
    c. Nodes

d. Internodes

e. Vascular bundles

3. Sketch or label a diagram of a bamboo cross-section, highlighting key features.
4. Compare diagrams with peers to check accuracy. Discuss the function of each structural feature.

Note

Include your labelled diagram and notes in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 1.14 Physical Properties Comparison

Aim: To compare the physical properties of bamboo with metals and polymers.

Mode of Work

1. Independent or small group (2–3 learners)
2. Teacher assistance for accessing reliable resources.

Materials / Resources

- Library or internet access
- Notebook and pen
- Comparison table template (provided or self-made)

Safety Note: Follow ICT lab rules when researching online.

Instructions

1. Research on the tensile strength, density, and flexibility of bamboo.
2. Compare your findings with the properties of metals and polymers from earlier studies.
3. Fill in a comparison table and summarise two main differences and two similarities.
4. Share your table with peers and discuss findings. Suggest possible applications based on the comparisons.

Note

Include your completed table and summary in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 1.15 Field trip to a Bamboo Farm.

1. Visit a nearby bamboo production facility, where a guide explains how raw bamboo is selected, tested, and processed into products like furniture and construction materials.

2. If a visit cannot be made, view videos to show the same. (https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=OCj61LAak54)
3. Observe structural features, quality checks, and processing methods.
4. Back in class, write a brief report linking your observations to classroom concepts on bamboo structure, properties, and processing techniques.

Extended Reading

- Ashby, M. F., & Johnson, K. (2013). Materials and design: the art and science of material selection in product design. Butterworth-Heinemann.
- Callister, W. D., & Rethwisch, D. G. (2020). Materials Science and Engineering: An Introduction, 9th Edition, John Wiley & Sons.
- Casini, M. (2016). Smart Buildings: Advanced Materials and Nanotechnology. Woodhead Publishing.
- Fahim, M., Haris, M., Khan, W., & Zaman, S. (2022). Bamboo as a construction material: prospects and challenges. Advances in Science and Technology. Research Journal, 16(3).
- Kelkar, B. U., Shukla, S. R., Nagraik, P., & Paul, B. N. (2023). Structural bamboo composites: a review of processing, factors affecting properties and recent advances. Advances in Bamboo Science, 3, 100026.
- Lakkad, S., & Patel, J. (2018). Mechanical Properties of Bamboo. INBAR Technical Report.
- Manufacturing-Engineering-Curriculum. (2023). Ghana Education Service.
- Neamen, D. (2020). Semiconductor physics and devices (5th ed.). McGraw-Hill.
- Neupane, P. (2022). Common biomaterials questions. Kathmandu, Nepal. [Available Online] https://www.pravhakar.com.np/2022/07/common-biomaterials-question.html.Top of Form



- Ogunbiyi, M. A., Olawale, S. O., Tudjegbe, O. E., & Akinola, S. R. (2015). Comparative analysis of the tensile strength of bamboo and reinforcement steel bars as structural member in building construction. Int. J. Sci. Technol. Res, 4, 551-553.
- Tiwari, A., Murugan, N. A., & Ahuja, R. (2016). Advanced Engineering Materials and Modeling. John Wiley & Sons.

REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. State at least two key benefits and two challenges of using bamboo as a construction material, and explain how these factors can impact its overall effectiveness in building projects.
2. Compare and contrast the tensile strength and breaking elongation of bamboo with that of reinforcement steel bars, using the information from Table 1.1 (Comparative Tensile Strength of Steel and Bamboo). Additionally, explain how understanding these properties of bamboo can be applied in the construction industry.
3. Explain the role of advanced materials and nanotechnology in the development of smart buildings, providing specific examples from the section.
4. Using your understanding of the design process, propose an innovative prototype that utilises advanced engineering materials. The goal is to tackle current challenges in your community, such as building, water scarcity, water treatment, sanitation, energy, and food preservation or processing, while focusing on sustainability and efficiency within the industry.



SECTION

2

UNDERSTANDING MECHANICAL PROPERTIES AND FAILURE OF MATERIALS



Manufacturing Materials and Technologies

Properties of materials

INTRODUCTION

This section looks at how materials behave and fail in manufacturing. You'll learn about materials like bamboo, how they are tested for strength and durability, and why these matters. Important ideas include tensile strength, which is the material's ability to pull without breaking, and different types of failures like creep (slow deformation), fatigue (weakness from repeated use), and fracture (breaking). Understanding these concepts helps ensure products are safe and effective. You'll also discover how to identify different types of material failure and why this knowledge is essential for creating strong, reliable, and eco-friendly products. This ties in with what you learned before, helping you see the role of material science in solving real-world problems. By the end, you'll understand how choosing and testing materials leads to innovation and sustainability in manufacturing.

KEY IDEAS

- Bamboo's Mechanical Properties and Sustainability: Bamboo stands out for its remarkable tensile, compressive, and flexural strength, combined with lightness, elasticity, and renewability, making it a sustainable alternative to traditional materials in manufacturing and construction.
- Classification and Testing of Material Failures: Material failure is categorised into five main types: creep, fatigue, fracture, wear, and corrosion. Each type requires specific testing methods, including tensile, compressive, and non-destructive testing, to ensure structural safety and reliability.
- Factors Influencing Material Performance: The properties and failure behaviours of materials, especially bamboo, are influenced by factors such as species, age, moisture content, environmental conditions, and processing techniques, all of which must be considered for optimal application.
- Implications of Material Failure in Real-World Engineering: Understanding and preventing material failure is crucial for public safety, economic efficiency, and environmental protection. Real-world examples, such as bridge collapses and industrial accidents, emphasise the consequences of insufficient material selection or design.
- Manufacturing Applications and Comparative Advantages: Bamboo's high strength-to-weight ratio, rapid renewability, and flexibility enable its use in construction, furniture, composites, and textiles, often outperforming wood and steel in sustainability and cost while meeting modern industry demands.

- Mechanisms and Prevention of Creep, Fatigue, and Fracture: Creep, fatigue, and fracture are core mechanisms of material failure, each with distinct causes, characteristics, and prevention strategies; understanding these helps engineers design safer, longer-lasting products through intelligent material selection, design optimisation, and regular maintenance.

MECHANICAL PROPERTIES OF BAMBOO AS A SUSTAINABLE MATERIAL

Bamboo is a type of strong, woody plant that belongs to the grass family. It is well known for growing quickly and being good for the environment. Bamboo is made up of many tiny fibres (like threads) held together by a natural glue, which helps make it both strong and flexible. Its hollow stem also makes it lighter than many other materials. Because of these features, bamboo can be used instead of wood, steel, and some plastics in many things we build or make. Knowing how strong bamboo is when it is stretched or squashed, and how much it can bend without breaking, helps us see why it is a good choice for building and making things in a way that is better for the environment.

MECHANICAL PROPERTIES OF BAMBOO

Bamboo is a strong and useful plant for building and making things. It is almost as strong as steel when you pull it (tension), and it is even stronger than many types of hardwood when you press it (compression). Bamboo can bend without snapping, so it works well in places where things need to move or shake, like during storms or earthquakes. It is also tough, so it does not wear out easily. These qualities make bamboo a smart choice for many uses. Bamboo exhibits a combination of strength, flexibility, and lightness that is rarely found in other natural materials.

Key Mechanical Properties

1. Tensile Strength: Bamboo is very strong when you pull it from both ends, almost as strong as steel. This means it can be used where things need to hold a lot of weight without snapping.
2. Compressive Strength: Bamboo can handle heavy loads pressing down on it, even better than many hard types of wood. That's why it works well in places like buildings where it needs to hold up things vertically.
3. Flexural Strength: Bamboo can bend a lot before it cracks. This makes it good for places where things need to move or shake, like during storms or earthquakes.
4. Elastic Modulus (Stiffness): Bamboo is hard to squash or stretch out of shape, so it keeps its form when used in construction.

5. Hardness: The surface of bamboo is tough, so it doesn't get damaged easily even if people or things touch it a lot. This makes it good for floors and places people walk on often.
6. Shear Strength: Bamboo is not as strong when you try to slide its layers past each other, so when joining pieces together, it needs extra support to stay strong.

INFLUENCE OF BAMBOO MORPHOLOGY ON ITS MECHANICAL PROPERTIES

Bamboo's special shape and structure make it both strong and useful for many different things. Because of how it is built, bamboo can be used to make strong buildings, furniture, and other products that are good for the environment. The way bamboo acts when you try to bend, stretch, or squash it depends on its special design. If you look at Figure 2.1 and Figure 2.2, you will see how bamboo looks on the outside and inside, showing why it is such a strong and flexible material.

Key Characteristics of Bamboo

1. Bamboo's Structure: Bamboo is made up of tiny, strong fibres (like threads) inside a natural glue. This mix makes bamboo both strong and bendy, so it is good for building things.
2. Hollow Shape: Bamboo is hollow inside, making it lightweight yet very strong. The hollow structure distributes weight and stress, allowing bamboo to support heavy loads without breaking.
3. Nodes (Joints): Bamboo has joints, called nodes, along its stem. These joints make the bamboo stronger and stop it from bending too much or breaking easily.
4. Fibre Direction: The way the fibres line up inside bamboo helps it stretch and bend without snapping. This is why bamboo can be used in places where it needs to bend, like in buildings or furniture.
5. Flexibility: Bamboo can bend instead of breaking, especially when things like wind or earthquakes happen. This makes it safer to use in buildings in areas where there might be shaking or strong storms.
6. Moisture Control: Bamboo can lose its strength if it is too wet. Drying and treating bamboo properly helps it last longer and stay strong when used in construction or for making things.
7. Lamination: Because of its structure, bamboo can be glued together in layers to make strong boards and panels. These are often used for floors and furniture.

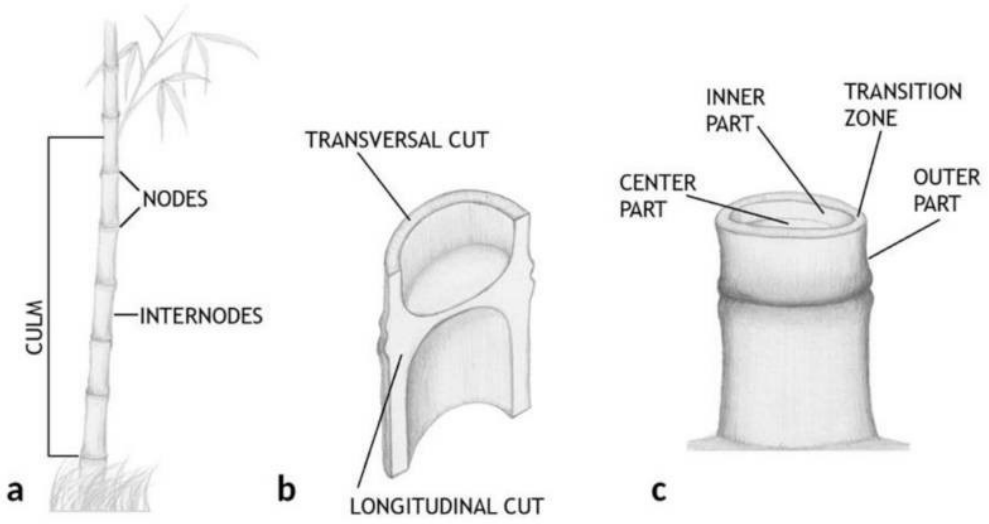


Figure 2.1: Bamboo scheme: (a) view of the plant from the ground to the beginning of the branches, (b) longitudinal and transverse sectioned view and (c) circular cross section (Elejoste et al., 2021) https://pmc.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/articles/PMC8271862/

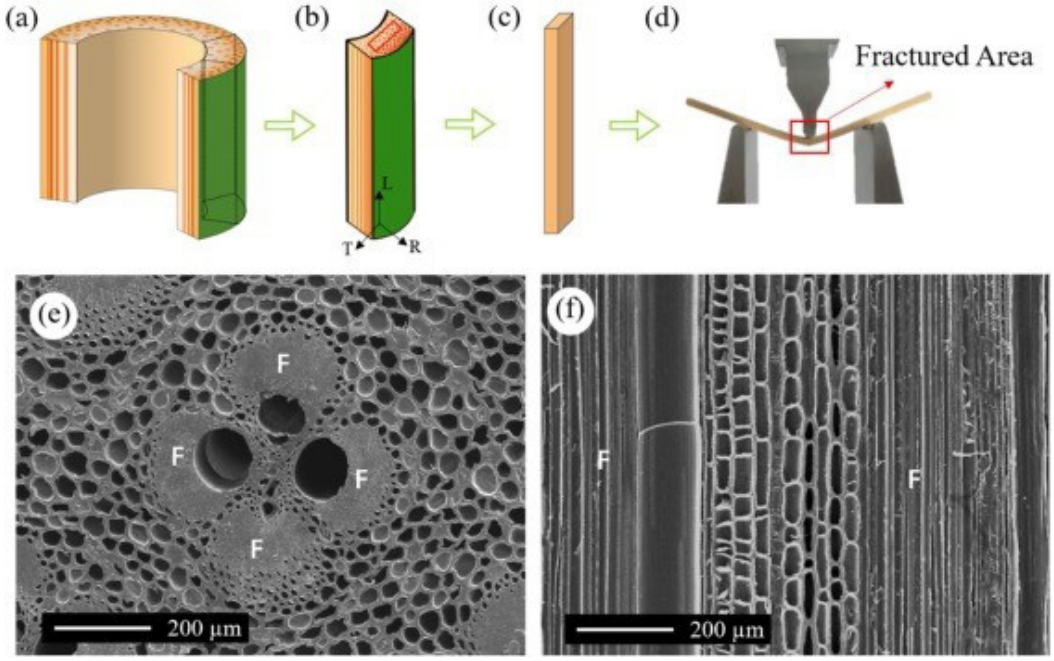


Figure 2.2: Bamboo structure at macroscopic and microscopic levels (Chen et al., 2020) https://images.app.goo.gl/dQbj4wcSmXNbKEPY9

IMPACT OF MOISTURE CONTENT ON BAMBOO MECHANICAL PROPERTIES

Moisture, or water inside the bamboo, has a big effect on how strong and sturdy the bamboo is. If bamboo has too much water, it becomes weak and bends easily. To keep bamboo strong and useful for building or making things, it needs to be dried and treated properly. Controlling how much moisture bamboo has helps it last longer and stay safe to use. Here are the main things to remember about moisture and bamboo:

1. When bamboo is too wet, it loses its strength and becomes soft.
2. If bamboo keeps taking in and losing water, it can swell up or shrink, which changes its shape.
3. Wet bamboo can rot or get mouldy, which makes it break down faster.
4. Drying bamboo, treating it with chemicals, and storing it in dry places helps keep it strong and safe.

Moisture Control Methods

1. Kiln drying
2. Chemical treatments (borates, preservatives)
3. Lamination and coating
4. Proper storage and usage in well-ventilated environments

VARIABILITY IN BAMBOO PROPERTIES AND SELECTION OF APPROPRIATE BAMBOO SPECIES FOR SPECIFIC APPLICATIONS

Bamboo is not the same everywhere. It can be different depending on its type, how old it is, and where it grows. Choosing the right kind of bamboo is important for what you want to use it for. For building strong things like beams and columns, it is best to use bamboo that is hard and packed with lots of fibres. For making things like chairs, baskets, or other items that need to be bent or shaped, softer and more flexible bamboo is better. This is why it is important to know what you want to make before picking your bamboo.

Bamboo's Mechanical Performance Varies Widely Depending on Multiple Factors

1. Species: There are more than 1,200 types of bamboo, but not all of them are good for building strong things. Some kinds, like Dendrocalamus asper and Phyllostachys edulis (also called Moso), are chosen for building because they are heavier and stronger than other types.
2. Age: The best time to harvest bamboo is when it is between 3 and 5 years old. If the bamboo is too young, it has not yet become strong enough because it does not have enough of the hard material inside. If it is too old, it can become weak and break easily.
3. Environmental Conditions: The type of soil, the amount of rain, and how high a place is above sea level all play a part in how bamboo grows and how strong the fibre is inside. Good soil and enough rain help bamboo grow better and stronger, while the height of the land can change the way bamboo develops.
4. Use Case Specific Selection: When choosing bamboo for different uses, remember this: Use strong and heavy bamboo for building things that need to support a lot of weight, like beams and columns in a house. For making things like furniture, baskets, or items that need to bend or be shaped, use bamboo that is thinner and more flexible. This way, the bamboo will work well for what you want to make.

EFFECT OF PROCESSING AND TREATMENT OF BAMBOO ON ITS MECHANICAL PROPERTIES

The way bamboo is prepared and treated can make it stronger or weaker. Some methods, like bleaching, drying, and sticking layers together (lamination), can help bamboo last longer and become stronger. But if bamboo is not processed properly, it might get weak or have faults. It is important to use the right steps to keep bamboo strong and reliable. The steps in Figure 2.3 show how bamboo goes from the raw plant to a finished product.

1. Drying: This means removing water from bamboo. Dry bamboo is stronger and keeps its shape better.
2. Heat Treatment: Heating bamboo helps protect it from insects and fungus, and can make the outside harder.
3. Chemical Treatment: Using chemicals like boron or copper makes bamboo tougher and stops bugs and germs from damaging it.
4. Lamination: This is when thin pieces of bamboo are glued together to make a strong, solid material. This makes bamboo more even and able to hold more weight.
5. Carbonisation: Heating bamboo in a special way makes it last longer, but too much of this can make it weaker.
6. Adhesives and Joint Reinforcement: Using glue and making strong joints helps bamboo parts stay together, especially when building things.

By following these steps, bamboo products can be made stronger, last longer, and be used for many things, such as building or making furniture.

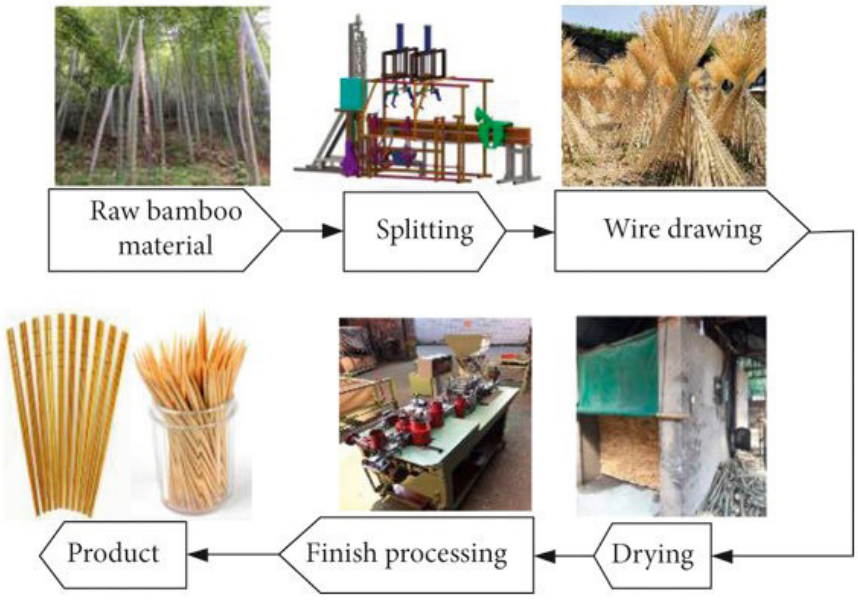


Figure 2.3: Processing stages of bamboo, from raw material to finished product (Wen et al., 2020) https://www.researchgate.net/figure/The-production-process-for-bamboo-products_fig1_340000697

MECHANICAL PROPERTY TESTING METHODS

When we want to know how strong bamboo is, we use special tests. These tests check how much force bamboo can handle when it is pulled, pushed, or bent. By doing these tests, we find out if bamboo is strong enough to be used for building things or making furniture. Testing bamboo in this way helps us make sure it is safe and of good quality before using it.

Tensile Test

Purpose: This test checks how well bamboo can handle being pulled or stretched without breaking.

Method: The test is done by pulling the bamboo along its length, the same way the fibres naturally run inside it.

Significance: The results show how strong the bamboo fibres are. This is important because it tells us if bamboo can be used to support heavy loads in things like buildings or furniture.

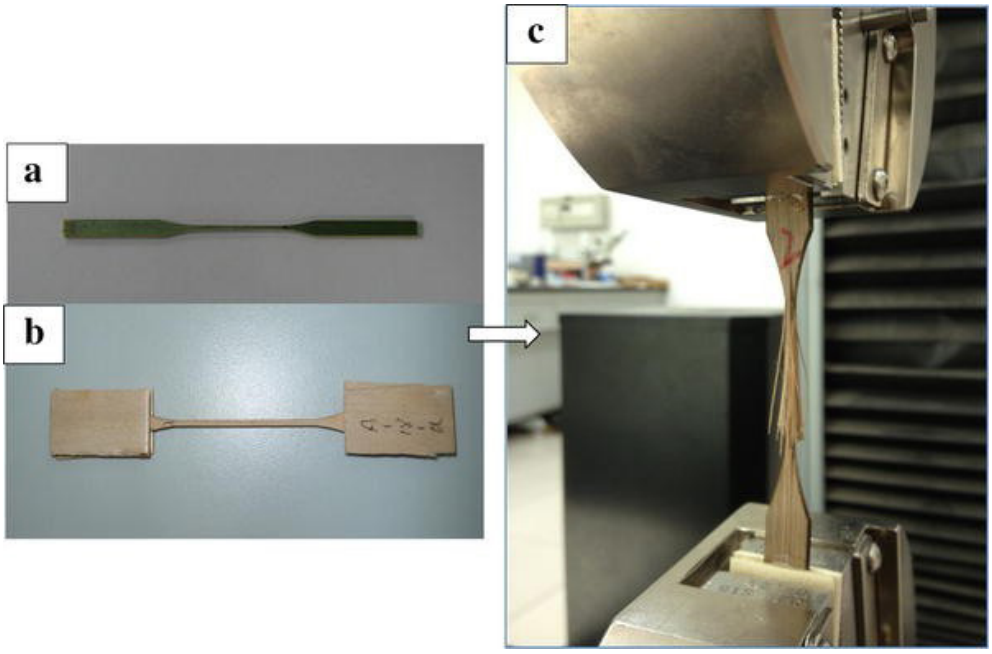


Figure 2.4: The tensile property testing of bamboo strips, (a) the sample of bamboo, (b) the sample of bamboo with wood slices for protection, (c) tensile testing process (Chen et al., 2015) https://jwoodscience.springeropen.com/articles/10.1007/s10086-015-1511-x

Compressive Test

Purpose: This test checks if bamboo can handle being squeezed from the top and bottom without getting crushed.

Method: Pieces of bamboo are pressed from both ends, just like how a pillar stands and carries weight from above.

Significance: This test is important to know if bamboo can safely be used as pillars or posts in buildings and other structures.

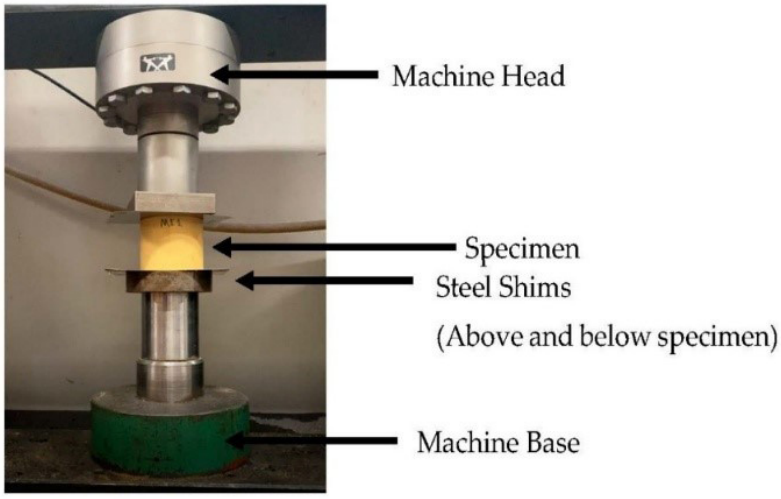


Figure 2.5: The test setup used for compression testing of the bamboo specimens (Drury et al., 2023) https://www.mdpi.com/2071-1050/15/8/6472

Flexural (Bending) Test

Purpose: This test checks if bamboo can bend when a force is put on it, without snapping.

Method: Normally, bamboo is placed across two supports, and weight is pressed down in the middle (or in two places), to see how much it can bend.

Significance: This helps us know if bamboo is strong and flexible enough to be used for things like beams or arches in buildings.



Figure 2.6: Bending Test of bamboo specimen (Hadana et al., 2020)

Shear Test

Purpose: This test checks how well bamboo can resist sliding or breaking apart inside itself when a force tries to push its layers past each other.

Method: The test is usually done where two parts of bamboo connect, like at a joint, to see if the connection stays strong or slips.

Significance: It is important because it shows how safe and strong bamboo joints are, which helps when using bamboo to build things like houses or furniture.

Hardness Test

Purpose: This test checks how hard the bamboo's surface is by seeing how much it can resist a mark or dent.

Method: The Rockwell hardness test is a common way to do this. It works by pressing a hard object into the bamboo and measuring how deep it goes.

Significance: This test is important when using bamboo for things like floors, because it shows if the bamboo will stay strong and not wear out easily where people walk on it a lot.

Modulus of Elasticity (MOE)

Purpose: This test measures how stiff or bendy the bamboo is.

Method: The test looks at how much bamboo stretches or bends when a force is first applied, using a graph that shows the force and how much the bamboo changes shape.

Significance: It helps to know how much bamboo will bend when used for building, which is very important to make sure structures are safe and strong.

Testing Standards

There are special rules and guidelines (standards) that help people test bamboo and other materials in the same way, so the results are always fair and trustworthy. Some of the most important rules are:

1. ISO 22156: This tells you how to design and build bamboo structures safely.
2. ASTM D143: This explains how to test pieces of wood to check their strength and quality.
3. JIS A 5905: This is a Japanese rule that guides how to make and test bamboo panels and products.

By using these rules, everyone can measure and compare bamboo and wood accurately, making sure the results are reliable no matter where the tests are done.

COMPARISON OF BAMBOO WITH TRADITIONAL MATERIALS

Bamboo is often compared to materials like wood and steel because it is strong yet not heavy, and it is good for the environment. Bamboo can stretch almost as much as steel before breaking, but it weighs less. When you look at wood, bamboo grows much faster, and you can plant it again, which makes it better for the environment. This is why bamboo is becoming popular for building and making things. ***Table 2.1*** shows how bamboo matches up with wood and steel in terms of strength and other important features.

Table 2.1: Comparison of mechanical properties of bamboo against major traditional materials

Property	Bamboo	Wood	Steel
Tensile Strength	370 MPa	100 MPa (oak)	400–550 MPa
Renewability	High (3–5 yrs.)	Moderate (10–80 yrs.)	Non-renewable
Flexibility	High	Moderate	Low
Sustainability	Very High	Moderate	Low
Cost	Low	Moderate	High

APPLICATIONS OF BAMBOO BASED ON ITS MECHANICAL PROPERTIES

Bamboo is a special type of plant that is strong and flexible. Because of these qualities, people use bamboo for many things. For example, it is used to build houses and make scaffolding because it does not break easily. Bamboo is also good for making furniture like chairs, tables, and beds, as well as for creating fabrics and clothes. These uses show how useful bamboo is in everyday life. Some common applications of Bamboo in manufacturing industries are shown in ***Table 2.2***.

Table 2.2: Common applications of Bamboo in manufacturing industries

Category	Examples
Construction	Scaffolding, flooring, structural frames (especially in earthquake-prone regions)
Furniture	Chairs, beds, tables, decorative elements
Textiles	Bamboo fibres spun into yarns and fabrics
Composites	Bamboo-reinforced polymer composites in the automotive and sports industries
Engineered Products	Laminated bamboo lumber, bamboo scrimber, and panels

CHALLENGES AND PROSPECTS OF BAMBOO IN MANUFACTURING

Bamboo has many good qualities, but there are some problems when using it to make things. The quality of bamboo can change because different types grow in different ways, and it needs special machines to process it properly. The good news is that scientists and engineers are finding new ways to solve these problems. Because bamboo is strong and better for the environment than many other materials, it is likely to be used even more in the future for building and making things.

CHALLENGES

1. Bamboo quality can change a lot because different types grow in different ways and places.
2. There are not many clear rules yet for checking how strong bamboo is for building and making things.
3. Bamboo can easily get wet or be attacked by insects if it is not treated properly.
4. Some areas do not have enough factories or machines to process bamboo well.

PROSPECTS

1. Bamboo products that have been specially made, called engineered bamboo, are becoming more popular. People use them instead of concrete, plastic, and steel because they are better for the environment.
2. Cities are using bamboo in new buildings, and it looks nice as well as works well for construction.
3. Many governments and green building programmes (like LEED and IGBC) are encouraging the use of materials such as bamboo to help protect the environment.
4. Scientists are coming up with better ways to treat and join bamboo. These improvements make bamboo last longer and allow it to be used in stronger and more important projects.

Activity 2.1 Bamboo Mechanical Properties

Aim: To understand the mechanical properties of bamboo.

Mode of Work

1. Independent or small group (2–4 classmates)
2. Teacher assistance only for clarifying concepts.

Materials / Resources

- Year 1 and Year 2 Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks
- Bamboo samples, Universal Testing Machine (UTM), notebook and pen

Safety Note

1. Follow lab safety rules when handling materials and equipment.
2. Avoid unsafe or unrelated websites.

Instructions

1. Review your Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks on mechanical properties such as tensile strength, compressive strength, and elasticity.
2. Prepare bamboo samples for mechanical testing.

3. Conduct tensile, compressive, and flexural tests using the UTM and record the results.
4. Analyse the data to determine the mechanical properties of bamboo and compare them with the properties of wood and steel.
5. Share your findings in a class or write a summary for feedback.
6. Compare your results with peers and discuss any differences. Suggest improvements for the testing procedure.

Note

Include your calculations and summary in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 2.2 Bamboo Processing Techniques

Aim: To explore traditional and modern bamboo processing techniques.

Mode of Work

1. Independent
2. Teacher assistance for clarifying technical terms.

Materials / Resources: internet access or textbook chapters on bamboo processing, notebook and pen

Safety Note

1. Follow lab safety rules when handling materials and equipment.
2. Avoid unsafe or unrelated websites.

Instructions

1. Watch short videos or read textbook chapters on bamboo processing techniques (e.g., harvesting, drying, preservation, lamination).

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=txD15OR8JQs	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=txD15OR8JQs
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=NFP0si1sqY0	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=OCj61LAak54

2. For each processing technique, note one key step and its importance.
3. Discuss with peers or write a short paragraph on how these techniques improve the quality and durability of bamboo products.
4. Share your findings with peers and compare techniques. Identify which processing techniques are most suitable for specific applications.

Note

Include your notes and discussion summary in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 2.3 Bamboo Applications in Manufacturing

Aim: To investigate the applications of bamboo in various manufacturing industries.

Mode of Work

1. Independent or with 3-4 classmates
2. Teacher assistance only for clarifying concepts.

Materials / Resources

- Year 1 and Year 2 Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks
- Examples of bamboo products (e.g., flooring, furniture, textiles), notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Review your Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks on the applications of bamboo in manufacturing.
2. Identify examples of bamboo products and their uses in different industries.
3. Analyse the advantages and limitations of using bamboo in these applications.
4. Share your findings in a small group or write a summary.
5. Compare your analysis with peers and discuss any differences. Suggest additional applications for bamboo in manufacturing.

Note

Include your analysis and summary in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 2.4 Environmental Impact of Bamboo

Aim: To evaluate the environmental impact of using bamboo as a sustainable material.

Mode of Work

1. Independent
2. Teacher assistance for clarifying technical terms.

Materials/Resources: Internet access or textbook chapters on environmental sustainability, notebook and pen

Safety Note

1. Follow ICT lab rules when using computers.
2. Avoid unsafe or unrelated websites.

Instructions

1. Watch short videos or read textbook chapters on the environmental impact of bamboo (e.g., carbon sequestration, renewability, biodegradability).
2. For each environmental benefit, note one key point and its significance.
3. Discuss with peers or write a short paragraph on how bamboo contributes to environmental sustainability.
4. Share your findings with peers and compare environmental benefits. Identify which environmental benefits are most relevant to local contexts.

Note

Include your notes and discussion summary in your Learner Portfolio.

TENSILE STRENGTH OF BAMBOO

Tensile strength shows how much force a material can handle when it is being pulled before it breaks. This is very important in building and making things, because it helps people choose the right materials that will not fail when they are used. If you know a material's tensile strength, you can make sure that what you are building will be strong and safe. For bamboo, knowing its tensile strength matters a lot, since bamboo is being used more and more instead of things like steel and concrete. This is because bamboo is good for the environment and can still be very strong for many uses.

FACTORS INFLUENCING THE TENSILE STRENGTH OF BAMBOO

The strength of bamboo when it is being pulled, also known as tensile strength, depends on several things. These are important to know when choosing bamboo for building or making things.

1. **Bamboo Type**

Different kinds of bamboo are not all the same. Some types are naturally stronger than others because of how their fibres are arranged inside the plant.

2. **Age of Bamboo**

Older bamboo is usually stronger than young bamboo. As bamboo grows, its fibres become tougher and line up better, making it stronger and better for building.

3. **Water Level (Moisture)**

Bamboo that is dry is stronger than bamboo that is wet. Water can make the inside of the bamboo weaker, so dry bamboo is better for holding weight.

4. **Growing Conditions**

Where and how bamboo grows also matters. Good soil and the right weather help the bamboo become stronger, while poor conditions can make it weaker.

Knowing about these factors can help in choosing the best bamboo for different projects, so buildings and products made from bamboo will be safe and long-lasting.

COMPARISON OF BAMBOO TENSILE STRENGTH WITH OTHER MATERIALS

Bamboo is known for being very strong when it is pulled, even though it is not heavy. Because of this, bamboo is a good and eco-friendly choice for making buildings and products. It can be just as strong as some metals and wood but is lighter and better for the environment. This means bamboo is a smart material to use in many different projects.

1. **Strength-to-Weight Ratio**

Bamboo is strong but also very light. Even though metals like steel can be stronger, bamboo gives a lot of strength for how light it is. This makes bamboo useful in places where it is important not to have heavy materials, like in building or making furniture.

2. **Tensile Strength Range**

Some kinds of bamboo can be stretched a lot before breaking, between 100 and 200 megapascals (MPa). This is as strong as, or sometimes stronger than, some woods and weaker metals.

3. **Sustainability and Applications**

Bamboo grows quickly and can be replaced easily, so it is good for the environment. Using bamboo instead of steel, wood, or concrete helps protect nature. Bamboo is used in buildings and other structures because it is strong and eco-friendly.

4. **Educational Focus**

In school, you can test how strong bamboo is by pulling it until it breaks, then compare it to materials like steel. Doing these tests helps you understand why bamboo is a good choice for building and engineering. Table 2.3 shows how bamboo's strength compares with other common building materials.

Table 2.3: Comparison of strength properties of bamboo with other materials.

Materials	Compressive Strength or Yield Strength (N/mm^2)	Tensile Strength (N/mm^2)	Elastic Modulus (N/mm^2)
Spruce wood	43	89	11000
Steel	250	410	21000
Treated Bamboo (*Bambusa vulgaris*)	78	233	20000

IMPORTANCE OF BAMBOO TENSILE STRENGTH IN MANUFACTURING APPLICATIONS

Bamboo is very strong when pulled, which is called having high tensile strength. This strength is why bamboo is used in many things, like building houses, making furniture, and creating new materials. Because bamboo is both strong and light, it is perfect for building things that need to be tough but not heavy. For example, bamboo is made into strips so it can be used in different ways. You can see in Figure 2.7 how bamboo is processed into strips that are then used for construction and furniture making.

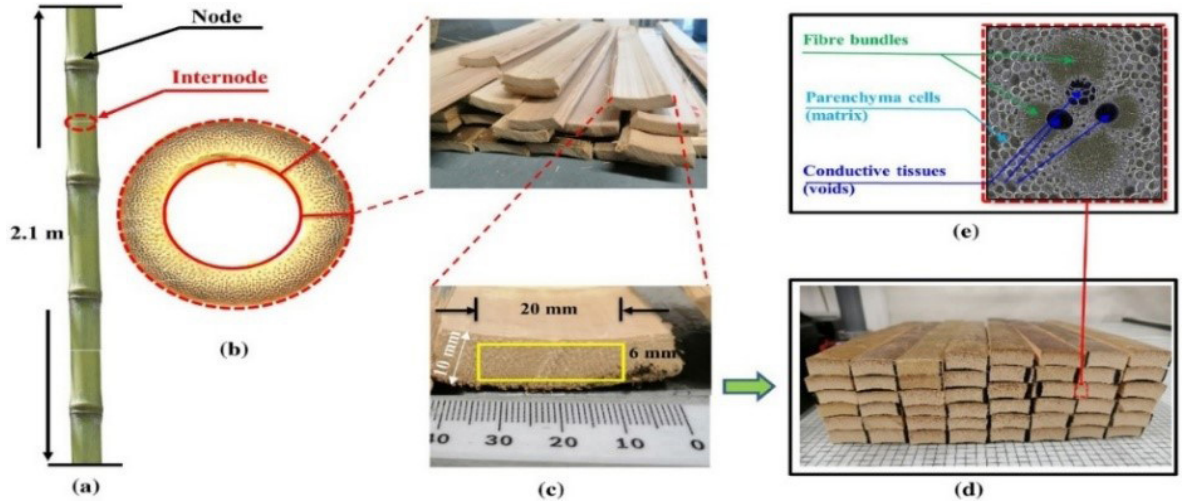


Figure 2.7: Processing overview of bamboo strips with (a) bottom part of culm, (b) bamboo cross-section wall, c strips cutting, (d) short bamboo strips and € vascular bundles and parenchyma matrix (microscopic image) (Al-Rukaibawi &Gyorgy, 2023)

APPLICATIONS IN VARIOUS INDUSTRIES

Construction

Bamboo is very strong when you pull on it, which means it has high tensile strength. Because of this, bamboo is used to build things like frames for houses and scaffolding on building sites. Even though bamboo is light to carry, it does not break easily when you put weight on it or pull it. This makes bamboo a great choice for building strong and flexible structures.



Figure 2.8: A housing structure made of bamboo

Furniture Making

Bamboo is strong, so it is used to make furniture that lasts a long time and looks nice. Furniture made from bamboo does not break easily, so it can handle being used every day. This makes bamboo a good choice for making things like beds, chairs, and tables.



Figure 2.9: Bamboo-made bed and sofa (Anon, 2025) https://www.bloomingville.com/en/inspiration/guide-for-bamboo-furniture

COMPOSITE MATERIALS

Bamboo is now being used to make special materials called composites. This means that bamboo is mixed with other materials to create products that are stronger and more useful. For example, bamboo can be combined with things like medium-density fibreboard, plywood, and bamboo veneer, which are often used to make furniture and other items.

When bamboo fibres are added to these materials, they become tougher, bend without breaking easily, and resist cracks much better. This makes the final products stronger, able to handle more force, and less likely to break if they are dropped or hit. So, using bamboo in composites helps make things that last longer and perform better.



Figure 2.10: Composite bamboo material (Mousavi et al., 2023)

ENVIRONMENTAL BENEFITS

Sustainability

Bamboo is very special because it grows much faster than most other plants. This means people can cut it and use it, and then more bamboo will grow back quickly. Because bamboo is easy to grow again, it is a good choice for making things without harming the environment. Factories and businesses like using bamboo because it helps protect nature and reduces pollution.

MEASUREMENT OF THE TENSILE STRENGTH OF BAMBOO

Tensile strength is a way of measuring how much force bamboo can handle before it breaks when you try to pull it apart. Because bamboo is made up of long fibres running in one direction, it is much stronger when the pulling force goes the same way as the fibres. To find out how strong bamboo is, the test is usually done by pulling it along the length of the bamboo, following the direction of the fibres. This shows the maximum strength bamboo can give when being stretched.

SAMPLE PREPARATION

1. **Selection**

Pick straight pieces of bamboo without any cracks or marks, and make sure the bamboo is fully grown and from the main stem. These parts are stronger because their fibres are well developed.

2. **Shaping**

Before testing bamboo for strength, the pieces are shaped into special forms that look a bit like a dumbbell or a dog bone. This makes sure the test is fair and the bamboo breaks in the middle, not at the ends where it is held. shapes, or clamped between metal end-tabs to prevent crushing.

3. **Conditioning**

Before testing bamboo for strength, it is important to keep all the bamboo samples in a room where the temperature and amount of water in the air (humidity) are controlled. This is done so that every piece of bamboo has the same amount of moisture inside. The amount of water in the bamboo can change how strong it is, so making sure all samples are treated the same way helps make the test fair and the results accurate.

TESTING PROCEDURE

1. **Test Setup**

To test how strong bamboo is, a special machine called a Universal Testing Machine (UTM) is used. This machine gently pulls on the bamboo, making the force go up slowly, until the bamboo finally snaps. By doing this, we can see how much force the bamboo can handle before it breaks, helping us learn more about its strength.

2. **Alignment**

When testing how strong bamboo is, it's important to make sure the bamboo piece is held tightly so it doesn't slip or move out of place. This helps to get the right results when checking how much force the bamboo can take before it breaks.

3. **Loading**

Pull the bamboo piece slowly and steadily until it breaks. This helps you see how much force the bamboo can take before snapping.

4. **Data Recording**

During the test, write down how much force is being used to pull the bamboo, and also note how much longer the bamboo gets as you pull it. Keep recording these numbers for the whole test, from the start until the bamboo breaks. This helps you see how the bamboo stretches and how strong it is before it finally snaps.

CALCULATION

The tensile strength (σ) is calculated using the formula: $\sigma = \sigma = \frac{F}{A}$ (Equation 1)

Where: F = Maximum load at failure (N)

A = Cross-sectional area of the specimen (mm^2)

STANDARDS USED

To make sure the results are fair and can be trusted, scientists use standards (special rules) when testing how strong bamboo is. These standards tell them exactly how to carry out the test, so everyone does it the same way and gets results that can be compared. These standards are:

1. ISO 22156: Bamboo structures – Design and construction
2. ASTM D143: Standard methods for testing small clear specimens of timber
3. JIS A 5905: Japanese standard for laminated bamboo and panels.

INFLUENCING FACTORS

Several factors can affect the measured tensile strength of bamboo:

1. Moisture Content: When bamboo is dry, it is usually stronger because water can make the fibres weaker.
2. Age and Species: Different types of bamboo and how old the bamboo is can change how strong it is. Some are naturally stronger than others.
3. Presence of Nodes or Defects: Nodes or physical imperfections can significantly impact tensile performance.
4. Specimen Geometry and Surface Preparation: Accurate shaping and preparation are critical for reliable results.

CONCLUSION

Accurate measurement of tensile strength is essential for assessing bamboo's potential in structural applications. By following standardised testing procedures and accounting for natural variability, engineers can reliably incorporate bamboo into sustainable design and construction projects.

APPLICATIONS AND IMPLICATIONS OF BAMBOO TENSILE STRENGTH

APPLICATIONS

1. Construction

Bamboo's high tensile strength makes it an ideal choice for construction, where it serves as a sustainable alternative to traditional materials. It is often used for frameworks and scaffolding due to its strength-to-weight ratio and renewable nature. Bamboo's ability to withstand tension while remaining lightweight contributes to its efficacy in structural applications. However, if the bamboo has bumps, nodes, or any signs of damage, its strength can be significantly reduced, making it more prone to breaking under stress. Therefore, careful selection and inspection of bamboo for construction purposes are essential to ensure safety and reliability.

2. Furniture Making

Bamboo is widely used in furniture manufacturing, where its tensile strength provides both resilience and aesthetic appeal. The natural beauty of bamboo, combined with its durability, makes it a popular choice for creating stylish and long-lasting furniture. Like construction applications, any imperfections or damage in the bamboo can weaken the material, potentially compromising the quality and lifespan of the furniture produced.

3. Composite Materials

Bamboo fibres are increasingly used in composite materials, enhancing their strength and flexibility. These composites find applications in various industrial sectors, offering a sustainable option that leverages bamboo's natural properties. It is important that the bamboo fibres used are free from defects, as flaws can diminish the overall effectiveness and structural integrity of the composite materials.

4. **Pulp and Paper Industry**

Bamboo is also utilised in the pulp and paper industry, where its fibres contribute to producing durable paper products. The tensile strength of bamboo fibres ensures that the paper is strong and resilient. Nevertheless, damaged or compromised bamboo can negatively affect the quality and strength of the final paper products.

IMPLICATIONS

1. **Sustainability**

Bamboo is very strong when you pull on it (tensile strength), which makes it a great choice instead of other materials like steel and wood. Bamboo grows quickly and can be replaced easily, so using it is better for the environment and helps protect nature.

2. **Economic Growth**

Using bamboo helps the economy to grow, especially in places where bamboo is common. It can create jobs for people and support businesses, which means more money and opportunities for local communities. It also encourages people to use resources in a way that does not harm the environment.

3. **Innovation in Manufacturing**

Because bamboo has special qualities, it inspires people to come up with new ideas and products. Learning about bamboo in school helps students think critically and solve problems, which can lead to important inventions and improvements in different industries.

Activity 2.5 Tensile Strength Exploration

Aim: To understand and measure the tensile strength of bamboo.

Mode of Work

1. Independent or small group (2–4 learners)
2. Teacher assistance only for clarifying concepts.

Materials / Resources

- Year 1 and Year 2 Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks
- Bamboo samples, Universal Testing Machine (UTM), notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Review your Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks on tensile strength and material properties.
2. Prepare bamboo samples for tensile testing.
3. Conduct tensile tests using the Universal Testing Machine (UTM) and record the maximum load and elongation.

4. Calculate the tensile strength using the formula : where () is the maximum load and () is the cross-sectional area.
5. Share your findings in a small group or write a summary.
6. Compare your results with peers and discuss any differences. Suggest improvements for the testing procedure.

Note

Include your calculations and summary in your Learner Portfolio.

FAILURE OF MATERIALS

Understanding material failure is very important in manufacturing and engineering because it helps create safe and strong structures. Material failure happens when a material can no longer do what it is supposed to do because of damage or breakdown. Recognising what causes these failures is essential to prevent serious accidents, like the tragic Melcom building collapse in Achimota, Accra, in 2012, which showed the dangers of using poor-quality materials and bad construction methods.

Material failure means that a material cannot support loads or function properly anymore due to wear and tear. This can happen for various reasons, like being overloaded, getting worn out over time, or being damaged by rust. When materials fail, they can break, bend, or get damaged on the surface. Learning about these problems helps engineers choose the right materials, improve designs, and take steps to prevent failures. Real-life examples, such as broken metal bridges or damaged aeroplane parts, demonstrate how important it is to understand material failure to avoid serious accidents.

EXPLAINING THE TERM ‘FAILURE OF MATERIALS’

Material failure happens when a material can no longer do what it is supposed to do in a system or structure. It often makes people think of something breaking entirely, but it can also mean less obvious issues like bending too much, wearing down, rusting, or getting tired over time. These problems can build up slowly and can still cause serious issues if they are not caught early. When materials fail, it can put safety and performance at risk, affecting things like bridges, buildings, and machines. That is why it is very important in materials science and engineering to understand how and why these failures happen. This knowledge helps create better materials, improve designs, and avoid dangerous situations.

CLASSIFICATION/ TYPES OF MATERIAL FAILURE

Material failure can be classified into several key types based on the mechanisms and conditions under which materials cease to perform their intended function.

1. **Fracture**

A Fracture happens when a material breaks into two or more pieces because it has too much stress.

This usually occurs when the force applied is more than what the material can handle. There are two main types of fractures namely:

a. Brittle Fracture - This happens suddenly with little to no bending or stretching of the material.

b. Ductile Fracture - This occurs after the material has changed shape a lot before breaking.

The type of fracture depends on what the material is made of, how it is being pushed or pulled, and the conditions around it. Before a material finally breaks, it often goes through a slow process. This process can be broken down into three stages:

a. Crack Initiation- A small crack starts to form.

b. Subcritical Fracture - The crack grows slowly.

c. Final Fracture - The material fully breaks apart.

These stages can happen with or without any bending or stretching of the material. For example, if a concrete beam is overloaded, it may start to crack before eventually breaking completely.

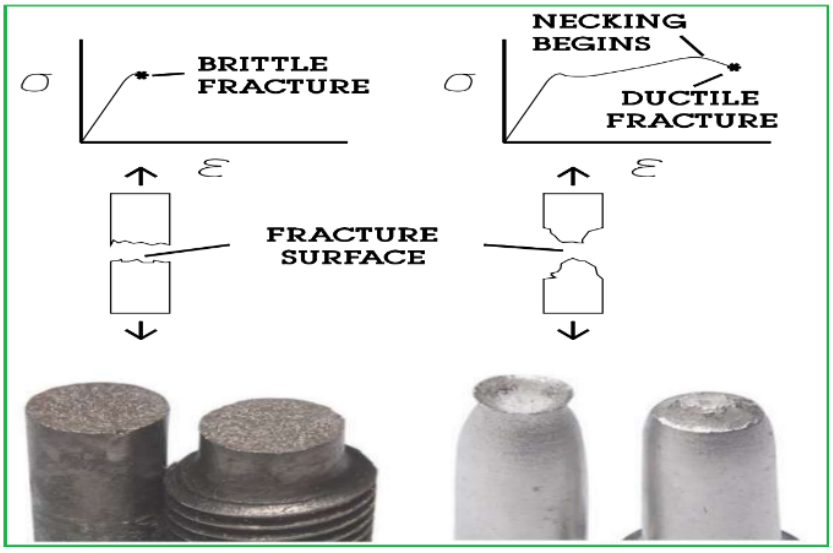


Figure 2.11: Brittle and ductile fractures in materials (Dey, 2021)

2. **Fatigue**

Fatigue failure happens when a material is exposed to repeated stress over time. Even if the stress is less than what the material can normally handle, tiny cracks can form and grow, leading to failure. Think of fatigue as the weakening of a material caused by changing loads or forces. This damage often starts in one small area and increases over time, which can result in serious problems. This type of failure is common in things like bridges, parts of aeroplanes, and machines that move or vibrate a lot.



Figure 2.12: Fatigue failure results from repeated or cyclic loading over time (Velling, 2020)

3. Creep

Creep is when a material slowly changes shape over time when it is under constant pressure, especially when it is hot. This can be a big problem in machines like turbine engines and boilers that work under high heat and pressure for a long time.

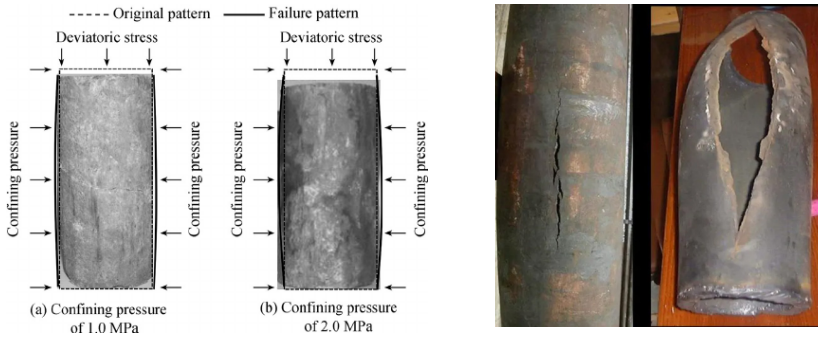


Figure 2.13: Creep failure of a material under constant stress (Yu et al., 2015; Monika, 2025) https://www.researchgate.net/figure/Typical-creep-failure-patterns-of-clastic-rock_fig6_273791127
https://blog.goldsupplier.com/creep-in-engineering-materials/

4. Wear

Wear is when the surface of a material slowly gets damaged or changes shape because of movement, like rubbing or scratching. This can make parts like gears, bearings, or engine components not work well or even break down completely. Sometimes, small amounts of wear are ignored, but they can lead to bigger problems over time, causing parts to wear out faster or create issues that come and go.



Figure 2.14: Wear failure resulting from gradual loss of material on the surface due to mechanical action (Pooja, 2005) https://www.santramengineers.com/most-common-causes-of-gear-failure/

5. **Corrosion**

Corrosion happens when a material, usually metal, reacts with its surroundings, causing it to break down slowly over time. A common example of this is when steel gets rusty in damp weather. Corrosion weakens materials and structures, which can lead to serious problems if it isn't noticed early. It's important to regularly check for signs of corrosion to keep things safe and strong.



Figure 2.15: Failure resulted from the rusting of steel in humid conditions

CAUSES OF MATERIAL FAILURE

Material failure can result from a combination of factors that compromise the structural integrity and performance of materials. The most common causes include:

1. **Overloading**

When a material is pushed beyond what it can handle, it can break suddenly or slowly over time. This usually happens because of unexpected heavy loads, using the material incorrectly, or not correctly estimating how much stress it can withstand during the design process.

2. **Material Defects**

Materials can have problems like cracks, gaps, or tiny bits of other materials inside them, which can make them weaker. These issues can happen when the raw materials are made or during their processing. They are often the places where a material can start to break when pressure or stress is applied.

3. **Environmental Conditions**

Harsh environmental conditions, such as high heat, humidity, exposure to chemicals, or strong sunlight, can weaken materials as time goes on. For example, when metals come into contact with rust-causing substances, they can start to rust. Similarly, if materials are exposed to extreme heat, they can lose their shape and strength. It's important to be aware of these factors to keep materials strong and safe.

4. **Improper Design**

Design problems can cause materials to break or fail sooner than expected. For example, if there are sharp edges or holes in a structure, these can create weak spots where cracks can start. It is important to consider how much weight a structure can

hold and how that weight is distributed to avoid these issues. Properly planning the design helps to make sure things stay strong and safe.

5. **Manufacturing Errors**

Mistakes made when making a material can lead to problems. For example, if the heat treatment is done wrong, welding is not done properly, or if there are errors in machining, it can create weaknesses in the material. These problems might not be seen right away, but they can affect how well the material works when it's underweight or stress.

MECHANISMS OF MATERIAL FAILURE

Material failure mechanisms are the ways materials can break down or lose their strength. Knowing how these failures happen is very important. It helps us predict when materials might fail, design better materials, and find ways to prevent problems. Understanding these ideas can make things safer and more reliable in everyday life. Key mechanisms include:

1. **Crack Initiation and Propagation**

Cracks often start from tiny defects on the surface, problems in the material's structure, or areas where stress builds up. Once a crack begins, it can gradually get bigger when the material is pushed or pulled, eventually leading to a break. This process is especially important to understand when looking at fatigue (wear from repeated use) and brittle fractures (breaks that happen suddenly).

2. **Dislocation Movement**

In crystals, plastic deformation happens mainly when dislocations, or defects in the crystal structure, move around. How easily these dislocations can move affects how strong or flexible the material is. If there are too many dislocations moving, the material can become harder but may eventually break if put under repeated stress.

3. **Diffusion**

Diffusion is the way atoms or molecules move around inside a material. This movement can happen more quickly when the temperature is high. It is important because it affects how materials behave over time, especially when they are heated. For example, in a process called creep, which happens at high temperatures, diffusion can cause the material to slowly change shape. Additionally, diffusion can lead to something called intergranular corrosion, where atoms move along the edges of tiny grains in the material, making it weaker over time.

TESTING FOR MATERIAL FAILURE/METHODS FOR FAILURE ANALYSIS

Failure analysis is the process of figuring out why materials fail. Engineers use different tests to understand how and why this happens. By doing this, they can prevent similar failures in the future and make better designs and improve quality control. This is important to ensure that products are safe and work well. Key methods include:

1. **Non-Destructive Testing (NDT)**

NDT techniques allow the inspection of materials and components without causing damage. Common methods include:

a. Ultrasonic Testing (UT): Uses high-frequency sound waves to detect internal flaws or discontinuities.

b. Radiographic Testing (RT): Uses X-rays or gamma rays to reveal internal defects such as voids, cracks, or inclusions.

c. These methods are essential for in-service inspections and quality assurance.

2. **Fractography**

This method looks closely at broken surfaces using special tools like optical microscopes or scanning electron microscopes (SEM). It helps to figure out how something broke, whether it was due to being too stiff (brittle), too flexible (ductile), or from repeated stress (fatigue). By examining features like lines, tiny dents, or flat areas, we can understand the reason behind the failure.

3. **Metallography**

Metallography is a way scientists and engineers look closely at metals to see what they are made of inside. First, they carefully prepare a small piece of the metal, making it smooth and shiny. Then, they use a microscope to look at it. By doing this, they can spot problems like weak spots between the tiny grains of the metal, how different parts are spread out, or any other differences inside the metal that could cause it to break or not work well.

4. **Mechanical Testing**

Standard mechanical tests are conducted to assess the material's properties and behaviour under different loading conditions. These include:

a. Tensile Testing: Evaluates strength and ductility.

b. Fatigue Testing: Determines resistance to cyclic loading.

c. Impact Testing (e.g., Charpy or Izod tests): Measures toughness and ability to absorb energy during sudden loading

CONSEQUENCES/ IMPORTANCE OF MATERIAL FAILURE

Understanding why materials fail is very important in engineering and manufacturing. When materials break or do not work as expected, it can lead to serious problems, including safety issues and loss of money. By studying material failure carefully, engineers can find ways to prevent these problems. This helps to make products last longer and saves costs, making everything work better.

1. **Prevention of Accidents**

Material failure can cause serious problems, like buildings collapsing, machines breaking down, or accidents while moving goods. These issues can lead to loss of life, injuries, or harm to the environment. To prevent this, engineers study how materials

can fail and carry out careful tests. This helps them design stronger materials and safer structures, which protect people and keep the community safe.

2. **Extension of Product Lifespan**

Material failure often causes products to wear out too soon. If engineers can spot potential problems early, they can create products and systems that last longer. This means less need for repairs or replacements. For example, by taking care of things like bridges, roads, and pipelines and choosing the right materials, we can make them last longer. This not only saves money but also provides better value in the long run.

3. **Cost Reduction**

Material failures can cause a lot of money to be lost because of repairs, time lost when machines or equipment can't operate, legal issues, and replacing broken parts. To avoid these problems, companies can choose strong materials, design things better, and check everything regularly for any issues. Catching problems early makes it easier and cheaper to fix them before they become bigger issues. This helps prevent expensive repairs and claims for problems that arise later on.

4. **Improvement in Material Design and Selection**

Understanding how materials break or fail is important for improving material science. By studying these failures, engineers can design better products, choose the right materials for different jobs, and create stronger and more efficient options. This continuous improvement helps industries like aerospace, construction, and manufacturing produce better and more reliable products that can meet increasing demands.

5. **Enhanced Safety and Efficiency in Engineering Solutions**

Engineers study how materials can fail and how to stop that from happening. This helps them create safer and more reliable systems that work really well. This is very important in fields like aeroplanes, cars, energy production, and building structures, where the strength and performance of materials can affect safety and how well everything works.

PREVENTING MATERIAL FAILURE

Keeping materials from failing is important because it helps make sure that buildings, bridges, and other structures last longer, stay safe, and work properly. Various strategies can be employed to reduce the risk of failure and enhance material reliability:

1. **Proper Material Selection**

Choosing the right materials for a job is very important to avoid problems later on. When picking materials, consider how strong they are, how they react to different environments, and whether they can handle the conditions they will face, like heat, moisture, or chemicals. For example, using stainless steel for things that will be in wet places or using carbon fibre in products that need to be strong but light can help prevent failures and make sure everything works well.

2. **Design Optimisation**

Good design is very important to avoid problems with materials breaking or failing. Engineers need to pay attention to weak spots, like sharp edges or holes, because these can start cracks. To make sure things are safe, they use safety factors, which means adding extra strength so materials can handle more than what they are expected to deal with. Additionally, design optimisation involves using special computer programs called Finite Element Analysis (FEA). These programs help predict how materials will react when they are pushed or pulled in different ways, allowing for safer and more efficient designs.

3. **Quality Control**

Making sure that products are made well is very important to avoid problems later on. Using strict checks and tests while the products are being made, like Non-Destructive Testing (NDT) methods such as ultrasound or X-rays, helps ensure that the materials and parts used are of good quality. By regularly watching the manufacturing process, it's easier to spot any flaws, like cracks or empty spaces in the material, before they become serious issues. This helps keep the products strong and safe to use.

4. **Regular Maintenance**

Keeping materials and structures in good condition is important to make them last longer. Regular maintenance should include checking for any visible damage, protecting against rust, and ensuring everything is structurally sound. For example, painting steel structures regularly helps prevent rust, and changing worn-out parts in machines can stop them from breaking down too soon. This not only keeps things running smoothly but also saves money on repairs or replacements.

REAL-WORLD EXAMPLES OF MATERIAL FAILURE

Material failure happens when structures like roads, bridges, or buildings break down or don't work as they should. This can lead to serious problems for safety and infrastructure everywhere in the world, including in Ghana. It's important to understand how these failures can affect the community and the need for strong, reliable materials in construction. These real-world examples highlight the importance of understanding and addressing material failure to prevent disasters:

BRIDGE COLLAPSES

In Ghana, the collapse of bridges is a serious problem caused by wear and tear, rust, and too much weight. A good example is the Atimpoku Bridge, which fell in 2018 because it was getting old and rusty, and too many vehicles were using it. This collapse created problems for transportation and local businesses, showing how important it is to regularly check and maintain old bridges. Bridges in rural and semi-urban areas are especially at risk, so making sure they are safe is crucial for everyone's safety. Figure 2.16 shows the bridge linking Adidome, Juapong, that collapsed.



Figure 2.16: Collapse of bridge linking Adidome, Juapong leaving residents stranded (Aggor, 2024) https://citinewsroom.com/2024/01/collapse-of-bridge-linking-adidome-juapong-leaves-residents-stranded/

AIRCRAFT FAILURES

Fatigue failure is a serious issue in aviation that can lead to dangerous situations. For example, in 2015, an aircraft from Ghana Airways had an engine failure because of metal fatigue in its engine parts. This incident highlighted how important it is to have regular maintenance and inspections to find any tiny cracks caused by wear and tear, especially in planes that fly a lot. Making sure to prevent these kinds of failures is essential for keeping air travel safe and reliable, both in Ghana and around the world.

PIPELINE BURSTS

Ghana's oil and gas industry is growing, but this also means there are more risks, like pipes bursting. One example happened in 2012 when a pipeline leak at the Tema Oil Refinery caused pollution. This shows that we need to keep a close eye on the pipelines to make sure they're safe. As Ghana's oil industry develops, it's important to take care of these pipelines and use materials that resist rust and damage. This will help prevent problems in the future.

GLOBAL REAL-WORLD EXAMPLES OF MATERIAL FAILURE

The Tacoma Narrows Bridge in Washington State collapsed in 1940 because of a problem called aeroelastic flutter. This happens when strong winds make a bridge shake in a way that it wasn't built to handle. Although the materials used in the bridge were not faulty, the design didn't take the wind's effects into account. Because of this collapse, engineers changed how they design and test bridges to prevent similar failures in the future.



Figure 2.17: Tacoma Narrows Bridge twisting https://lib.uw.edu/specialcollections/collections/exhibits/tnb/collapse/

Activity 2.6 Understanding Material Failure

Aim: To understand the concept of material failure and its types.

Mode of Work

1. Independent or with a partner
2. Teacher assistance only for clarifying concepts.

Materials / Resources

- Year 1 and Year 2 Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks
- Internet access for research
- Notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Review your Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks on material properties and failure mechanisms.
2. Research different types of material failure (e.g., fracture, fatigue, creep) using textbooks or the internet.
3. Create a summary of each type of failure, including definitions, causes, and examples.
4. Share your summaries with your group and discuss any differences. Suggest improvements for understanding material failure.

Note

Include your summaries and discussion points in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 2.7 Investigating Fatigue Failure

Aim: To investigate the concept of fatigue failure in materials.

Mode of Work

1. Independent or small group (2–3 learners)
2. Teacher assistance for clarifying technical terms.

Materials / Resources: internet access or textbook chapters on fatigue failure, notebook and pen

Safety Note

1. Follow lab safety rules when handling materials and equipment.
2. Avoid unsafe or unrelated websites.

Instructions

1. Watch short videos or read textbook chapters on fatigue failure in materials.

 https://www.youtube.com/shorts/QrT3KcFKuCY	 https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=rGKVhEXceXY
 https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=LhUclxBUV_E	 https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2ezQkVT5xEw

2. For each example of fatigue failure, note one key point and its significance.
3. Discuss with peers or write a short paragraph on how fatigue failure occurs and its impact on material performance.
4. Identify which examples are most relevant to specific applications.

Note

Include your notes and discussion summary in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 2.8 Exploring Creep in Materials

Aim: To explore the concept of creep in materials.

Mode of Work

1. Independent or small group (2–4 learners)
2. Teacher assistance only for clarifying concepts.

Materials / Resources

- Year 1 and Year 2 Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks
- Internet access for research, notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Review your Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks on creep in materials.
2. Identify examples of creep in different materials and their applications.
3. Analyse the factors that contribute to creep and how it affects material performance.
4. Compare your analysis with peers and discuss any differences. Suggest additional examples of creep in materials.

Note

Include your analysis and summary in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 2.9 Case Study on Material Failure

Aim: To evaluate real-world examples of material failure.

Mode of Work

1. Independent or small group (2–3 learners)
2. Teacher assistance for clarifying technical terms.

Materials / Resources

- Internet access or textbook chapters on case studies of material failure
- Notebook and pen

Safety Note

1. Follow ICT lab rules when using computers.
2. Avoid unsafe or unrelated websites.

Instructions

1. Watch short videos or read textbook chapters on real-world case studies of material failure (e.g., bridge collapses, aircraft failures).

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=I8DdzDSbkK0	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=mXTSnZgrfxM
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=aH-FYsxea7U	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=6LcGrLnzYuU

2. For each case study, note one key point and its significance.
3. Discuss with peers or write a short paragraph on how material failure occurred and its impact on safety and performance.
4. Share your findings with peers and compare case studies. Identify which case studies are most relevant to local contexts.

Note

Include your notes and discussion summary in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 2.10 Creep Behaviour Analysis

Aim: To analyse the creep behaviour of materials under constant stress.

Mode of Work

1. Independent or small group (2–3 learners)
2. Teacher assistance for clarifying technical terms.

Materials / Resources

- Internet access or textbook chapters on creep behaviour
- Notebook and pen

Safety note

1. Follow lab safety rules when handling materials and equipment.
2. Avoid unsafe or unrelated websites.

Instructions

1. Watch short videos or read textbook chapters on creep behaviour (e.g., materials under constant stress).

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=zhhM2pG_m64	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=6TbyAagy5SE
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=FztoEU87B90	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=1j3CSbPFWJA

2. For each material type, note one key property and one application (e.g., turbine blades in jet engines).
3. Discuss with peers or write a short paragraph on how creep behaviour affects material performance in real-world applications.
4. Share your findings with peers and compare applications. Identify which materials are most susceptible to creep and why.

Note

Include your notes and discussion summary in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 2.11 Fatigue Failure Investigation

Aim: To investigate the causes and effects of fatigue failure in materials.

Mode of Work

1. Independent or small group (2–4 learners)
2. Teacher assistance only for clarifying concepts.

Materials / Resources

- Year 1 and Year 2 Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks
- Examples of materials subjected to cyclic loading (e.g., metal rods, beams)

Instructions

1. Review your Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks on fatigue failure and cyclic loading.
2. Identify examples of materials that have failed due to fatigue.

3. Analyse the failure patterns and note the stages of fatigue failure (crack initiation, propagation, and final fracture).
4. Share your findings in a small group or write a summary.
5. Compare your analysis with peers and discuss any differences. Suggest methods to prevent fatigue failure in materials.

Note

Include your analysis and summary in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 2.12 Fracture Mechanics Study

Aim: To study the mechanics of fracture in different materials.

Mode of Work: Independent or small group (2–3 learners), Teacher assistance for clarifying technical terms.

Materials / Resources

- Internet access or textbook chapters on fracture mechanics
- Notebook and pen

Safety note

1. Follow lab safety rules when handling materials and equipment.
2. Avoid unsafe or unrelated websites.

Instructions

1. Watch short videos or read textbook chapters on fracture mechanics (e.g., ductile vs. brittle fracture).

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=IJ73e1Bggm0	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Y5jF61hY6jE

2. For each material type, note one key property and one application (e.g., glass shattering upon impact).
3. Discuss with peers or write a short paragraph on how fracture mechanics are applied in engineering design.
4. Share your findings with peers and compare applications. Identify which materials are most prone to brittle fracture and why.

Note

Include your notes and discussion summary in your Learner Portfolio

CONCEPTS OF CREEP, FATIGUE OR FRACTURE IN FAILURE OF MATERIALS

Understanding creep, fatigue, and fracture is important in manufacturing engineering because these are some of the main reasons materials fail. These concepts help in designing and analysing structures and components used in engineering. Knowing about these topics is essential for anyone planning to work in the manufacturing field.

DEFINITION AND EXPLANATION OF CREEP, FATIGUE, AND FRACTURE

CREEP

Creep is a process where materials slowly change shape or deform when they are under constant pressure for a long time, especially at high temperatures. This happens in three main stages:first stage, called primary creep, the material deforms quickly at first, but the speed starts to slow down. Then, in the second stage, known as secondary creep, it reaches a steady rate of deformation where it changes at a constant speed. Finally, in the third stage, called tertiary creep, the rate of deformation speeds up again, which can lead to the material breaking or failing. Creep is commonly observed in environments like power plants and jet engines, where materials face constant stress over extended periods.

FATIGUE

Fatigue is when a material becomes weak and damaged due to repeated stress over time, eventually leading to its breaking. This process happens in three main steps: first, small cracks begin to form in the material (crack initiation); next, these cracks grow larger and spread (crack propagation); and finally, the material completely breaks apart (final fracture). Fatigue is an important factor to consider in structures and machines that experience repeated stress, like bridges, aeroplane wings, and engines. Understanding fatigue helps in designing safer and more reliable materials and structures.

FRACTURE

Fracture is when a material breaks apart under stress, and it can be classified into two main types: ductile and brittle. Ductile fracture occurs when a material stretches and changes shape significantly before it breaks, while brittle fracture happens suddenly with little to no stretching. Understanding how fractures work is crucial for engineers, as it allows them to choose or design materials that can handle stress without cracking or breaking. This knowledge is essential for creating strong structures and products.

Factors Influencing Creep, Fatigue, and Fracture

CREEP

Creep is when materials slowly change shape over time while under constant pressure, especially at high temperatures. Several factors influence how quickly creep happens:

1. Temperature: High temperatures make materials deform more quickly. This is important in places like power plants and jet engines where there is a lot of heat.
2. Stress Level: The more pressure (or stress) on a material, the faster it will change shape. Engineers must be careful when designing structures to ensure they can withstand this stress.
3. Material Properties: Different materials have special characteristics that affect how they react to heat and stress. Each type of material behaves differently under these conditions.

Understanding these factors is crucial for designing safe and effective structures and machines.

FATIGUE

It happens when materials get weak and eventually break due to repeated stress or loading. Here are some key points to understand:

1. Magnitude and Frequency of Load: If a material is under a heavy load or gets stressed many times, it has a higher chance of failing or breaking.
2. Surface Finish: If the surface of a material is rough or has any imperfections, these can create weak spots. This means the material will not last as long before it breaks.
3. Environmental Conditions: External factors like rust or corrosion can make materials weaker and speed up the process of breaking down.

Understanding these factors helps in preventing fatigue and improving the life of materials.

FRACTURE

Fracture is the separation or fragmentation of a material under stress, which depends on:

1. Material Toughness: Materials with higher toughness can absorb more energy before fracturing, reducing fracture risk.
2. Stress State: The type and distribution of stress in the material influence fracture behaviour.
3. Temperature: Lower temperatures can promote brittle fracture in certain materials.
4. Presence of Flaws or Cracks: Existing imperfections serve as stress concentrators, increasing the likelihood of fracture.

DIFFERENCES BETWEEN CREEP, FATIGUE, AND FRACTURE

The difference between creep, fatigue and fracture has been displayed in Table 2.4.

Table 2.4: Differences between Creep, Fatigue, and Fracture

Aspect	Creep	Fatigue	Fracture
Cause	Occurs under constant stress and high temperature over time.	Results from cyclic loading and repeated stress cycles.	It can occur suddenly due to stress exceeding material strength.
Characteristics	Time-dependent deformation with stages: primary, secondary, and tertiary.	Progressive damage with stages: crack initiation, propagation, and final fracture.	It can be ductile (with plastic deformation) or brittle (sudden, with little deformation).
Common Environments	High-temperature applications such as turbine blades and power plants.	Components subjected to repeated loading, like bridges and rotating machinery.	Occurs in materials susceptible to cracking, like glass, under impact.
Example	A turbine blade is failing after prolonged high-temperature exposure.	An axle breaks after many stress cycles.	Glass shattering upon impact represents brittle fracture

TESTING FOR CREEP, FATIGUE, AND FRACTURE

When testing materials for problems like creep, fatigue, and fracture, different methods are used because each type of failure has its own special features and causes. Creep happens when a material slowly deforms under constant stress over time. Fatigue occurs when a material gets weak after being stressed repeatedly, while a fracture is when the material breaks suddenly. Each of these failures requires specific tests to understand how and why they happen.

CREEP TESTING

Creep testing is a way to see how materials change shape when they are under a constant load for a long time, especially when it is hot. In this test, a steady weight is placed on a sample, and the changes in its shape are checked over a period. This testing is important for understanding how materials behave in tough conditions, like in turbine blades used in power plants and jet engines. The results show if a material can handle long periods of stress without bending too much. This helps engineers choose the right materials that will stay strong and safe in high-temperature situations.

FATIGUE TESTING

Fatigue testing is a way to see how well a material can handle repeated stress over time. This is important for things that go through many cycles of stress, like bridges, aeroplane wings, and machines that rotate. In this testing, a sample material is loaded and unloaded repeatedly until it breaks. The results are usually shown in a graph called an S-N curve, which compares the amount of stress to how many times the material can take that stress before it fails. By studying fatigue behaviour, engineers can design stronger components that won't break easily after being used many times. Understanding this helps make sure important structures and machines last longer and stay safe.

FRACTURE TESTING

Fracture testing is a method used to see how well a material can resist breaking when a crack starts. It helps us understand how tough a material is and how much stress it can handle before it fails. In this test, a material that has already been cracked is put under pressure to see what happens until it breaks. This type of testing is very important in areas like transportation, where materials need to endure hits and sudden forces. By knowing how strong and crack-resistant a material is, engineers can create safer and tougher products that will not easily break under pressure.

PREVENTION OF CREEP, FATIGUE, AND FRACTURE

Avoiding material failure involves three main steps: choosing the right materials, designing things wisely, and keeping an eye on them with regular maintenance. Different types of failures, such as creep (the slow deformation of materials), fatigue (weakening from repeated use), and fracture (breaking), each have specific methods to help prevent them from happening. By understanding these strategies, you can reduce the chances of failure and ensure that materials last longer.

Strategies to minimise creep, fatigue, and fracture include:

CREEP PREVENTION

To reduce creep, which is when materials slowly change shape when heated, engineers need to choose materials that can withstand high temperatures. Good options are materials like super alloys, ceramics, or special steels that are designed to handle heat without losing strength. These materials are often used in places like power plants and turbines, where it's really hot.

FATIGUE PREVENTION

Fatigue in materials means that they can weaken over time due to repeated stress. To help prevent this, design parts with smoother shapes instead of sharp corners and make sure surfaces are finished well, like polishing them. Avoid changing the thickness of a material suddenly because it can create weak points. Regular checks using non-destructive testing (NDT) can spot small cracks early before they cause serious problems.

FRACTURE PREVENTION

To prevent fractures in materials, it is important to choose strong and flexible materials that can handle stress without breaking. This means ensuring that during the manufacturing process, any internal defects, holes, or sharp edges are kept to a minimum. Having strict quality control is crucial, which includes checking for any flaws and making sure the materials are heat-treated correctly. This will help reduce the chances of fractures happening.

GENERAL STRATEGIES

It is important to regularly check and maintain structures to catch any early signs of wear and tear. By doing routine inspections and following proper design guidelines, we can help keep buildings and structures safe and strong for a long time.

TESTING FOR MATERIAL FAILURE/ METHODS FOR FAILURE ANALYSIS

Failure analysis is an important process in engineering that helps figure out why a material or structure broke or didn't work properly. It uses different methods to look at problems and find out what went wrong. This information is useful for making better designs, choosing the right materials, and improving how things are maintained. Testing for material failure includes:

1. **Visual Inspection**

The first step in figuring out why something failed is to look at it closely. This visual inspection can show clear signs of damage like dents, colour changes, cracks, or rust. These signs give important hints about what went wrong and where the problem is.

2. **Non-Destructive Testing (NDT)**

NDT techniques allow for the detection of internal or surface flaws without causing damage to the component. Methods include:

Ultrasonic Testing: This method uses sound waves that are too high for us to hear to find cracks or empty spaces inside materials. It's like using a special kind of "hearing" to check for problems inside something without breaking it open.

Radiographic Testing: X-rays or gamma rays are used to look inside objects. This helps us understand their inner structure without breaking them apart.

Magnetic Particle and Dye Penetrant Testing: This method helps you find cracks on the surface of materials like metals, including iron, and other non-porous materials.

3. **Fractography (Fracture Surface Analysis)**

This technique involves looking closely at the broken surface of materials using special microscopes. By doing this, you can find out how and why the material failed. There are different ways a material can break, like being brittle (breaking easily), ductile (bending before breaking), getting tired from repeated stress, or cracking from exposure to certain chemicals. When examining the fracture, you might see specific patterns, such as small marks or dimples, which help scientists figure out where the break started and how it happened. This study helps us understand how to avoid similar failures in the future.

EFFECTS OF CREEP, FATIGUE, AND FRACTURE

Material failure can have serious effects. When materials break down, it does not just stop things from working; it can also threaten people's safety, harm the environment, and cost a lot of money. For example, if a pipeline carrying oil or gas fails because it has been used too long, it can leak. This can cause pollution, disrupt supply, and lead to expensive cleanup efforts.

Similarly, if a bridge or building collapses because of hidden weaknesses, it can put many lives at risk and damage the area around it. These situations highlight why it is so important to design things well, choose the right materials, and regularly check for problems. By understanding how materials react to different forces and conditions, engineers can reduce risks, make structures last longer, and keep safety standards high.

Activity 2.13 Understanding Material Failure

Aim: To understand the concept of material failure and its types.

Mode of Work

1. Independent or small group (2–4 learners)
2. Teacher assistance only for clarifying concepts.

Materials / Resources

- Year 1 and Year 2 Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks
- Internet access for research
- Notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Review your Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks on material properties and failure mechanisms.
2. Research different types of material failure (e.g., fracture, fatigue, creep) using textbooks or the internet.
3. Create a summary of each type of failure, including definitions, causes, and examples.
4. Share your summaries with your group and discuss any differences. Suggest improvements for understanding material failure.

Note:

Include your summaries and discussion points in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 2.14 Investigating Fatigue Failure

Aim: To investigate the concept of fatigue failure in materials.

Mode of Work

1. Independent or small group (2–3 learners)
2. Teacher assistance for clarifying technical terms.

Materials / Resources

- Internet access or textbook chapters on fatigue failure
- Notebook and pen

Safety Note

Avoid unsafe or unrelated websites.

Instructions

1. Watch short videos or read textbook chapters on fatigue failure in materials.
2. For each example of fatigue failure, note one key point and its significance.
3. Discuss with peers or write a short paragraph on how fatigue failure occurs and its impact on material performance.
4. Share your findings with peers and compare examples. Identify which examples are most relevant to specific applications.

Note

Include your notes and discussion summary in your Learner Portfolio

EXTENDED READING

- Adams, P. (2018). Materials Science for Engineers. London: TechBooks Publishing.
- Ashby, M. F., & Jones, D. R. H. (2015). Engineering Materials 1: An Introduction to Properties, Applications, and Design. Elsevier.
- Brown, L., & Green, T. (2015). Engineering Materials and Their Properties. Boston: Academic Press.
- Callister, W. D., & Rathish, D. G. (2020). Materials Science and Engineering: An Introduction. New York: Wiley.
- Fundamentals of Modern Manufacturing 4th Edition Mikell P Groover : Mikell P. Groover : Free download, borrow, and streaming : Internet Archive. (2017, June 21). Internet Archive. https://archive.org/details/FundamentalsOfModernManufacturing4thEditionMikellPGroover
- Mechanics of Materials, 8th Edition: FERDINAND P. BEER, E. RUSSELL JOHNSTON, JOHN T. DEWOLF,: 9789390219421: Amazon.com: Books. (2020). https://www.amazon.com/Mechanics-of-Materials-8th-Edition/dp/9390219426

REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. Select two structural failure case studies from the sample videos in Activity 2.4. Write a detailed comparative essay in which you investigate underlying causes, assess the decision-making processes, and synthesise your findings to propose innovative, evidence-based engineering solutions. Justify your recommendations using principles from years 1 and 2 and critique the effectiveness of current industry standards in addressing such failures.
2. Analyse an engineering failure incident in Ghana, such as the military helicopter crash that occurred on August 6, 2025, or a significant infrastructure failure of your choice. Drawing on your knowledge from years 1 and 2, examine the root causes of the incident from the perspective of material failure. Additionally, propose a plan for future prevention that incorporates lessons learned from both local and international case studies.



SECTION

3

DRAWING PRINCIPLES FOR MANUFACTURING



Design and Prototyping

Design and drawing for manufacture

INTRODUCTION

In this section, the main ideas of making drawings for manufacturing are explained in a simple way. You will learn how engineers use special symbols and rules to show different materials (like metal or wood) and machine parts (like gears and shafts) in their drawings. These drawings are very important because they show exactly how each part should be made so that everything fits together properly. The drawings also use measurements with small allowed differences, called limits and fits, to make sure parts can join or move as they should. Detailed drawings give clear instructions for making each part, like a recipe for making a dish. You will also use skills from earlier lessons, such as freehand sketching and drawing 3D objects, to help you read and make these technical drawings. By understanding these ideas, you will be able to make and read the drawings that are needed to build machines and other products in engineering.

KEY IDEAS

- Limits and fits govern permissible dimensional variations and ensure components fit together correctly, supporting precision, interchangeability, and quality control in manufacturing.
- Standardised symbols and notations represent materials (such as metals, glass, wood) and mechanical components (shafts, gears, bearings) in production drawings, facilitating clear communication and global collaboration.
- Detailed drawings specify individual component requirements, while assembly drawings combine these into complete systems, using section views and standardised notes to support accurate construction and alignment.
- Production drawings use precise dimensions and tolerances, including Geometric Dimensioning and Tolerancing (GD&T), to ensure manufacturability, reliability, and adherence to design intent.
- Part drawings provide comprehensive specifications—dimensions, tolerances, materials, finishes, and geometric features which serve as blueprints for manufacturing and quality assurance.
- International standards (such as ISO, ASME, ASTM) and conversion conventions underpin production drawings, ensuring consistency, compatibility, and regulatory compliance across industries.

IMPORTANCE OF CONVENTIONS OF MATERIALS AND MACHINE COMPONENTS IN PRODUCTION DRAWING

Production drawings are special documents used in factories and workshops to guide how products are made. They include all the important information, like exact sizes, shapes, and how different parts fit together. These drawings help turn ideas into real objects by giving clear and detailed instructions. Because engineers, designers, and machinists use the same drawings, there should be less confusion and fewer mistakes during manufacturing.

To make sure everyone understands the drawings, special symbols and rules are used. These rules, called conventions, show what each material (such as metal, wood, or glass) and each machine part (like gears or shafts) is. International standards, like ISO and ANSI, make these symbols and rules the same all over the world. This means people from different countries can understand the drawings and work together easily. Following these conventions helps factories work faster and more accurately. There are fewer questions and changes, which saves time and money. In short, conventions in production drawings are necessary to make sure products are made correctly and efficiently.

CONVENTIONS OF MATERIALS IN PRODUCTION DRAWING

In production drawing, there are special rules and symbols used to show different materials like metals, glass, wood, and concrete. These rules help everyone understand exactly which materials should be used when making a product. By following these conventions, engineers and manufacturers can make sure that the right materials are chosen, so the product works well, lasts long, and does not cost too much. Learning these rules helps students understand how products are designed and built in factories, making the whole process clearer and easier to follow. The next sections will explain the most important points about how materials are shown in production drawings.

MATERIAL PROPERTIES AND SELECTION

In manufacturing engineering, there are special rules and symbols used in drawings to show exactly what materials should be used, like metal, wood, or plastic. These symbols and notations help everyone in the factory, including engineers, machinists, and other workers, to understand what is needed, so there is less chance of making mistakes. For example, if something must be very hard or very strong, the drawing will have marks or notes to show this. There are also ways to show how smooth or rough a surface should be. These rules and symbols follow international standards, so people in different countries all understand the same thing. By using these conventions, it becomes much easier to make products correctly and to a high standard.

Here are the conventions for some common materials:

METALS

In production drawings, metals are shown using simple codes and symbols. For example, steel is written as "S" with a number for its type, and aluminium is shown as "Al." These symbols help everyone know what kind of metal is needed, and they also show important things like how strong the metal is or how well it can carry heat and electricity. These rules are used all over the world, so people in different countries can understand the drawings easily.

GLASS

Glass is shown in drawings by its type, such as ordinary glass or strong glass, and how thick it is. Special signs are used to show if the glass is clear and how strong it is. This helps builders know how to use glass in things like windows and building fronts.

WOOD

In technical drawings, wood is shown using special symbols to tell what type of wood it is, how good the wood is, and how much water it contains. The symbols also show the direction of the wood's lines (grain) and how strong the wood is. This helps builders and engineers choose the right wood for building strong and safe structures.

CONCRETE

Concrete is shown in drawings by stating how it is mixed, how strong it needs to be, and what kind of metal bars or wires are inside it for extra strength. These rules make sure the concrete will be safe and last a long time, following agreed standards from well-known organisations.

LIQUIDS

In production drawings, liquids like water, oil, and chemicals are shown using special symbols. These symbols help people easily understand how fast the liquid moves and whether it is safe to use with other materials. This is important when designing things like pipes and tanks that carry or store liquids, so everything works safely and correctly.

PACKING AND INSULATING MATERIALS

In production drawings, materials like insulation or packing are shown by using special symbols that tell you what type they are, how thick they must be, and how well they can stop heat from passing through. These symbols make it easy to see what is needed for saving energy and keeping things properly insulated during building or making products.

MATERIAL SYMBOLS AND NOTATIONS

In production drawings, special symbols and notes are used to show what materials should be used, like steel, aluminium, plastic, or other types. These symbols are important because they help everyone understand exactly which materials are needed, no matter where they are in the world. By using these symbols, engineers and workers

can avoid mistakes and build things the right way. The symbols are simple and follow international rules set by organisations such as ISO, ANSI, and ASME. They make it easy to read the drawings and know things like the type and quality of the material. Sometimes, extra notes are added to give more details about the material, such as its grade or classification. These symbols are always placed in the same way on the drawings, so there is no confusion. By using these standard symbols and notes, everyone involved in making a product can clearly understand what materials to use. This helps make sure that the final product is strong, safe, and works as it should. Figure 3.1 shows examples of these material symbols.

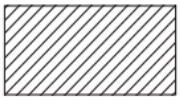
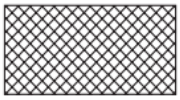
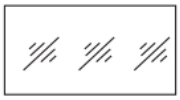
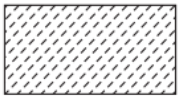
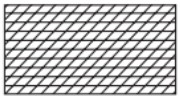
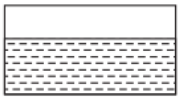
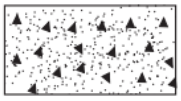
Type	Convention	Material
Metals		Steel, Cast Iron, Copper and its Alloys, Aluminium and its Alloys, etc.
		Lead, Zinc, Tin, White-metal, etc.
Glass		Glass
Packing and Insulating material		Porcelain, Stoneware, Marble, Slate, etc.
		Asbestos, Fibre, Felt, Synthetic resin products, Paper, Cork, Linoleum, Rubber, Leather, Wax, Insulating and Filling materials, etc.
Liquids		Water, Oil, Petrol, Kerosene, etc.
Wood		Wood, Plywood, etc.
Concrete		A mixture of Cement, Sand and Gravel

Figure 3.1: Conventional representation of materials (Narayana et al., 2009)

CONVENTIONS OF COMPONENTS IN PRODUCTION DRAWING

In production drawings, we use special symbols to show different machine parts. These symbols are the same everywhere, so there is no confusion. They help everyone understand which part does what and where it goes in the design. By following these rules, engineers and workers can read the drawings easily, avoid mistakes, and build machines correctly. Using these standard symbols makes the work clearer and helps ensure the machines are made the right way. Images of the conventional representation of machine components are presented in ***Figure 3.2***.

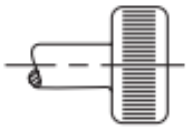
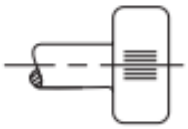
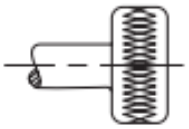
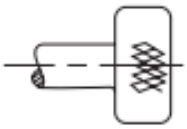
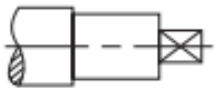
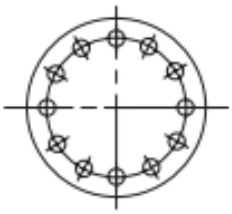
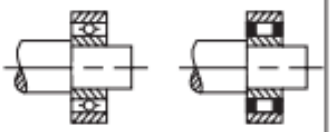
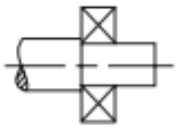
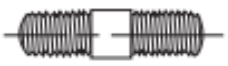
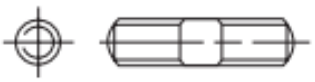
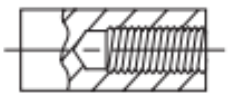
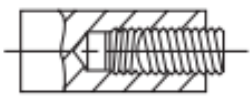
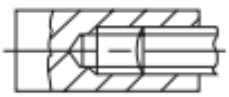
Title	Subject	Convention
Straight knurling		
Diamond knurling		
Square on shaft		
Holes on circular pitch		
Bearings		
External screw threads (Detail)		
Internal screw threads (Detail)		
Screw threads (Assembly)		

Figure 3.2a: Conventional representation of machine components (Narayana et al., 2009)

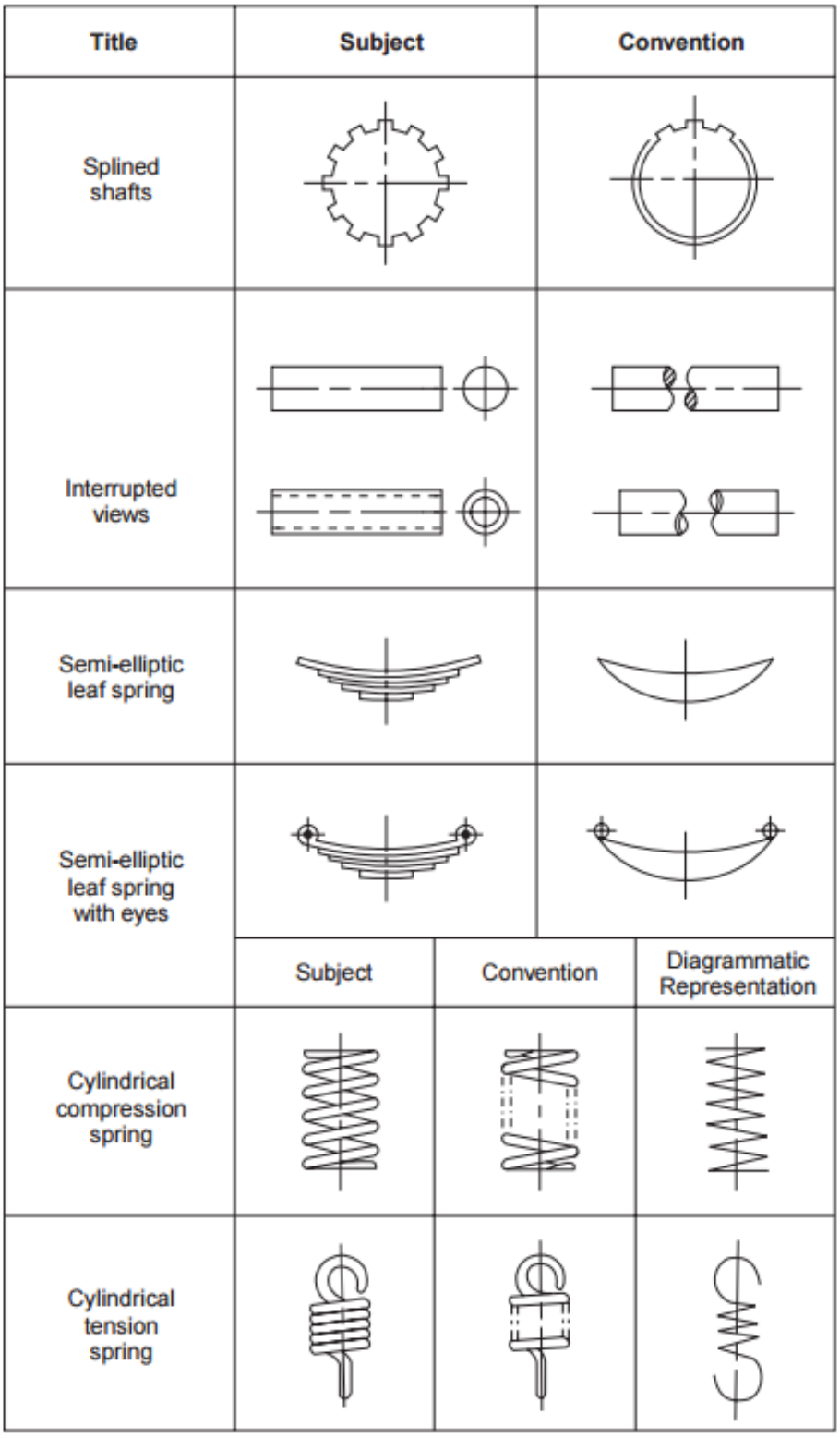


Figure 3.2b: Conventional representation of machine components (Narayana et al., 2009)

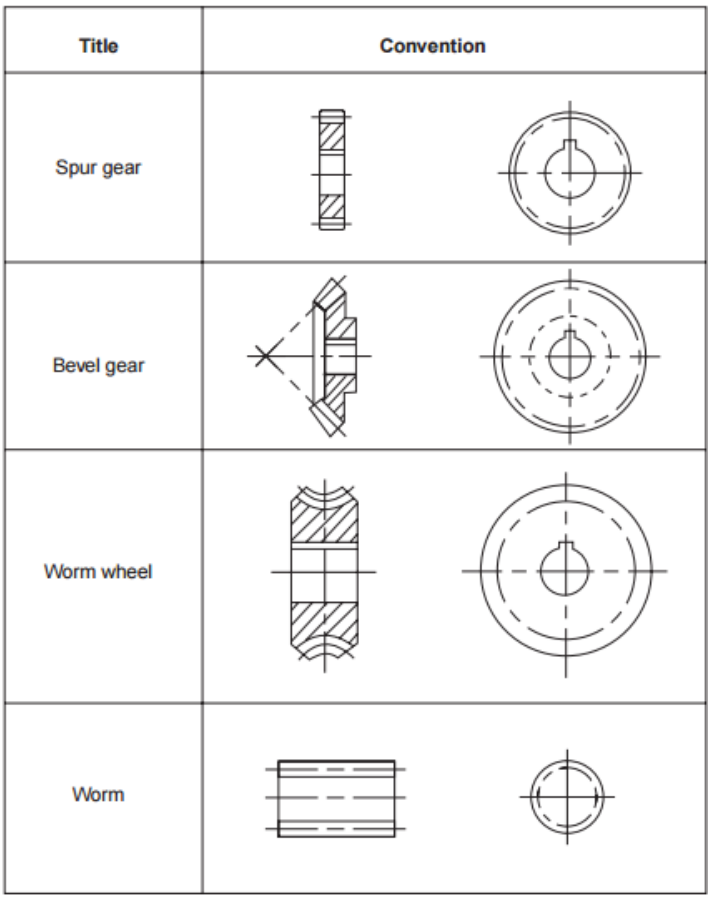


Figure 3.2c: Conventional representation of machine components (Narayana et al., 2009)

STANDARDISED VIEWS AND SECTIONS

Standardised views and sections help us show machine parts clearly in drawings. These methods follow agreed-upon rules used worldwide. There are three main ways to show these parts.

1. **Orthographic projections**

These are drawings that show the front, top, and side of a part. By looking at all these views together, it becomes easier to understand the real shape and size of the part.

2. **Sectional views**

Sometimes, a machine part has hidden parts inside, like holes or spaces. Sectional views show what the inside looks like by cutting through the part in the drawing. This makes it simple to see things that are not visible from the outside.

3. **Exploded views**

When a machine is made of many parts, an exploded view shows all the parts separated. This helps to see how the parts fit together and how to assemble or take apart the machine.

By using these standard methods, drawings become easy to read and understand. This helps engineers, designers, and manufacturers work together correctly and avoid mistakes when making machines.

DIMENSIONING AND TOLERANCES

Dimensioning and tolerances are important for making sure machine parts are made correctly. When engineers draw a part, they use dimensioning to show the exact sizes needed, like the length, width, or diameter. Tolerances tell us how much the size can change and still work well. This means if a part is a little bigger or smaller, it will still fit and do its job. If parts do not match the right size or allow for small changes, machines may not work properly.

By following rules for dimensioning and tolerances, everyone making or checking the parts understands exactly what is needed. This helps avoid mistakes and ensures the parts fit together as planned. Geometric Dimensioning and Tolerancing (GD&T) is a system that uses special symbols and rules to show what shapes and positions are allowed for each part. GD&T makes it easy to understand how much a part can change in size, shape, or position, and still be okay for use. These rules are used around the world, so engineers in different countries all understand the drawings in the same way.

Using dimensioning and tolerances helps engineers and manufacturers make high-quality, reliable parts. It also makes it easier for everyone to work together and follow the same standards, so the final product meets all design requirements. The figures in this section show some of the common symbols and ways to write dimensions on machine drawings. Images of ASME standard dimension symbols and dimensioning characteristics are displayed in ***Figures 3.3*** to ***3.9***.

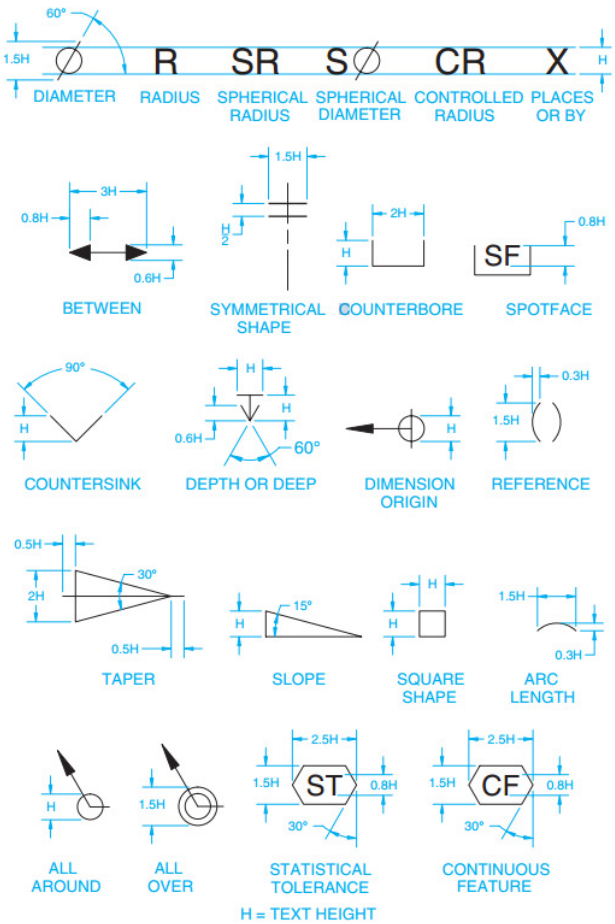


Figure 3.3: ASME standard dimension symbols (Madsen & Madsen, 2017)

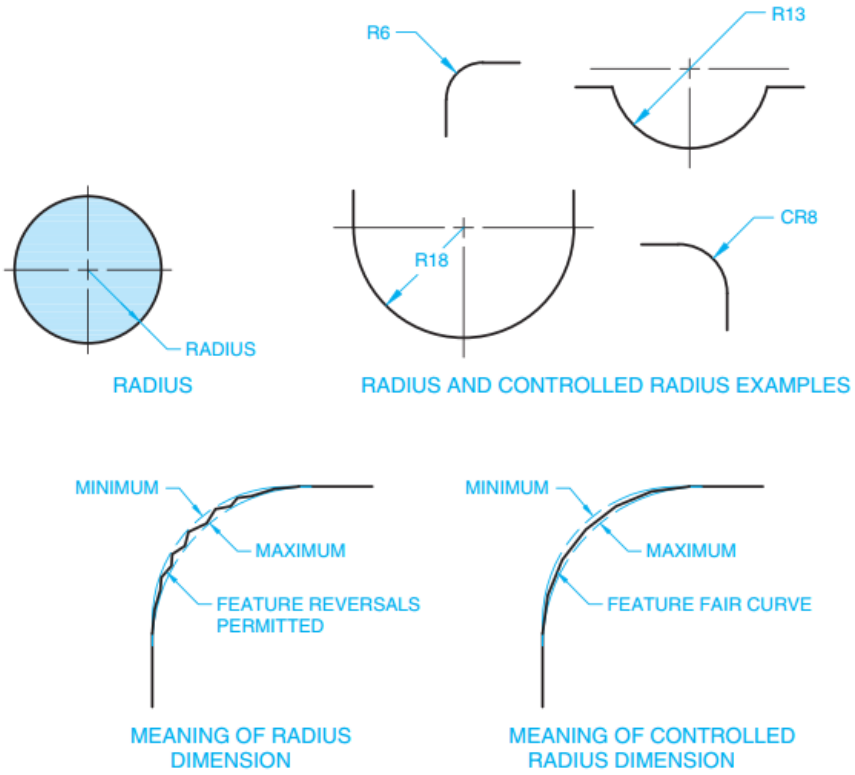


Figure 3.4: Dimensioning a radius and a controlled radius (Madsen & Madsen, 2017)

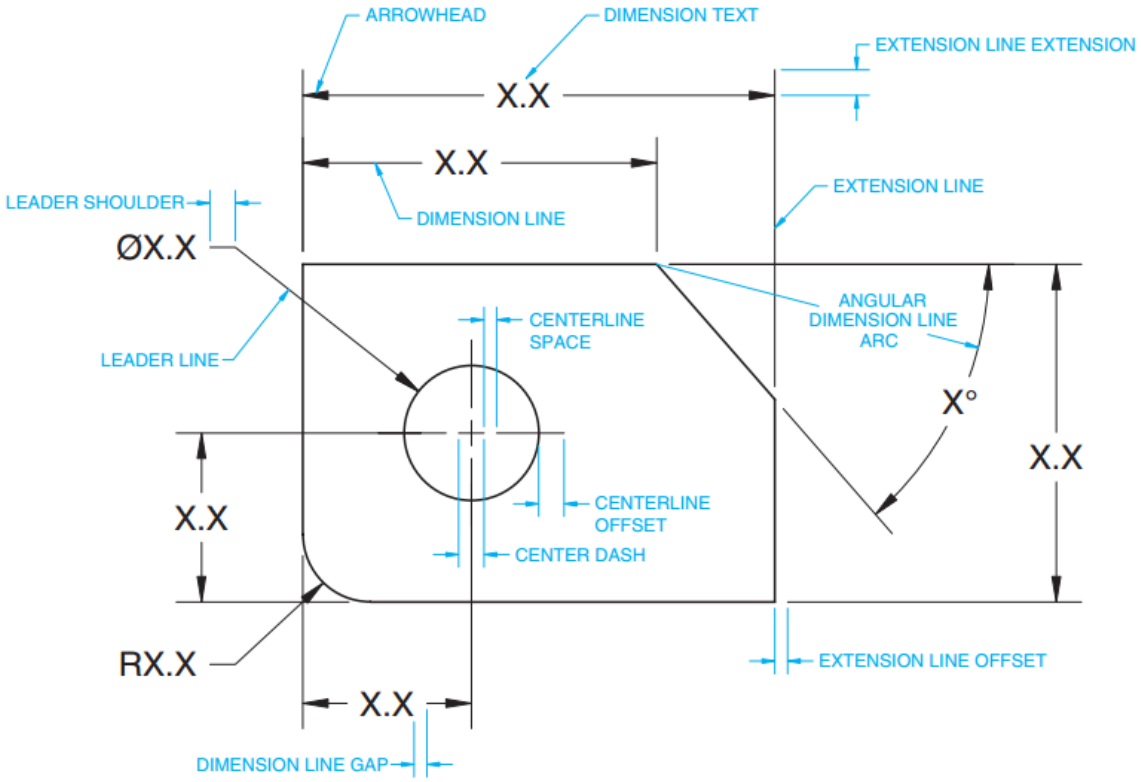
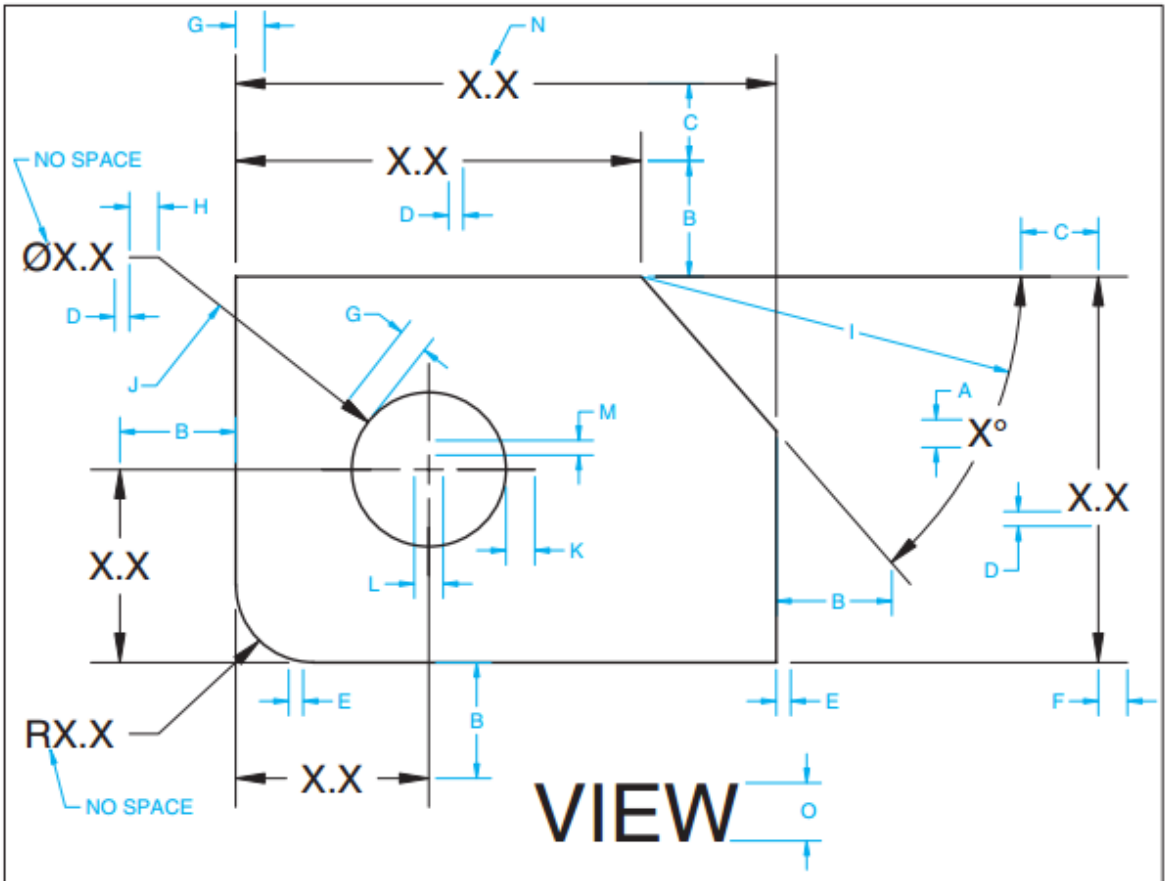


Figure 3.5: Standard dimensioning characteristics (Madsen & Madsen, 2017)



KEY	DESCRIPTION	INCH VALUE (IN)	METRIC VALUE (mm)
A	DIMENSION TEXT HEIGHT	.12	3
B	FIRST DIMENSION LINE SPACING	.375 (MINIMUM)	10 (MINIMUM)
C	FOLLOWING DIMENSION LINE SPACING	.25 (MINIMUM)	6 (MINIMUM)
D	DIMENSION LINE GAP	.063	1.5
E	EXTENSION LINE OFFSET	.063	1.5
F	EXTENSION LINE EXTENSION	.125	3
G	ARROWHEAD LENGTH	.125	3
H	SHOULDER LENGTH	.125–.25	3–6
I	DIMENSION LINE ARC	RADIUS FROM ANGLE VERTEX	RADIUS FROM ANGLE VERTEX
J	LEADER ANGLE	15°–75° (45° PREFERRED)	15°–75° (45° PREFERRED)
K	CENTERLINE OFFSET	.125	3
L	CENTER DASH	.125	3
M	CENTERLINE SPACE	.063	1.5
N	LETTERING/FONT	SINGLE STROKE/ROMANS	SINGLE STROKE/ROMANS
O	TITLE HEIGHT	.24	6

Figure 3.6: Standard dimensioning layout standards and specifications (Madsen & Madsen, 2017)

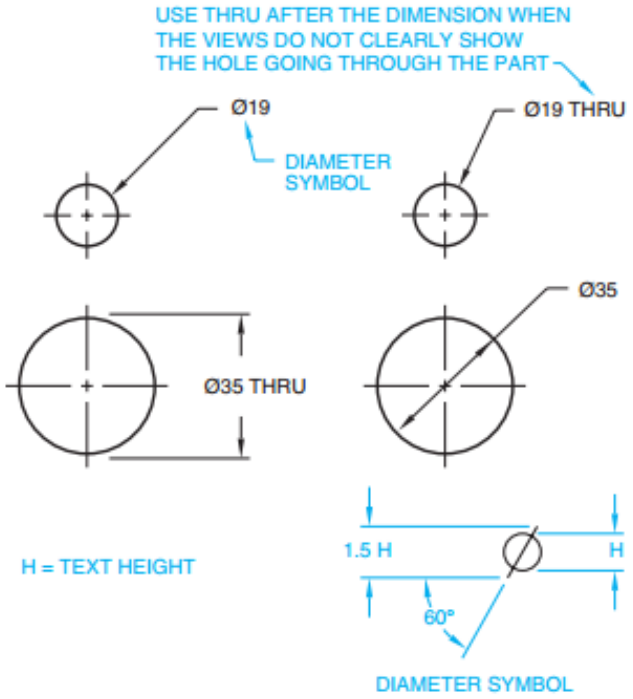


Figure 3.7: Dimensioning hole diameters and using the diameter symbol (Madsen & Madsen, 2017)

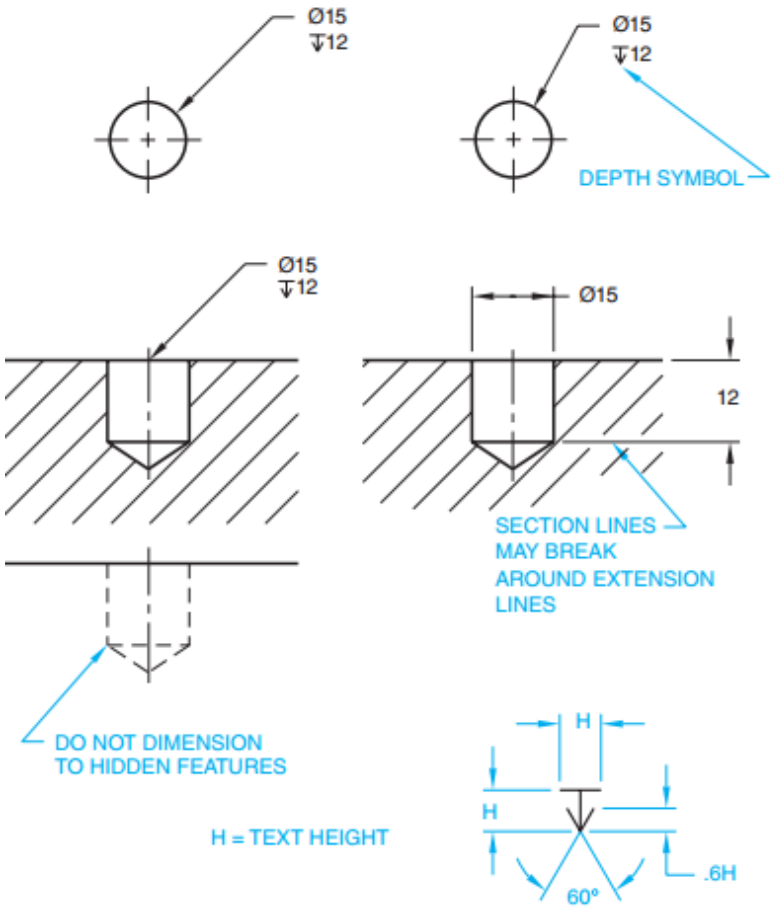


Figure 3.8: Dimensioning hole diameters and depths and using the depth symbol. The machine process, such as DRILL, is not given in the note (Madsen & Madsen, 2017)

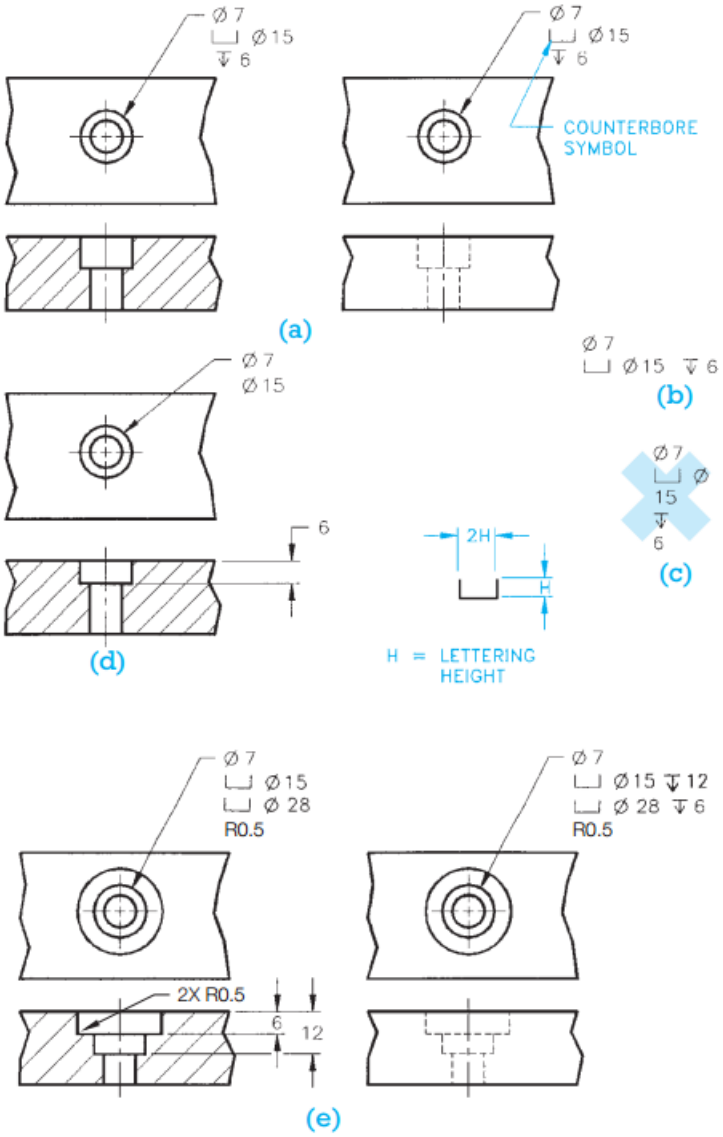


Figure 3.9: Counterbore note applications. (a) Typical counterbore note. (b) Alternate counterbore note with elements of note grouped on one line. (c) Never split individual note elements. (d) Dimensioning the counterbore depth in a sectional view. (e) Dimensioning multiple counterbore depths. The proper counterbore symbol is also displayed. The radius at the bottom of a counterbore can be dimensioned if required. The radius value is placed after the counterbore depth in the note or dimensioned directly in a sectional view (Madsen & Madsen, 2017)

ANNOTATIONS AND CALLOUTS

Annotations and callouts are important tools used in technical drawings to make instructions clear and accurate. They help people understand extra details about how something should be made or put together. For example, annotations can show how smooth a surface should be, what kind of welding is needed, or how parts should be assembled.

Symbols and short notes are used so everyone can easily see and follow the instructions. This helps engineers and manufacturers work together and make sure things are done correctly. Using standard ways to show these details means people from different places

can understand the drawings and build things as intended. Figure 3.10 and Table 3.1 show methods of indicating notes and the meaning of notes.

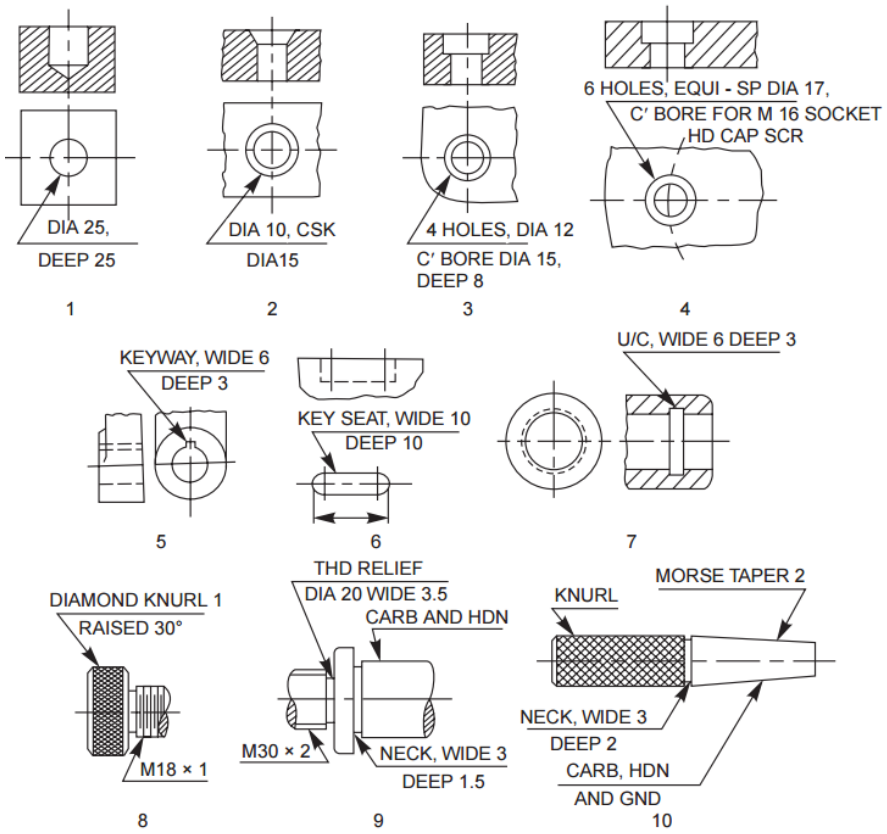


Figure 3.10a: Method of indicating notes (Narayana et al., 2009)

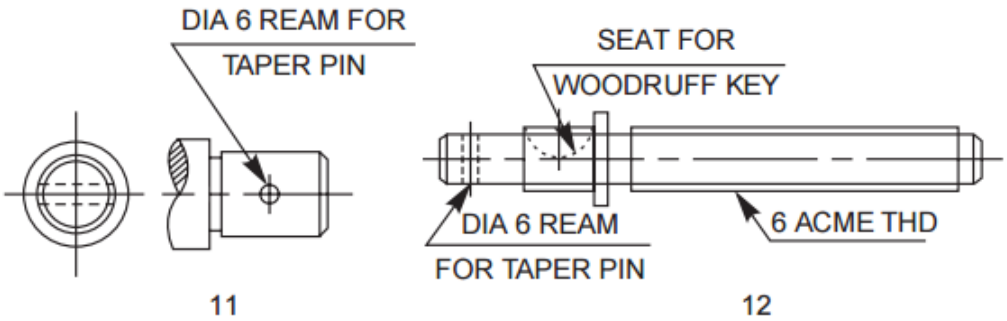


Figure 3.10b: Method of indicating notes (Narayana et al., 2009)

Table 3.1: Meaning of notes given in Figure 3.10 (Narayana et al., 2009)

S/N	Note	Meaning/Instruction
1	DIA 25 DEEP 25	Drill a hole of diameter 25 mm to a depth of 25 mm
2	DIA 10 CSK DIA 15	Drill a through hole of diameter 10 mm and countersink to get 15 mm on top.
3	4 HOLES, DIA 12 C BORE DIA 15 DEEP 8	Drill through hole of φ 12 mm, counterbore to a depth of 8 mm, with a φ 15 mm, the number of such holes being four.

4	6 HOLES, EQUI–SP DIA 17 C BORE FOR M 16 SOCKET HD CAP SCR	Drill a through hole of φ 17 and counterbore to insert a socket-headed cap screw of M 16. Six holes are to be made equi-spaced on the circle.
5	KEYWAY, WIDE 6 DEEP 3	Cut a keyway 6 mm wide and 3 mm deep.
6	KEY SEAT, WIDE 10 DEEP 10	Cut a key seat of 10 mm wide and 10 mm deep to the length shown.
7	U/C, WIDE 6 DEEP 3	Machine an undercut of width 6 mm and depth 3 mm.
8(a)	DIAMOND KNURL 1 RAISED 30°	Make a diamond knurl with 1 mm pitch and an end chamfer of 30°.
8(b)	M 18 × 1	Cut a metric thread of nominal diameter 18 mm and pitch 1 mm.
9(a)	THD RELIEF, DIA 20 WIDE 3.5	Cut a relief for the thread with a diameter of 20.8 mm and a width of 3.5 mm.
9(b)	NECK, WIDE 3 DEEP 1.5	Turn an undercut of 3 mm width and 1.5 mm depth.
9(c)	CARB AND HDN	Carburise and harden.
10(a)	CARB, HDN AND GND	Carburise, harden and grind.
10(b)	MORSE TAPER 2	Morse taper No. 1 to be obtained.
11	DIA 6 REAM FOR TAPER PIN	Drill and ream with a taper reamer for a diameter of 6 mm to suit the pin specified.
12	6 ACME THD	Cut an ACME thread of pitch 6 mm.

EXAMPLES OF CONVENTIONS FOR REPRESENTING MACHINE COMPONENTS

1. Shafts

In production drawings, shafts are often represented by circles or rectangles in cross-sectional views, with annotations indicating dimensions, tolerances, and surface finishes. The conventions ensure that the shaft's design meets the functional requirements and fits correctly with other components.

2. Pitches

Pitch refers to the distance between threads in screws or gears, and it is typically represented in production drawings through precise dimensioning and annotations. Understanding pitch is essential for ensuring that threaded components fit together correctly.

3. **Bearings**

Bearings are depicted in production drawings with specific symbols that indicate their type and size, such as ball or roller bearings. These symbols help in identifying the bearing's function and ensuring proper alignment and support in the assembly.

4. **Screw Threads**

Screw threads are represented using standardised thread symbols, which specify the thread type, size, and direction (e.g., right-hand or left-hand threads). This ensures that mating parts are compatible and function as intended.

5. **Springs**

Springs are depicted with symbols that indicate their type (e.g., compression, tension) and characteristics (e.g., coil diameter, wire diameter). Accurate representation of springs is crucial for maintaining the desired mechanical properties and performance.

6. **Gears**

Gears are represented with specific symbols indicating their type (e.g., spur, helical) and attributes such as module, number of teeth, and pressure angle. These conventions ensure that gears mesh correctly and transmit power efficiently.

These conventions are guided by technical standards like those from the International Organisation for Standardisation (ISO) and the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM), ensuring consistency and accuracy in production drawings across the industry. By adhering to these conventions, manufacturers can ensure that components interact seamlessly, reducing the risk of errors and enhancing the overall efficiency of the manufacturing process.

REAL-WORLD EXAMPLES OF THE IMPORTANCE OF CONVENTIONS OF MATERIALS AND MACHINE COMPONENTS IN PRODUCTION DRAW

1. **Automotive Industry**

In the automotive industry, special drawings are used to show the parts and materials needed to make cars and other vehicles. These drawings use agreed symbols to show important materials like steel and aluminium, which make the vehicle strong and safe. They also use standard signs to show parts such as gears, bearings, and springs. Following these rules in the drawings helps workers put the engine and other systems together correctly, so the vehicle works well and is safe to use.

2. **Aerospace Industry**

In aerospace engineering, production drawings are very important for making parts of an aeroplane. These drawings show which materials, like titanium and special lightweight mixtures, should be used so the plane is strong but not too heavy. There are also set ways to show parts like shafts, bearings, and screw threads in the drawings. Following these rules helps make sure that all the parts fit together properly and the plane works safely and smoothly.

3. **Construction Industry**

In building construction, special drawings are made to show the materials used, such as concrete, wood, and glass. These drawings follow set rules to make sure the materials are strong and last a long time. Symbols are used in the drawings to show different building parts, like beams (which support the building), columns (which hold up the structure), and insulation (which keeps the building cool or warm). Using these symbols and rules helps builders create safe and energy-saving buildings.

4. **Electronics Industry**

In electronics manufacturing, drawings are made to show what materials, like silicon and copper, are needed to build electronic parts. These drawings use special symbols and rules to show items such as connectors, resistors, and capacitors. By following these rules, it is easier to put together electronic devices correctly so that they work well and last longer. Using clear and accurate drawings helps make sure that electronic products perform reliably.

5. **Food Processing Industry**

In food processing, special drawings are made to show what materials are used, such as stainless steel and plastic, when building equipment that handles food. These drawings follow set rules to show parts like conveyor belts, mixing machines, and packaging equipment. Using these standard drawings helps to make sure the equipment is designed in a way that is easy to clean and keeps food safe. Clear and correct drawings are important so that food stays clean and meets quality standards during processing.

6. **Medical Industry**

In the medical industry, special drawings are used to show what materials, such as strong metals and safe plastics, are needed to make medical tools and devices. These drawings use agreed symbols and rules to clearly show parts like syringes, implants, and machines used for checking health. Using these standard drawings helps manufacturers make sure every part is made correctly. This is very important so that medical devices work properly and are safe for patients to use.

7. **Educational Industry**

In schools, drawings are used to show what materials, like wood and plastic, are needed to make things such as desks, chairs, and science lab equipment. These drawings follow special rules so that everything is strong, comfortable to use, and lasts a long time. When these rules are followed, classrooms and labs become better places to learn because the furniture and equipment are safe and fit for purpose.

Activity 3.1 Understanding Material Symbols

Aim: To understand the conventions of materials in production drawings.

Mode of Work

1. Independent or small group (2–4 learners)

2. Teacher assistance only for clarifying concepts.

Materials / Resources: Year 1 and Year 2 Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks, Internet access for research, notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Review your Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks on the conventions of materials in production drawings.
2. Research different material symbols (e.g., metals, glass, wood) using textbooks or the internet.
3. Create a summary of each material symbol, including its representation and significance.
4. Share your summaries with your group and discuss any differences. Suggest improvements for understanding material symbols.

Note

Include your summaries and discussion points in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 3.2 Exploring Component Symbols

Aim: To explore the conventions of components in production drawings.

Mode of Work

1. Independent or small group (2–3 learners)
2. Teacher assistance for clarifying technical terms.

Materials / Resources

- Internet access or textbook chapters on component symbols
- Notebook and pen

Safety Note: Avoid unsafe or unrelated websites.

Instructions

1. Watch short videos or read textbook chapters on component symbols (e.g., shafts, bearings, gears).
2. For each component symbol, note one key point and its significance.
3. Discuss with peers or write a short paragraph on how these symbols improve the clarity and accuracy of production drawings.
4. Share your findings with peers and compare symbols. Identify which component symbols are most relevant to specific applications.

Note

Include your notes and discussion summary in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 3.3 Annotations and Callouts

Aim: To evaluate the role of annotations and callouts in production drawings.

Mode of Work

1. In a small group with 2–3 classmates
2. Teacher assistance for clarifying technical terms.

Materials / Resources

- Internet access or textbook chapters on annotations and callouts
- Notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Read textbook chapters on annotations and callouts (e.g., surface finish, welding specifications).
2. For each annotation or callout, note one key point and its significance.
3. Discuss with peers or write a short paragraph on how annotations and callouts contribute to the accuracy and clarity of production drawings.
4. Share your findings with peers and compare annotations and callouts. Identify which annotations and callouts are most relevant to local contexts.

Note

Include your notes and discussion summary in your Learner Portfolio.

APPLICATIONS OF LIMITS AND FITS IN PRODUCTION DRAWING

Limits and fits are rules used in engineering drawings to help make sure machine parts work well together. When a company makes things like cars or machines, the parts must be the right size to fit together. “Limits” tell us the largest and smallest size a part can be. For example, if you are making a metal rod, the limits show the biggest and smallest it can be, so it still fits inside a hole. Fits describe how two parts, such as a rod and a hole, go together. There are three main types of fits:

1. Clearance fit: The parts always have space between them, so they move easily.
2. Interference fit: The parts are pressed together tightly so they do not move.
3. Transition fit: The parts might be tight or have a little space, depending on their sizes.

Using limits and fits makes sure that parts are made correctly and can be replaced easily. This helps companies avoid mistakes and waste, and makes sure machines work safely and well. These ideas are especially important in industries where precision

matters, such as car manufacturing or making aeroplanes. In production drawings, showing limits and fits helps engineers and workers understand exactly how to make and assemble each part.

LIMITS

Limits are rules that tell us the biggest and smallest size a part can be when making machines or other equipment. This is important because the parts must fit together properly for the machine to work well. In drawings, limits are shown as the highest and lowest measurements a part should have. These help workers know exactly what sizes are allowed, so the parts can be used together without problems. Using limits in manufacturing makes sure that parts will fit, even if there are small differences when they are made. This is very important if many parts are being produced, because the parts need to be easy to swap or replace. By following the limits, manufacturers do not waste materials or time fixing mistakes, which saves money and helps keep the quality high.

Limits also help with checking the quality of parts. If a part is not within the allowed sizes, it will not be used, so only the best parts are put together. This reduces waste and makes the production process more efficient. To use limits, engineers look at what the assembly needs, choose the right sizes for holes and shafts, and set clear measurements that parts must meet. On a drawing, the easiest way to show limits is by writing the largest and smallest sizes clearly, one above the other. This means that machine operators do not need to do any extra calculations because the measurements are easy to read and follow. ***Figure 3.11*** displays the limit of size on a drawing

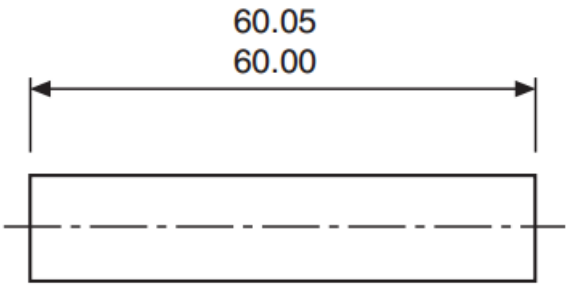


Figure 3.11: Limit of size on a drawing (Narayana et al., 2009)Top of Form

Instead of only showing the biggest and smallest sizes, another way is to write the main size and then add the allowed differences, as shown in Figure 3.12. It is not important for the main size to have the same number of decimal places as the limits. The correct fits for parts can be found in the BS 4500 tables called 'ISO limits and fits'. To show the type of fit for a hole, there are different ways to write the measurement, and some examples are given as follows:

$$90\ H7\left(\begin{matrix}90.035\\90.00\end{matrix}\right)\text{ (first choice)}$$

$$\text{or } 90\ H7 \text{ or } 90\ H7\left(\begin{matrix}+0.035\\0\end{matrix}\right)$$

Similarly, a shaft may be dimensioned as follows:

$90\ g6\left(\begin{matrix}89.988\\89.966\end{matrix}\right)$ (first choice)

or 90 g6 or $90\ g6\left(\begin{matrix}-0.012\\-0.034\end{matrix}\right)$

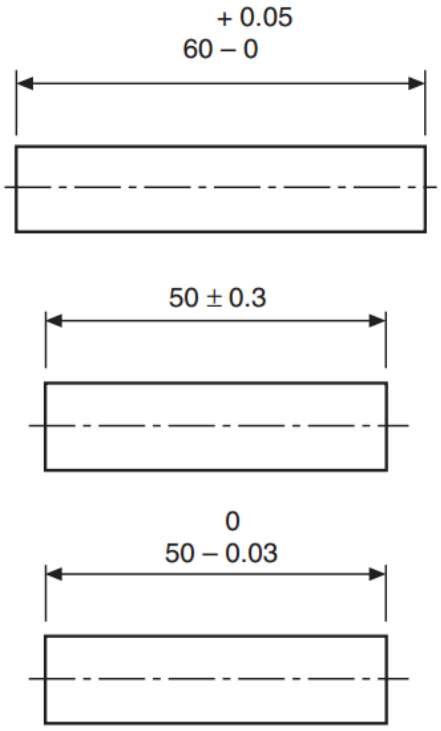
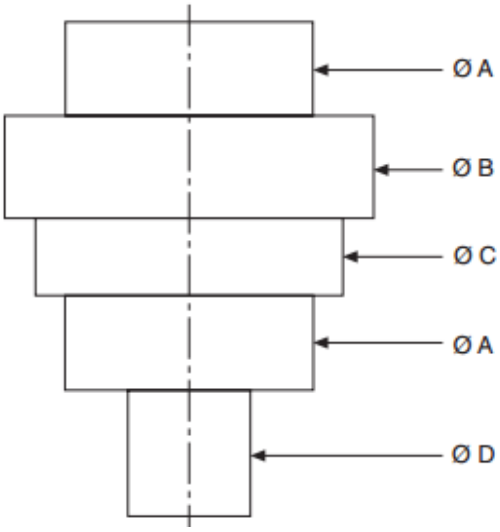


Figure 3.12: Dimension shaft (Narayana et al., 2009)

When there are many parts that are similar or repeated in a design, it is helpful to put the information into a table. This makes it easier to see and compare the details. An example of this type of drawing, where information is shown in a table, is given in Figure 3.13.



Dia.	Size
A	40,05 40,00
B	50,02 49,97
C	45,03 44,98
D	20,05 20,00

Figure 3.13: Dimension of stepped shaft (Narayana et al., 2009)

FITS

Fits explain how two parts, like a shaft and a hole, join together by describing if their connection will be tight, loose, or somewhere in between. There are three main types of fits: clearance fit, interference fit, and transition fit. A clearance fit means there is always a gap between the parts, so they can move easily. This is useful for parts that need to slide or turn. An interference fit makes the parts press tightly together, creating a strong, immovable connection, like when a wheel is firmly fixed onto an axle. Transition fit is a middle type, where the connection can be tight or loose depending on the exact sizes, and is chosen when some movement is allowed but accuracy is still important. Selecting the right fit is essential for machines and assemblies to operate correctly.

TYPES OF FITS

1. Clearance Fit

A clearance fit means there is always a small gap between the two parts that fit together, such as a shaft and a hole (Figure 3.14). Because the shaft is a bit smaller than the hole, the parts can be put together and taken apart easily. This type of fit is used when the parts need to move or slide against each other, like in spinning or sliding machines.

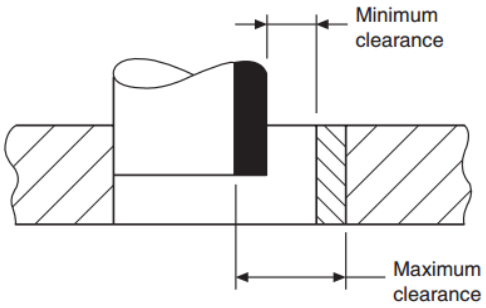


Figure 3.14: Clearance fits e allowance always positive (Narayana et al., 2009)

2. Interference Fit

In an interference fit, the parts are made so that the shaft is always slightly larger than the hole (Figure 3.15). This means when you join them, they press tightly together and do not move. You need to use force to put them together. Interference fits are used when the connection must be very strong and must not move, like when putting a gear onto a shaft.

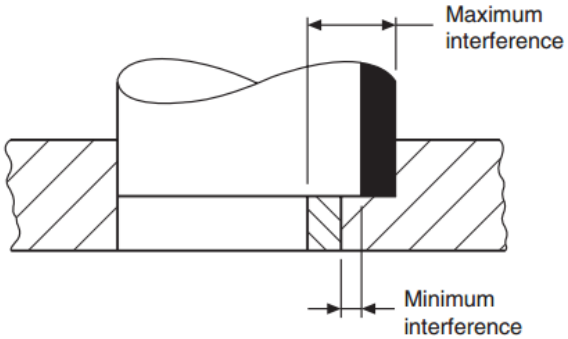


Figure 3.15: Interference fits - allowance always negative (Narayana et al., 2009)

3. **Transition Fit**

A transition fit is a way of joining two parts, like a shaft and a hole, so that sometimes the shaft is a little bigger, and sometimes it is a little smaller than the hole (Figure 3.16). This means the parts can fit tightly together or have a small gap. Transition fits are chosen when you need the parts to line up exactly, but you also want to allow a little movement between them. In some cases, the parts will be easy to put together and take apart; in other cases, they will need a bit of force. This type of fit is used when both accuracy and a bit of flexibility are needed.

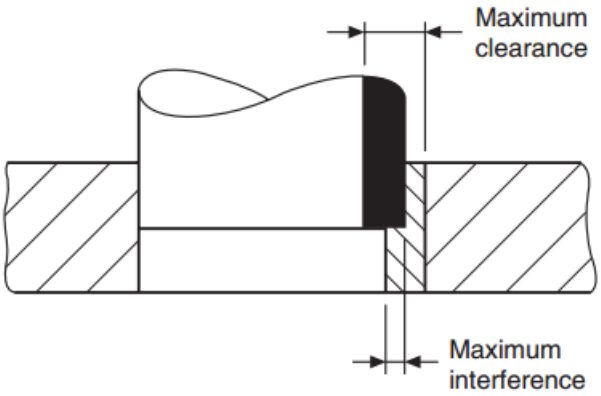


Figure 3.16: Transition fit - allowance may be positive or negative (Narayana et al., 2009)

Using fits in production drawings is important because it helps to make sure that mechanical parts, like shafts and holes, fit together properly. Fits tell us how much bigger or smaller one part should be compared to another, so engineers can control how parts slide or stay tight together. This affects how much friction there is, how fast the parts might wear out, and how well they can carry loads.

Fits also make it easier to swap parts during production and repairs. When manufacturers follow standard fit types, parts from different places or batches will match and work together without problems. This saves time and money. To choose the right fit, engineers think about what the machine needs to do, what materials are used, and how it will be used. They use tables and charts to decide the best fit and tolerance (the allowed difference in sizes), making sure the finished product works as it should. In summary, learning about fits helps you design machines that are accurate, reliable, and efficient.

ELEMENTS OF INTERCHANGEABLE SYSTEMS

Interchangeable systems help make sure that machine parts can be put together easily, work well, and can be replaced without problems (Figure 3.17). To do this, engineers use some important measurements:

1. Nominal size: This is a simple name for the size of a part, like saying a shaft is “25 mm” or “50 mm” wide. It helps people talk about the part easily.
2. Actual size: This is the real size of the part when it is measured. Sometimes, the actual size is a little different from the nominal size.

3. Basic size: This is the starting size used to set the limits for how big or small a part can be. It is the same for both the part that goes inside (like a shaft) and the part with a hole.
4. Limits of size: These are the biggest and smallest sizes a part can be, so it still works properly.

By understanding these ideas, engineers make sure that parts will fit together correctly, no matter where or when they are made. This makes it easier to build machines, fix them, and save money. ***Table 3.2*** shows the list and definitions of these key elements.

Table 3.2: Elements of interchangeable systems

Term	Definition
Nominal size	Convenient size designation of a component, such as 25, 50, or 60 mm thread
Actual size	Measured size of a component
Basic size	Reference size upon which all limits of size are based, the same for both male and female parts in a fit
Limits of size	Maximum and minimum permissible sizes for a specific dimension
Tolerance	Total permissible variation in the size of a dimension, the difference between the upper and lower acceptable dimensions
Allowance	The difference between the high limit of the size of the shaft and the low limit of the size of its mating hole can be positive or negative
Grade	Indicates the magnitude of tolerance; a lower grade signifies finer tolerance
Deviation	The difference between the maximum, minimum, or actual size of a shaft or hole and the basic size
Maximum Material Condition (MMC)	Represents the maximum limit of an external feature, such as a shaft produced to its high limits, containing the maximum amount of material. Also refers to the minimum limit on an internal feature, like a hole produced to its lower limit, retaining maximum metal condition
Minimum or Least Material Condition (LMC)	Denotes the minimum limit of an external feature, such as a shaft produced to its low limits, containing the minimum amount of material. Also applies to the maximum limit on an internal feature, like a hole produced to its maximum limit, having the maximum amount of material removed, resulting in a minimum material condition

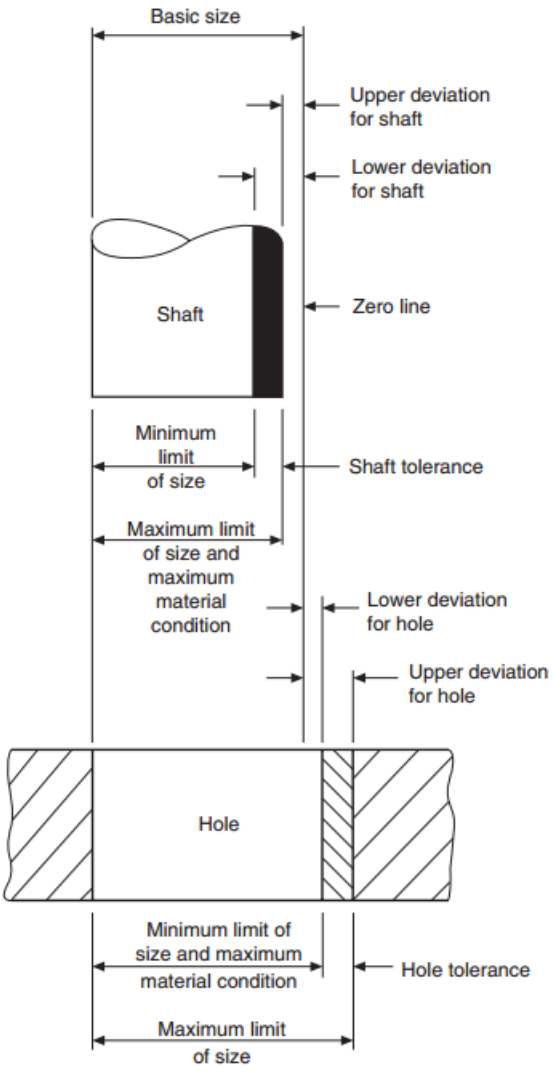


Figure 3.17: Elements of interchangeable systems (Narayana et al., 2009)

UNILATERAL AND BILATERAL LIMITS

Figure 3.18 shows two ways of setting size limits for parts:

1. **Unilateral limits**

Both the largest and smallest allowed sizes are on the same side of the basic size. This means the part can only be bigger or only be smaller than the basic size, but not both. Using this system makes it easier to check parts with a GO gauge. Only the NOT GO gauge changes when the tolerance (the allowed difference in size) changes.

2. **Bilateral limits**

The allowed sizes are set both above and below the basic size. This means the part can be either slightly bigger or slightly smaller than the basic size.

These systems help make sure manufactured parts fit together properly and work as intended.



Figure 3.18: Bilateral limits (Narayana et al., 2009)

BASES OF FITS

The two bases of a system of limits and fits are:

1. The hole basis
2. The shaft basis

In the hole basis system, the hole size stays the same, while the shaft size is changed depending on how tight or loose the fit needs to be (Figure 3.19). This method helps make production faster and easier, because one drill or reamer can be used for different types of fits. By changing only the shaft size using machines, the right fit can be achieved. Most of the time, engineers use hole-based fits, but sometimes, if the temperature changes a lot and the parts are big, another method may be better.

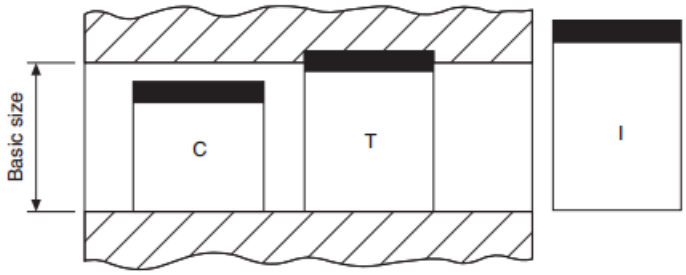


Figure 3.19: Hole-basis fits: C - clearance, T -transition, I -Interference (Narayana et al., 2009)

In the shaft basis system, you start with a shaft of a fixed size. To get different types of fits depending on how tight or loose parts connect, you change the size of the hole that the shaft goes into (Figure 3.20). This means you need several tools, like different drills and reamers, which can be more expensive. Sometimes this method is needed if you want different fits along the length of a long shaft. There are special guides, called data sheets, that list the types of fits you can use. For example, BSI data sheet 4500A lists fits based on keeping the hole size the same, while 4500B lists fits based on keeping the shaft size the same. Both of these follow the rules set by BS 4500, the standard for making sure parts fit together correctly in engineering.

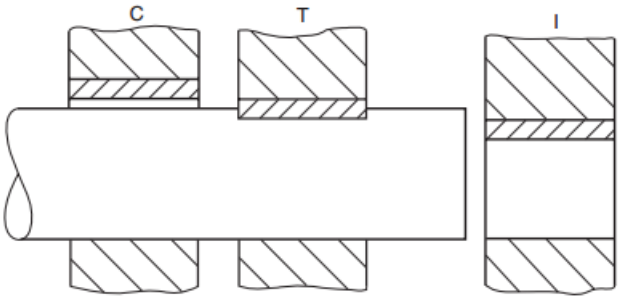


Figure 3.20: Shaft-basis fits: C - clearance, T - transition, I – interference (Narayana et al., 2009)

The ISO system in BS 4500 provides many different options for how holes and shafts can fit together, using different sizes and tolerances. However, in most engineering work, only a few of these options are actually needed. These commonly used fits are shown on special data sheets. By choosing from just a small number of fits, manufacturers can save money because they do not need to buy many different tools or measuring devices.

APPLICATIONS OF LIMITS AND FITS

Limits and fits are important rules in engineering that help make sure machine parts fit together correctly. For example, when building things like gears, bearings, or shafts, engineers use limits and fits to decide how tight or loose the parts should be. This helps avoid problems when putting parts together. By using limits and fits in their drawings, engineers can make sure parts are made the right size, so they work well and fit together easily. These rules help machines work properly and ensure the final product is strong and reliable.

1. Functional Fit and Assembly

Limits and fits are engineering rules that help decide how tightly or loosely two machine parts connect. There are three main types: clearance fit, which leaves space between parts so they can move freely, like a shaft spinning inside a bearing; interference fit, which is very tight so the parts do not move, such as a gear pressed onto a shaft; and transition fit, which is in between and used when a little grip and precise alignment are needed. Understanding these concepts makes it easier to build machines that work properly and last longer, because the right fit helps parts move or stay put as needed.

2. Quality Control and Standardisation

When engineers use limits and fits, they make sure that machine parts are the right size to fit together properly. This helps manufacturers produce many items that are all the same quality. If all the parts are made to the same standard, parts from different places can be joined together easily. This is important for mass production, where thousands of pieces must fit together without problems. Using limits and fits also means fewer mistakes happen during assembly, less material is wasted, and production costs stay low because there's no need to fix parts after they're made.

3. Tolerance Management

Tolerance management is about making sure all the small differences in the sizes of parts do not add up to cause problems when putting a machine together. It means

choosing the right amount of allowed size difference (tolerance) for each part, based on what the part needs to do. Engineers use standard tables to help pick these tolerances. If tolerances are not managed well, small errors in each part can add up, making the whole machine not fit together properly. Good tolerance management helps prevent these build-up errors, so all the parts fit as they should and the machine works well.

4. **Educational and Practical Applications**

When you understand limits and fits, you learn how to make machine parts that join together properly. These ideas help you design and build strong, reliable parts for machines. Limits and fits are important for both studying engineering and making real products, so it is important to know how they work in theory and in practice.

Activity 3.4 Understanding Limits and Fits

Aim: To understand the concepts of limits and fits in production drawings.

Mode of Work

1. Independent
2. Teacher assistance only for clarifying concepts.

Materials / Resources

- Year 1 and Year 2 Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks
- Internet access for research
- Notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Review your Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks on the concepts of limits and fits.
2. Research different types of fits (e.g., clearance fit, interference fit, transition fit) using textbooks or the internet.
3. Create a summary of each type of fit, including its definition, application, and examples.
4. Share your summaries with your group and discuss any differences. Suggest improvements for understanding limits and fits.

Note

Include your summaries and discussion points in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 3.5 Exploring Tolerances

Aim: To explore the application of tolerances in production drawings.

Mode of Work

1. Independent
2. Teacher assistance for clarifying technical terms.

Materials / Resources

- Internet access or textbook chapters on tolerances
- Notebook and pen

Safety Note: Avoid unsafe or unrelated websites.

Instructions

1. Watch videos or read textbook chapters on tolerances (e.g., dimensional tolerances, geometric tolerances).

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=G7wnGeR_69k&t=601s	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=UhKs2mh867I
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=bFiXyuaeJjQ	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=joBy4BoJszo

2. For each type of tolerance, note one key point and its significance.
3. Discuss with peers or write a short paragraph on how these tolerances improve the accuracy and functionality of production drawings.
4. Share your findings with peers and compare tolerances. Identify which tolerances are most relevant to specific applications.

Note

Include your notes and discussion summary in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 3.6 Practical Application of Limits and Fits

Aim: To apply the concepts of limits and fits in a practical setting.

Mode of Work

1. Individually
2. Teacher assistance only for clarifying concepts.

Materials / Resources

- Year 1 and Year 2 Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks
- Examples of production drawings with limits and fits, notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Review your Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks on limits and fits.
2. Identify examples of production drawings and their use of limits and fits.
3. Analyse the advantages and limitations of using limits and fits in these drawings.
4. Share your findings in class or write a summary and discuss any differences.
5. Suggest additional applications for limits and fits in production drawings.

Note

Include your analysis and summary in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 3.7 Case Study Analysis

Aim: To evaluate real-world applications of limits and fits through case studies.

Mode of Work

1. In a small group with 2–3 classmates.
2. Teacher assistance for clarifying technical terms.

Materials / Resources

- Internet access or textbook chapters on case studies involving limits and fits
- Notebook and pen

Safety Note: Follow ICT lab rules when using computers. Avoid unsafe or unrelated websites.

Instructions

1. Research case studies or real-world examples where limits and fits were crucial (e.g., manufacturing of precision components, assembly of machinery).
2. For each case study, note one key point and its significance.

3. Discuss with peers or write a short paragraph on how limits and fits contributed to the success or failure of the project.
4. Share your findings with peers and compare case studies. Identify which aspects of limits and fits were most critical in each case.

Note

Include your notes and discussion summary in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 3.8 Dimensioning and Tolerances

Aim: To investigate the importance of dimensioning and tolerances in production drawings.

Mode of Work

1. In a group with 4 classmates.
2. Teacher assistance only for clarifying concepts.

Materials / Resources

- Year 1 and Year 2 Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks
- Examples of production drawings with dimensions and tolerances, notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Review your Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks on dimensioning and tolerances.
2. Identify examples of production drawings and their use of dimensions and tolerances.
3. Analyse the advantages and limitations of using dimensioning and tolerances in these drawings.
4. Share your findings in class or write a summary and discuss any differences.
5. Suggest additional applications for dimensioning and tolerances in production drawings.

Note

Include your analysis and summary in your Learner Portfolio.

APPLICATION OF DETAILED DRAWING IN PRODUCTION DRAWING

Production drawings are special pictures used in manufacturing to show exactly how a part or product should be made. These drawings include important details like the size of each part, which materials to use, how smooth or rough the surfaces should be, and how much variation is allowed in the measurements. With all this information, manufacturers can make sure the finished product matches the design and works as it should. These drawings help everyone involved, including designers, engineers, and factory workers, understand what is expected, so there is less chance for mistakes or confusion. By clearly showing things like measurements and materials, production drawings make it possible to create many identical parts, even if they are made in different countries or factories. This is very important for producing large numbers of products and for working with people from around the world. Production drawings also help companies use their resources wisely, reduce waste, and control costs. In short, they turn ideas from the design stage into real products by giving clear instructions that anyone can follow, making sure everything is made correctly and efficiently. This helps make sure that complicated projects are successful and that the final products are reliable and high quality.

STANDARDS AND CONVERSIONS

Standards and conversions in production drawings make sure that everything is made correctly and matches what is needed. Standards are like rules created by experts from organisations such as ISO and ASTM. These rules tell you how to draw, measure, and show different parts and materials so that everyone understands the same thing. Conversions mean changing measurements from one system to another, for example, changing centimetres to inches. By following these standards and using conversions, engineers, designers, and manufacturers can talk clearly to each other and avoid mistakes. This is important because it means that parts made in different places will fit together perfectly, and products will work as they should.

IMPORTANCE OF STANDARDS

Standards in production drawing are like rules that tell everyone which symbols, sizes, tolerances, and material details to use when making a part or product. By following these rules, factories can make sure every part is made the same way and fits well with other parts, even if they are made by different companies or in different countries. This is especially important when products are made in different places but need to work together perfectly.

ROLE OF CONVERSIONS

Conversions in production drawing mean changing measurements from one type of unit to another, like from centimetres to inches. This is important when people from different countries, who use different measurement systems, work together on the

same project. Making sure these conversions are done correctly helps the final product match the design and work as it should.

APPLICATION IN DETAILED DRAWINGS

In detailed drawings, standards and conversions are very important because they help show the exact sizes, acceptable differences, and material details of each part. These rules and changes make it possible for engineers to clearly explain what is needed for a part or product to be made correctly. By using the same symbols and units, everyone can understand the drawings. This is also useful when using computer programmes like CAD, which need clear and consistent information to create correct models and check if the design will work.

MATERIALS SELECTION AND PRESENTATION

Materials selection and presentation in production drawings means choosing the right materials for making a product and showing this clearly in the drawings. This involves saying what type of material should be used, such as steel or plastic, and giving details about its strength, hardness, and ability to resist rust. Symbols and patterns are used in the drawings to show which materials are used where. Picking the correct materials is important because it helps make sure the product works well and lasts a long time

CRITERIA FOR SELECTING MATERIALS IN PRODUCTION DRAWINGS AND HOW THEY ARE REPRESENTED (E.G., USING MATERIAL NOTES AND SYMBOLS)

In detailed production drawings, choosing and showing the right materials is very important. It helps manufacturers know exactly what materials to use, so they can make the product correctly and make sure it works as planned. This part explains how to pick the right materials and how to show them clearly in the drawings. Being clear and correct in these drawings helps everyone understand what is needed, so there are no mistakes when making the product.

1. **Materials Selection**

When choosing materials for making a part or product, it is important to think about what the part needs to do and how it will be used. The main things to look at are how strong and hard the material is, whether it can bend without breaking (ductility), how well it handles heat, and if it can resist rust or other chemical damage. The best material is one that works well for the job, does not cost too much, and follows the rules set by the industry. It is also important to think about how using the material affects the environment, and whether it can be recycled or reused, because modern manufacturing tries to be more eco-friendly.

2. **Materials Presentation**

In production drawings, materials are shown using special symbols and short notes so that everyone knows exactly what kind of material to use. For example, engineers might use a letter like “S” to mean steel, and “Al” to mean aluminium. Next to these

letters, they add more details such as the type or grade of the material, how it should be treated, or if it needs any special coating. These clear rules help people in the factory, like engineers and workers, to understand which materials to use and how to make the product correctly.

3. **Role in Detailed Drawings**

Presenting the correct materials clearly in detailed drawings is very important. It helps make sure that each part is made using the right materials and meets all the needed requirements. This also makes it easier to check the quality, because everyone knows exactly what to use. By using common symbols and notes for materials, people in different teams or countries can understand each other easily. This reduces mistakes and helps everyone work together smoothly when making products.

4. **Educational Approach**

To help you learn how to choose and show materials in production drawings, schools often give you practical training with drawing tools and computer programmes such as AutoCAD, SOLIDWORKS, and SIEMENS NX. You will work in groups and do research activities to find out how different materials work and where they are used in real life. This helps you develop clear thinking and learn how to solve problems about making products from the right materials.

INTEGRATION OF DETAILED DRAWINGS INTO ASSEMBLY DRAWINGS

Integration of detailed drawings into assembly drawings means bringing together the drawings of each part to make one big drawing that shows how everything fits together. This big drawing, called an assembly drawing, helps you see how the parts connect and work as a complete product. It uses special pictures, like exploded views (where parts are shown separated), section views (where you can see inside the product), and clear notes. These help people put the parts together correctly and make sure everything lines up as it should. For engineers and workers, combining detailed drawings into assembly drawings is very important because it makes it easier to build products without mistakes and helps everyone understand how each piece works in the final system.

PURPOSE AND IMPORTANCE

Detailed drawings give clear and complete information about each part of a product, such as the exact size, shape, the material to use, and the surface finish. Assembly drawings, however, show how these parts come together to make the final product. By using detailed drawings together with assembly drawings, it is easier to make sure all parts fit well and work as they should, which helps prevent mistakes when putting the product together.

PROCESS OF INTEGRATION

1. **Sectioning and Dimensioning**

Detailed drawings include precise section views and dimensions that are carried over into assembly drawings. This ensures that all components are accurately represented in terms of their spatial relationships and functional alignment within the assembly.

2. **Use of Exploded Views**

Exploded views in assembly drawings help illustrate how components are assembled or disassembled. This visual representation aids in understanding the sequence and orientation of parts, which is crucial for complex assemblies.

3. **Standardised Symbols and Notes**

Both detailed and assembly drawings use standardised symbols and notes to communicate critical information such as material specifications, fastener types, and assembly instructions. This consistency ensures that all stakeholders can interpret the drawings accurately.Top of Form

APPLICATION OF DETAILED DRAWING IN PRODUCTION DRAWING

Detailed drawings are used in making products to give clear instructions on how each part should be made. These drawings show the exact size of each part, what materials to use, how smooth the surfaces should be, and other important details. By following these drawings, workers can make sure every part is made correctly, which helps to avoid mistakes and ensures the finished product is just as it was designed.

Activity 3.9 Understanding Detailed Drawings

Aim: To understand the conventions and importance of detailed drawings in production.

Mode of Work

1. Independent
2. Teacher assistance only for clarifying concepts.

Materials / Resources

- Year 1 and Year 2 Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks
- Internet access for research, notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Review your Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks on the conventions of detailed drawings.
2. Research different types of detailed drawings (e.g., assembly drawings, part drawings) using textbooks or the internet.

3. Create a summary of each type of detailed drawing, including its definition, application, and examples.
4. Share your summaries with your group and discuss any differences. Suggest improvements for understanding detailed drawings.

Note

Include your summaries and discussion points in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 3.10 Exploring Dimensioning and Tolerances

Aim: To explore the application of dimensioning and tolerances in detailed drawings.

Mode of Work

1. Independent or small group (2–3 learners).
2. Teacher assistance for clarifying technical terms.

Materials / Resources

1. Internet access or textbook chapters on dimensioning and tolerances
2. Notebook and pen

Safety Note

1. Follow lab safety rules when handling materials and equipment.
2. Avoid unsafe or unrelated websites.

Instructions

1. Watch videos or read textbook chapters on dimensioning and tolerances (e.g., linear dimensions, geometric tolerances).

 https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=XIfOtKO3FJU	 https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Q9kOFtUltqM
 https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=DSCUxSb5rk8	 https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=52OcLTYf5pM&t=65s

2. For each type of dimension or tolerance, note one key point and its significance.
3. Discuss with peers or write a short paragraph on how these dimensions and tolerances improve the accuracy and functionality of detailed drawings.
4. Share your findings with peers and compare dimensions and tolerances. Identify which dimensions and tolerances are most relevant to specific applications.

Note

Include your notes and discussion summary in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 3.11 Practical Application of Detailed Drawings

Aim: To apply the concepts of detailed drawings in a practical setting.

Mode of Work: Independent or small group with a few classmates. Teacher assistance only for clarifying concepts.

Materials / Resources

- Year 1 and Year 2 Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks
- Examples of detailed drawings, notebook and pen
- Drawing sheets, drawing boards and drawing instruments

Instructions

1. Review your Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks on detailed drawings.
2. Identify examples of detailed drawings and their use in production.

   You can also consider the following sample drawings.

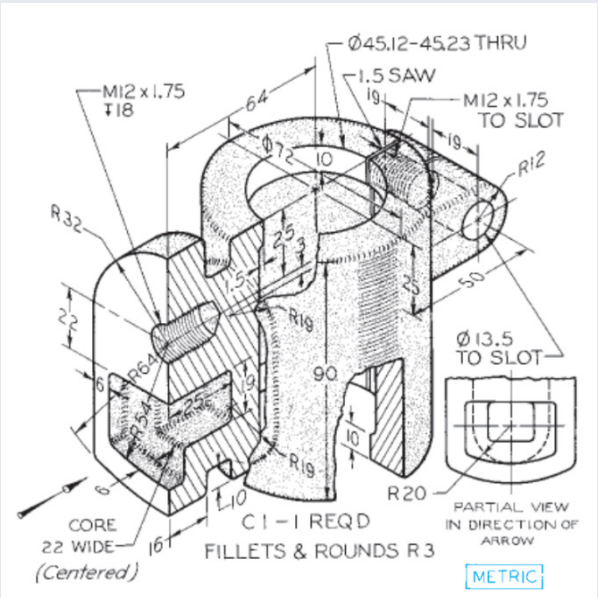


Figure 1: Table bracket

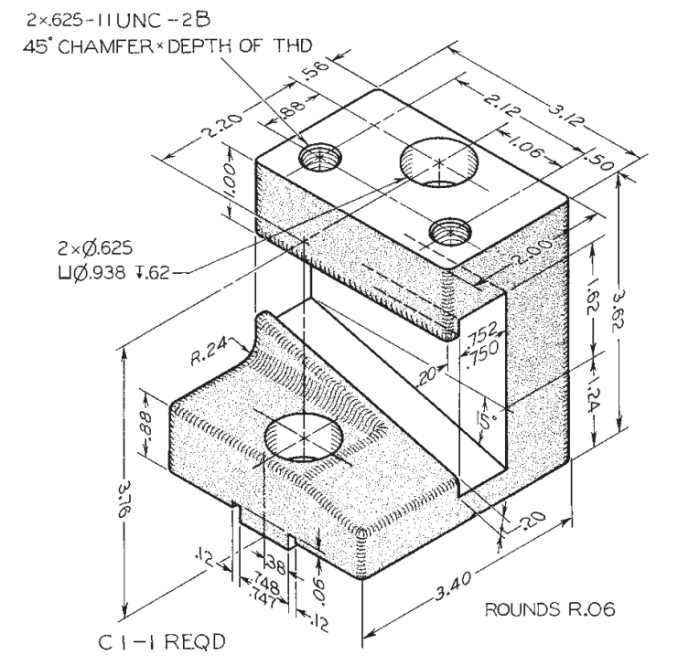


Figure 2: Tool post (If assigned, convert dimensions to metric)

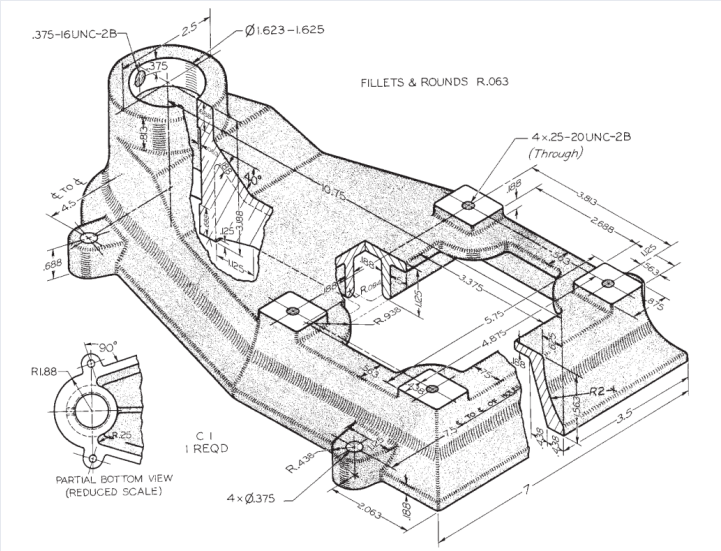


Figure 3: Drill press base (Use unidirectional metric or decimal-inch dimensions)

3. Create detailed drawings from the given samples or examples you identified.
4. Analyse the advantages and limitations of using detailed drawings in these examples.
5. Share your findings in class or write a summary and discuss any differences. Suggest additional applications for detailed drawings in production.

Note

Include your analysis and summary in your Learner Portfolio.

PART DRAWING

Part drawings, also called detail drawings, are clear pictures that show every part of something that will be made. They include important information, such as the size of the part (dimensions), how exact the measurements need to be (tolerances), what material should be used, and how smooth or rough the surface should be (surface finishes). These drawings are used to guide workers and machines during production, making sure each part is made correctly and matches the designer's plan.

By providing all the details in one place, part drawings help prevent mistakes and save time. They also help companies produce many parts that are exactly alike, so everything fits together properly. Learning how to read and create these drawings is important for making strong, reliable products that work well in bigger machines or systems.

OVERVIEW OF THE INFORMATION TYPICALLY INCLUDED IN A PART DRAWING, SUCH AS DIMENSIONS, TOLERANCES, MATERIALS, FINISHES, AND GEOMETRIC FEATURES

A part drawing is a special picture used in factories and workshops to show exactly how one piece of a machine or product should be made. It gives all the important details, such as the size of the part, how precise the measurements must be, what material to use, and how smooth or rough the surface should be. This drawing helps designers, engineers, and workers understand exactly what to do, so the part is made correctly every time. By following the instructions in the drawing, manufacturers can make many parts that are all the same, which means everything will fit together properly in the final product.

TITLE BLOCK

The Title Block is a key part of any technical drawing. It contains important information about the part being drawn and the drawing itself (Figures 3.21 to 3.23). This includes the name of the part and a short description, so anyone looking at the drawing knows exactly what it is. It also has a unique number for the part and for the drawing, making it easy to find or reference later. The scale tells you how the drawing compares to the real object (for example, if it is the same size or smaller). Units show whether the measurements are in millimetres or inches.

The material section tells you what the part should be made from, such as steel or aluminium. The title block also records the date the drawing was made and who created it. There is a space for the company's details and for signatures from people who check and approve the drawing. Finally, it lists standard measurement limits, called general tolerances, which tell you how much the size can change and still be acceptable. For example, it might say "General Tolerance: ±0.05 mm," meaning the part can be a little bigger or smaller but must stay within that range. This helps everyone understand and follow the same rules when making or checking the part.

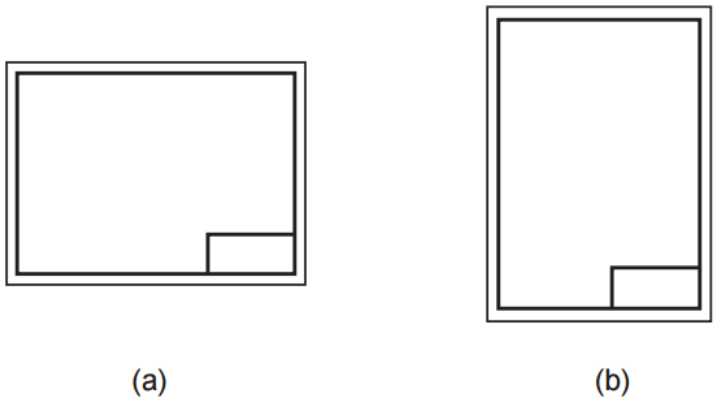


Figure 3.21: Location of title block (Narayana et al., 2009)

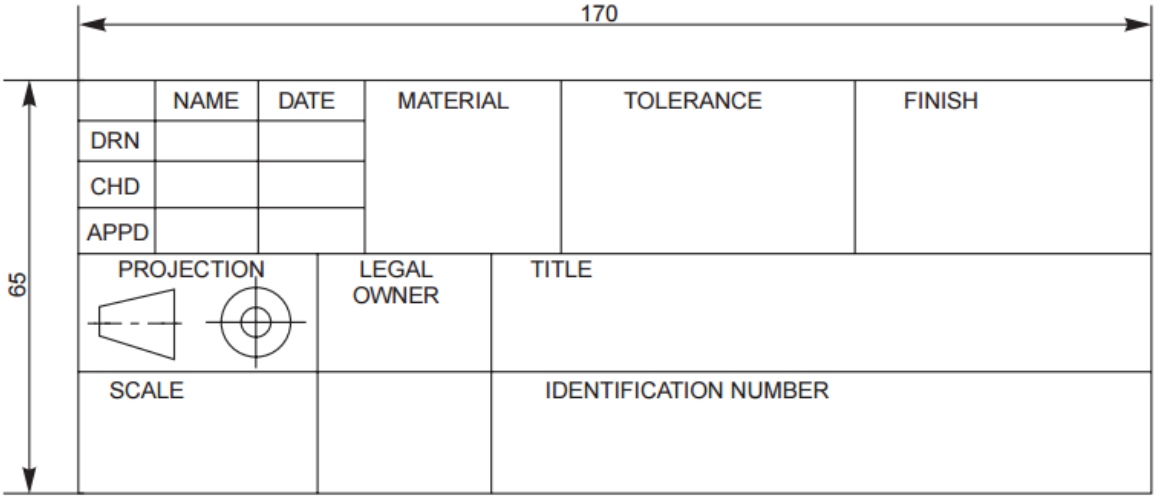


Figure 3.22: Details in a title block (Narayana et al., 2009)

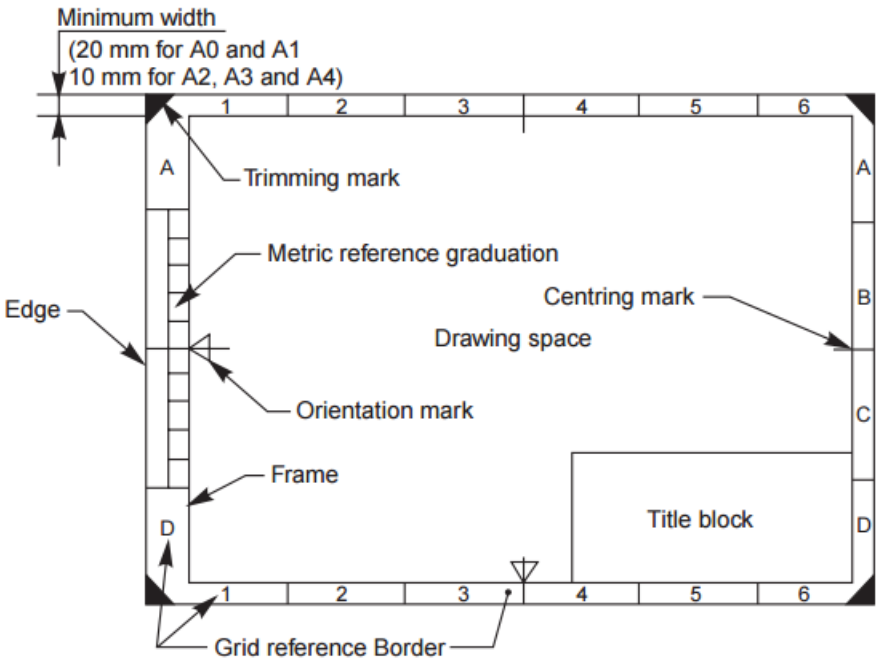


Figure 3.23: Drawing sheet layout (Narayana et al., 2009)

DIMENSIONS

Dimensions are the measurements that show how big or small a part is on a technical drawing. They help you know exactly how long, wide, or tall something should be, and where different features are placed.

There are different types of dimensions:

1. Linear Dimensions: These tell you the length, width, or height of a part, or the distance between two points, such as from one hole to another.
2. Angular Dimensions: These show the angle between two surfaces or features, for example, a corner that should be cut at 45 degrees.
3. Radial/Diametric Dimensions: These are used for round shapes, like circles or holes. For example, the diameter tells you how wide a hole is (like "Ø20 mm" means the hole is 20 millimetres wide).

In technical drawings, measurements are usually given in millimetres (mm) or inches, and follow common standards to keep things clear and easy to understand. Special symbols are used to show things like diameter (Ø) or radius (R). Dimensions are placed neatly on the drawing with lines and arrows so you can read them easily.

For example, if you see "Ø50 ±0.02 mm" on a drawing, it means the round part should be 50 millimetres wide, but it can be a tiny bit bigger or smaller (within 0.02 mm). If it says "L=100 ±0.1 mm", the part should be 100 millimetres long, with a small allowance for error (0.1 mm). These precise instructions help make sure parts fit together correctly when they are made.

TOLERANCES

Tolerances are rules that tell us how much a measurement can be a little bigger or smaller than the exact size shown on a technical drawing. These limits are important because they make sure parts will fit and work well together, even if there are small differences when making them in a factory.

There are different types of tolerances:

1. General Tolerances: These apply to all sizes and measurements on the drawing unless a special note says otherwise. They are often written in a table or in the title block of the drawing.
2. Specific Tolerances: These are given for important features that need to be very exact, like a hole where another part must fit tightly. For example, a hole might have a tolerance like +0.01/-0.00 mm, which means it can be up to 0.01 mm bigger, but not smaller.
3. Geometric Dimensioning and Tolerancing (GD&T): This system uses symbols to control the shape, straightness, or position of features. For example, it can show how flat a surface must be, or how straight an edge needs to be, so that everything lines up properly when assembled.

Technical drawings use international standards, like ASME Y14.5 or ISO 8015, to keep these rules clear and the same everywhere. Special symbols and codes are used, such

as Ⓔ for flatness or Ⓕ for concentricity (how perfectly round and centred something is). Tolerance notes or tables also show fit types (for example, "H7" means a hole has a precision fit).

For example, if a shaft is marked as "Ø25 h6", it means the shaft should be close to 25 mm wide but can be slightly bigger or smaller, according to the h6 tolerance. If it also has a parallelism tolerance of "0.02 mm relative to Datum A", it means the shaft must not lean or twist more than 0.02 mm away from the reference surface or line named "Datum A". These rules help make sure all the parts will fit together and work as planned during assembly and use.

MATERIALS

Materials are very important in engineering drawings because they tell us what a part is made of. The material chosen affects how strong, tough, and suitable the part will be for its job. Drawings usually state the exact material, for example, a certain type of steel (like AISI 4140 Steel) or plastic (such as ABS Plastic).

Sometimes, the drawing refers to international standards to make sure everyone uses the same quality of material, such as ASTM A36 for steel. If the best material is not available or is too costly, the drawing may suggest another option, for example, "Preferred: Aluminium 6061; Alternate: Aluminium 5052."

Engineers may also include extra instructions about treating the material to make it harder or softer. For instance, "HRC 45-50" means the surface should be hardened to a certain level. Details about materials are written in the title block or as notes on the drawing so manufacturers know exactly what to use. Special patterns in cutaway views (like diagonal lines for steel or wavy lines for aluminium) help identify different materials in the drawing. For example, the title block might say, "Material: Stainless Steel 316L, ASTM A240," which clearly shows what material is needed for the part.

SURFACE FINISHES

Surface Finish tells us how smooth or rough the outside of a part should be. It is important for how well the part works and how it looks. Engineers measure Surface Roughness using a value called Ra, which shows how even the surface is. For example, Ra 1.6 micrometres (μm) means the surface is quite smooth. To keep things clear, drawings use special symbols from international rules like ISO 1302 or ASME Y14.36. These symbols look like a check mark and show the Ra number, so manufacturers know exactly how smooth to make the surface. Sometimes, the drawing will mention special treatments to get the right surface, such as polishing (making it shiny), grinding (making it flat), or coating (protecting it from rust).

For example, if the part needs to resist corrosion, the drawing might say "Anodise per MIL-A-8625". All these notes and symbols are placed near the part of the drawing they refer to, so it is clear for anyone making or checking the part. If a surface, like a bearing, needs to be very smooth to reduce friction, the drawing will say "Ra 0.8 μm". This helps ensure the part works properly and lasts longer.

GEOMETRIC FEATURES

Geometric features are the shapes and positions of the different parts that make up a machine or object. They help make sure everything fits and works together properly. For example, holes are described by their size and how deep they go like a hole that is 10 mm wide and goes all the way through a piece, or a hole that has threads for screws, such as an M8 threaded hole.

Threads tell you what kind of screw or bolt fits into a hole, for example, M10x1.5 means a specific size and type of thread. Chamfers and fillets are ways of smoothing sharp edges. A chamfer is a slanted edge, such as cutting the edge at a 45-degree angle, while a fillet is a rounded edge, like making a corner smooth with a curve.

Other features, like keyways, splines, or grooves, help parts lock together or line up correctly. Welds are joins between metal parts, and special symbols are used to show what kind of weld is needed, for example, a line showing a fillet weld that is 5 mm thick.

To make sure parts are made accurately, engineers use a system called Geometric Dimensioning and Tolerancing (GD&T). This system uses symbols to show things like how flat or straight a surface should be, or how closely a hole must line up with other parts. For example, "Datum A" is a reference point or line used to measure everything else from, so all parts are made the same way.

An example on a drawing might say "Ø12 H7, Position Ⓗ 0.05 mm @ Datum A". This means there should be a hole 12 mm wide, made to a precise size, and its centre must be no more than 0.05 mm away from the main reference point (Datum A). This careful way of describing shapes and positions helps make sure everything works well when the parts are put together.

VIEWS AND PROJECTIONS

Views and Projections help show the shape and details of a part in a technical drawing. These drawings use different angles and sections to make everything clear and easy to understand. The most common types are:

1. Orthographic Views: These show the part from the front, top, and side, so you can see all the important measurements and features.
2. Isometric View: This gives a 3D picture of the part, which makes it easier to see how it looks overall. This view is useful for understanding the part's shape but is not always included.
3. Section Views: These show what's inside a part by cutting through it, like slicing a fruit to see the seeds. For example, if a shaft has a slot inside, the section view lets you see it clearly.

Engineers follow international rules, such as ISO 128 or ASME Y14.3, to make sure drawings are made in a standard way. They use first-angle or third-angle projection methods, which are just ways of arranging these views on the paper so everyone understands them in the same way. For example, if a drawing shows a cut-through

section, it might use special lines (called hatching) to show the material inside, like steel. This helps the person making the part know exactly what it should be made from.

NOTES AND ANNOTATIONS

Notes and Annotations are extra pieces of information added to technical drawings to make things clearer. They give important instructions that are not shown by symbols or measurements. For example, some notes might tell workers to smooth all the sharp edges, how tightly parts should fit together, or how to check for mistakes on the surface. These notes are usually written close to the main information box or next to the part of the drawing they are talking about. Adding these instructions helps make sure the part is made correctly, fits together well, and passes quality checks.

STANDARDS AND COMPLIANCE

Standards and Compliance make sure that parts are made properly and are safe to use. These rules help factories produce parts that are the same every time and work as expected. Well-known groups, like ISO, ASTM, or DIN, write these rules to guide things such as what materials to use, how accurate sizes should be, and how smooth surfaces must feel. In some cases, extra rules are needed for special uses, such as making sure materials are safe for food (like the FDA rules) or strong enough for the military (like MIL-STD rules). For example, if a drawing says, "Material to comply with ASTM B209 for Aluminium 6061," it means the material must match the exact standard written by ASTM for that type of aluminium. This helps everyone know they are using the correct material.

EXAMPLE OF A PART DRAWING

Consider a technical drawing for a cylindrical steel shaft:

1. Title Block: "Part: Drive Shaft, Part No: DS-001, Material: AISI 1045 Steel, General Tolerance: ±0.1 mm."
2. Dimensions: "Ø30 ±0.02 mm, L=150 ±0.1 mm, Keyway: 8x3 mm."
3. Tolerances: "GD&T: Concentricity Ⓕ 0.03 mm to Datum A."
4. Surface Finish: "Ra 1.6 μm on bearing surfaces."
5. Geometric Features: "M8x1.25 threaded hole, 20 mm deep, at one end."
6. Views: Orthographic front and side views, plus a section view showing the keyway.
7. Notes: "Heat treat to HRC 40-45, Deburr all edges."

STANDARDS GOVERNING PART DRAWINGS

Technical drawings adhere to internationally recognised standards, ensuring precision and clarity in design:

1. ISO 128 – General principles for technical drawings
2. ASME Y14.5 – Dimensioning and tolerancing (GD&T)

3. ISO 1302 – Surface finish symbols
4. ISO 2553 – Weld symbols
5. ASTM/ASME/ANSI – Material and testing standards

A part drawing serves as a comprehensive guide for manufacturing, integrating critical specifications such as dimensions, tolerances, materials, finishes, and geometric features. These standardised symbols and notations promote precision, clarity, and compliance, ensuring accurate production, quality control, and seamless global collaboration in engineering and manufacturing.

CASE STUDIES ON MAKING PART DRAWINGS OF A MACHINE COMPONENT

Part drawings are important in manufacturing engineering because they show exactly how to make a machine part. By looking at examples, students learn how these drawings are made in real factories. These examples help students understand how ideas from class are used in real life, showing why accuracy, clear instructions, and teamwork matter when making machine parts.

CASE STUDY 1: CREATING A PART DRAWING FOR A SHAFT

1. Objective: To produce a detailed part drawing for a shaft used in a gear assembly.
2. Process:
    a. Freehand Sketching: Begin with a rough freehand sketch to conceptualise the shaft's design and identify critical features such as diameters, lengths, and keyways.
    b. Dimensioning and Tolerancing: Apply precise dimensions and tolerances to ensure the shaft fits correctly within the assembly. This involves specifying the shaft's length, diameter, and any keyway dimensions, using standardised symbols and annotations.
    c. Material and Surface Finish: Select appropriate materials based on strength and durability requirements. Indicate any required surface finishes, such as polishing, to reduce friction and wear.
3. Outcome: The completed part drawing includes all necessary information to manufacture the shaft to precise specifications, ensuring its compatibility and functionality within the gear assembly.

CASE STUDY 2: DESIGNING A BRACKET FOR STRUCTURAL SUPPORT

1. Objective: To develop a part drawing for a bracket used in a support structure.
2. Process:
    a. Use of Drawing Instruments: Utilise drawing instruments such as T-squares, compasses, and set squares to create accurate orthographic projections of the bracket.

b. Geometric Features: Clearly represent geometric features like holes and bends using section views and hatching to illustrate material thickness and internal features.

c. Communication and Collaboration: Collaborate with peers to review and critique the drawing, incorporating feedback to enhance clarity and accuracy.

3. Outcome: The final drawing provides a comprehensive specification for the bracket, facilitating its production and integration into the support structure.

CASE STUDY 3

Figure 3.24 shows a mechanical drawing in isometric, draw the following: including:

1. Orthographic views (Front, Top, Right Side)
2. Sectional View A–A
3. Annotated dimensions
4. Surface finish symbols
5. Projection symbol (First Angle)
6. Dimensions (mm)
7. Tolerance
8. Prepare an arts list table

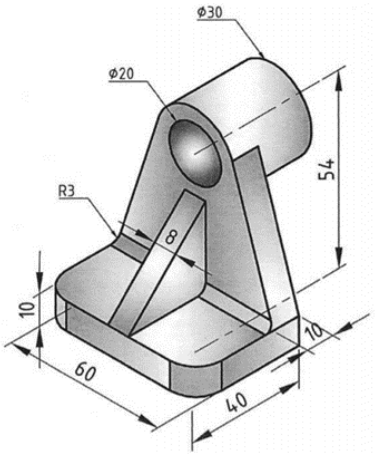


Figure 3.24: Mechanical component drawing

Activity 3.12 Understanding Machine Components

Aim: To understand the conventions and importance of machine components in production drawings.

Mode of Work

1. Independent or small group (2–4 learners)
2. Teacher assistance only for clarifying concepts.

Materials / Resources

1. Year 1 and Year 2 Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks
2. Internet access for research, notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Review your Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks on the conventions of machine components in production drawings.
2. Research different types of machine components (e.g., shafts, bearings, gears) using textbooks or the internet.
3. Create a summary of each type of machine component, including its definition, application, and examples.
4. Share your summaries with your group and discuss any differences. Suggest improvements for understanding machine components.

Note

Include your summaries and discussion points in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 3.13 Exploring Limits and Fits

Aim: To explore the application of limits and fits in production drawings.

Mode of Work: Teacher assistance for clarifying technical terms.

Resources: Internet access or textbook chapters on limits and fits, notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Watch short videos or read textbook chapters on limits and fits (e.g., clearance fit, interference fit, transition fit). You can also refer to videos in Activity 3.5
2. For each type of fit, note one key point and its significance.
3. Discuss with peers or write a short paragraph on how these fits improve the accuracy and functionality of production drawings.
4. Share your findings with peers and compare fits. Identify which fits are most relevant to specific applications.

Note

Include your notes and discussion summary in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 3.14 Practical Application of Detailed Drawings

Aim: To apply the concepts of detailed drawings in a practical setting.

Mode of Work

Teacher assistance only for clarifying concepts.

Materials / Resources

1. Year 1 and Year 2 Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks
2. Examples of detailed drawings, notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Review your Learner Manuals, notes, and textbooks on detailed drawings.
2. Identify examples of detailed drawings and their use in production.
3. Analyse the advantages and limitations of using detailed drawings in these examples.
4. Share your findings in class or write a summary and discuss any differences.
5. Suggest additional applications for detailed drawings in production.

Note

Include your analysis and summary in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 3.15 Creating a Part Drawing

Aim: To create a part drawing of a machine component.

Mode of Work

Teacher assistance for clarifying technical terms.

Materials / Resources

1. Internet access or textbook chapters on part drawings, notebook and pen
2. Drawing sheets, drawing boards and drawing instruments

Safety Note

1. Follow ICT lab rules when using computers.
2. Avoid unsafe or unrelated websites.

Instructions

1. Research the steps involved in creating a part drawing of a machine component.
2. Select a simple machine component (e.g., a shaft, bearing, or gear) from your school's workshop or the internet and gather the necessary specifications.

3. Create a detailed part drawing, including dimensions, tolerances, materials, and finishes.
4. Share your part drawing with peers and compare drawings. Identify which aspects of the part drawing are most critical for manufacturing accuracy.

Note

Include your part drawing and discussion summary in your Learner Portfolio.

Extended Reading

- Giesecke, F. E., Mitchell, A., Spencer, H. C., Hill, I. L., Dygdon, J. T., Novak, J. E., Loving, R. O., Lockhart, S., & Johnson, C. M. (2016). Technical Drawing with Engineering Graphics. Peachpit Press.
- Madsen, D. A., & Madsen, D. P. (2017). Engineering drawing & design (Sixth). Delmar Thompson Learning.
- Narayana, K. L., Kannaiah, P., & Venkata Reddy, K. (2009). Machine Drawing (Third, pp. 1–451). New Age International.
- Singh, L. P., & Singh, H. (2021). Engineering Drawing. Cambridge University Press.

REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. List three standard conventions used to represent different materials in production drawings and describe how each convention helps in communicating technical information.
2. Explain why using standardised symbols for machine components (such as shafts, gears, or springs) is important in production drawings. Provide two consequences of not following these conventions.
3. Discuss the impact of improper tolerance specification on manufacturing cost, quality, and assembly performance. Use an example of a mechanical assembly to illustrate your answer.
4. Evaluate the role of standardisation and unit conversions in detailed production drawings. Provide a scenario where failure to apply these correctly could lead to manufacturing errors



SECTION

4

RAPID PROTOTYPING TECHNOLOGIES AND APPLICATIONS

Design and prototyping

Rapid prototyping

INTRODUCTION

This section explores rapid prototyping technologies and their applications in design and manufacturing. You will learn about the importance of rapid prototyping and how it enables quick, cost-effective creation of physical models from digital designs. The section explains the differences between solid-based, liquid-based, and powder-based rapid prototyping technologies, highlighting their processes, advantages, and limitations. You'll also discover how prototypes are built using available technologies and the practical steps involved, from digital modelling to testing and evaluation. These concepts link directly to earlier lessons on the design process and the role of rapid prototyping in manufacturing. By understanding these advanced methods, you'll see how modern technology accelerates product development and transforms creative ideas into real-world solutions.

KEY IDEAS

- Rapid prototyping technologies accelerate product development by enabling fast creation, testing, and refinement of physical models across industries such as automotive, healthcare, and consumer electronics, reducing costs and time-to-market.
- The prototyping process starts with digital design using CAD software, followed by preparation with slicing software, layer-by-layer construction using 3D printers (including FDM, SLS, and SLA), and post-processing to achieve desired quality and functionality.
- Categories and differences in rapid prototyping technologies include solid-based, liquid-based, and powder-based technologies each use different materials and methods—solid filaments or powders, liquid resins, or fine powders—impacting the properties, surface quality, and applications of finished prototypes.
- Powder-based technologies (like SLS, Binder Jetting, and MJF) use fine powders fused by lasers, binders, or heat to create complex, detailed parts with applications in functional prototyping, customisation, tooling, and spare parts production.
- Effective prototyping involves understanding design requirements, iterative digital modelling, functional and material testing, dimensional checks, and gathering feedback for continuous improvement and successful application.
- The choice of prototyping technology depends on required material properties, safety considerations (such as handling toxic resins or powders), cost, and specific application needs, with each method presenting unique advantages and constraints in educational and industrial contexts.

IMPORTANCE OF RAPID PROTOTYPING TECHNOLOGIES

OVERVIEW OF RAPID PROTOTYPING

Rapid prototyping is a set of methods used to quickly create a model or actual part of a design using information from computer programs. One of the most popular ways to do this is called 3D printing, where a machine builds an object one layer at a time, following a digital file. This technology helps manufacturers, engineers, and designers test their ideas quickly before they start making the final product.

Rapid prototyping is especially valuable when making parts for new machines, tools, or consumer products because it saves time and money compared to making models by hand. In the manufacturing industry, it allows creative designs to be turned into real objects within hours or days. According to research by Gibson and others in 2015, rapid prototyping is important for improving the design, testing, and development of products across various fields like cars, aeroplanes, buildings, and even healthcare.

IMPORTANCE OF RAPID PROTOTYPING TECHNOLOGIES

Rapid prototyping technologies are important because they allow engineers and designers to turn their ideas into real products more quickly, accurately, and affordably. Instead of taking weeks to build and test a product by hand, a prototype can be created in just a few hours. This helps teams make improvements quickly and avoids expensive mistakes later on when producing large quantities.

Additionally, rapid prototyping improves communication. Clients and team members can actually hold and test a real version of the product, which makes it easier to discuss changes and improvements. Another significant advantage is that it encourages creativity. Students and professionals can quickly try out different ideas, compare them, and select the best one. It also supports custom production, where parts are made specifically to meet individual needs, like creating a unique phone holder or a medical device.

As 3D printers and similar technologies become more common in schools and local workshops, students can practice what they learn in class through hands-on projects. This practical experience enhances understanding and skills in engineering and design.

CASE STUDIES OF BENEFITS OF RAPID PROTOTYPING TECHNOLOGY

In the automotive industry, companies like Toyota and BMW use a process called rapid prototyping to test parts of cars, such as dashboards and handles. They create these parts using 3D printing with plastic or other cheap materials. This allows them to see if the parts fit and work correctly before making many copies, helping them avoid costly mistakes and delays in production.

In Ghana, students at Kwame Nkrumah University of Science and Technology (KNUST) have also used 3D printers for their projects. One team designed a low-cost prototype of a mechanical ventilator using materials found locally and 3D-printed parts. Thanks to rapid prototyping, they were able to create and test their first model in just a few days, instead of taking weeks or months. This shows how useful rapid prototyping can be in quickly developing ideas into working models. Figure 4.1 shows an image of a typical 3D printer.



Figure 4.1: 3D Printer (Prianto and Pramono, 2021)

Activity 4.1 Rapid Prototyping Concepts Recap

Aim: To review and understand the core concepts and significance of rapid prototyping technologies, connecting learning from previous years.

Mode of Work: Independent or in pairs. Peer support only; no teacher present

Materials / Resources

1. Year 1 and Year 2 Learner Manual, class notes, and manufacturing textbooks
2. Reliable online resources (e.g., Britannica, manufacturing websites), notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Review Year 1 and Year 2 Learner Manuals and notes on prototyping, focusing on differences between traditional and rapid prototyping.
2. Read textbook sections or search online for definitions, types, and benefits of rapid prototyping.

3. Summarise key concepts:
   a. What is rapid prototyping?
   b. How does it compare to traditional prototyping?
   c. List at least three benefits highlighted in your sources.
4. Share your summary with your group, noting any differences or new insights. Present your findings in a short group discussion.

Note

Compile a one-page summary for your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 4.2 3D Printer Video Watch

Aim: To observe a 3D printer in action, identify its main parts, and understand its operating principles.

Mode of Work: Individual or Small group (2–4 learners). Peer discussion for clarification

Materials / Resources

1. Internet access (e.g., YouTube: "How Does a 3D Printer Work?")
2. Device with internet access
3. Printable diagram of a 3D printer, notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Watch the assigned 3D printer demonstration video together.

   Here are sample videos you may consider:

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=f94CnlQ0eq4	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Vx0Z6LplaMU
https://www.youtube.com/shorts/iSKzTGpN1NU	https://www.youtube.com/shorts/cno2BE9YgRQ

2. Pause at key moments to note down the main parts and steps shown.
3. Label the blank 3D printer diagram with each part's name and function.

4. Discuss within your group how the printer operates from design upload to finished part.
5. Share your labelled diagram and explanations with another group for feedback.

Note

Include your diagrams and notes in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 4.3 Everyday Item Prototyping

Aim: To analyse common classroom items and propose how rapid prototyping could improve their design or production.

Mode of Work

Small group (2–4 learners). Collaborative investigation

Materials / Resources

1. Selection of everyday items (e.g., phone case, pen stand, bottle cap)
2. Internet access for research, notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Each group chooses 1–2 classroom items to examine.
2. Discuss the challenges and limitations of making these items using traditional methods (e.g., moulding, handcrafting).
3. Research and brainstorm how rapid prototyping (such as 3D printing) could address these challenges or offer improvements.
4. Prepare a brief presentation or poster outlining your proposed solutions.
5. Present your ideas to the class or another group, inviting questions and feedback.
6. Compare findings with peers and discuss additional improvements.

Note

Include your presentation, poster, and discussion points in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 4.4 Group Prototype Build

Aim: To experience the prototyping process by designing and building a simple model using available materials.

Mode of Work

1. Mixed-ability groups (3–4 learners)
2. Collaborative design and build

Materials / Resources

1. Basic prototyping materials (clay, cardboard, glue, scissors, rulers, markers)
2. Access to a 3D printer (if possible), notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Each group decide on a component they want to build (e.g. mobile phone holder, key holder, a piston, bolt, nut, etc.).
2. Sketch your design and plan the build process, considering both traditional and rapid prototyping methods.
3. Construct your prototype using the provided materials (and 3D printer if available).
4. Test your prototype and record any issues or improvements needed.
5. Reflect as a group on the process: What worked well? What challenges did you face? How would you improve your design?
6. Share your prototype and reflections with the class for feedback.

Note

Document your group's process, feedback, and improvements in your Learner Portfolio.

CONCEPTS OF SOLID-BASED AND LIQUID-BASED RAPID PROTOTYPING TECHNOLOGIES

Rapid prototyping is a way to quickly create a physical model of a design using advanced technology, specifically three-dimensional computer-aided design (CAD) data. This method is very important in product design and development because it allows engineers and designers to make models quickly for testing and improvement. For example, if someone is designing a new part for a drone, instead of taking weeks to make it from metal or plastic, rapid prototyping can help create it overnight using a 3D printer. This quick process helps visualise and evaluate the design, ensuring that the final product will work correctly.

Rapid prototyping helps companies get their products to market faster, save money, and encourage new ideas by allowing multiple design changes without significant costs. It acts as a link between digital designs and real objects, enabling ideas to transform from screens into physical items. This technique is valuable in industries like automotive, aerospace, healthcare, and consumer goods, where accuracy and speed are essential. By making prototypes, manufacturers can check how a design looks and works before producing it on a large scale, reducing the chances of mistakes and improving product quality.

Furthermore, rapid prototyping helps improve teamwork and communication because it provides a physical model that everyone can see and discuss.

CATEGORIES OF RAPID PROTOTYPING: SOLID-BASED AND LIQUID-BASED RAPID PROTOTYPING

Rapid Prototyping (RP), commonly called 3D printing or Additive Manufacturing (AM), involves creating objects in different ways. There are two main types of technologies used in RP, based on the materials they start with: Solid-Based and Liquid-Based technologies. Understanding the difference between these two is important because it influences the types of materials you can use, the quality of the final product, the machines required, and safety guidelines. For example, Solid-Based technology is like building with LEGO bricks, while Liquid-Based technology is similar to sculpting with quick-hardening clay. Both methods create 3D objects, but they use different processes and tools, leading to different results. Knowing these differences helps you choose the best method for your specific needs, whether you want a strong, functional piece or a detailed model.

SOLID-BASED RAPID PROTOTYPING (BUILDING WITH SOLIDS)

Solid-based Rapid Prototyping (RP) technologies begin with a material that is already solid, which can come in forms such as thin plastic strings (filament) or fine powders made of plastic, metal, or ceramic. These materials are combined layer by layer to create a finished object. Two popular methods used in this process are Fused Deposition Modelling (FDM) and Selective Laser Sintering (SLS).

1. Fused Deposition Modelling (FDM)

Also known as Fused Filament Fabrication (FFF), operates like a precise hot glue gun controlled by a computer. It uses a spool of plastic filament, such as ABS or PLA (***Figure 4.2***). The filament is fed into a heated nozzle, where it melts and is then squeezed out to form a thin line of molten plastic on a build platform. The nozzle moves around to "draw" each layer of the object. As the molten plastic cools, it hardens and sticks to the layer below, resembling the way toothpaste hardens as it dries. FDM is popular for its affordability, use of common plastics, and relative safety. However, the finished parts often show visible lines, and support structures may be needed for parts that hang over.

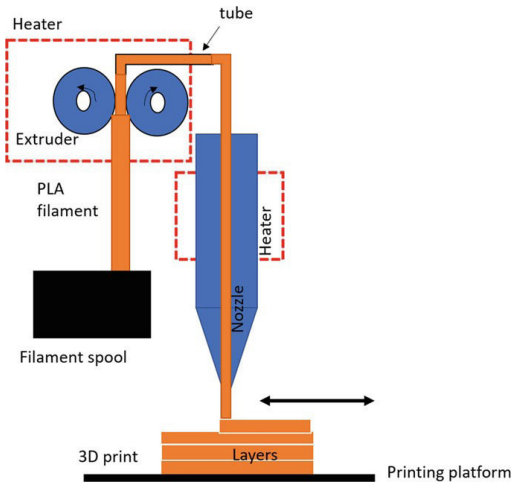


Figure 4.2: Principle of fused deposition modelling (Mwena and Akinlabi, 2020)

2. **Selective Laser Sintering (SLS)**

SLS, on the other hand, uses fine powder materials like nylon, metal, or ceramic (***Figure 4.3***). A thin layer of this powder is spread across a build platform. A powerful laser then scans the powder and traces the shape of the part. Where the laser touches, the powder particles fuse together, similar to how melting sugar cubes can stick together. The leftover powder remains loose and provides support for parts that overhang. After completing one layer, the platform lowers, and a new layer of powder is added. The process is repeated. SLS is known for creating strong, complex parts without needing extra support, but the machines are expensive, handling the powder requires safety equipment, and the surfaces of the finished parts can be rough. Both methods offer unique advantages and challenges, making them suitable for different applications in creating solid objects.

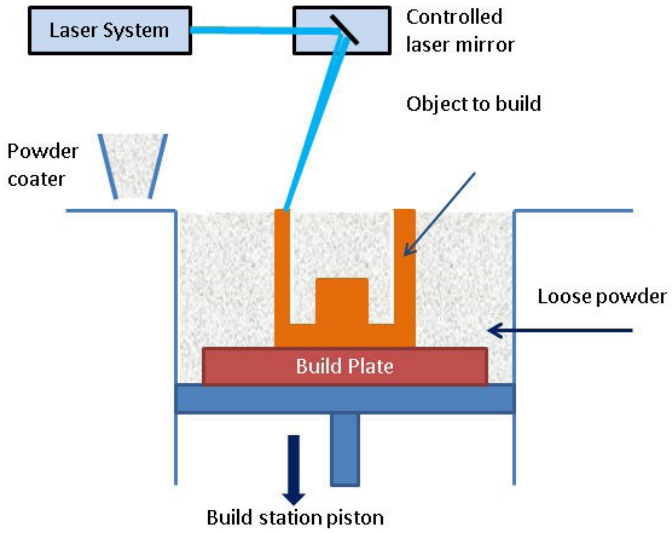


Figure 4.3: Schematic diagram of the powder bed fusion process (Rieder et al., 2014)

LIQUID-BASED RAPID PROTOTYPING: CURING LIQUIDS WITH LIGHT

Liquid-based 3D printing technologies use a special type of liquid plastic resin that hardens when exposed to light, a process known as photo polymerisation (Figure 4.4). The two main methods in this category are Stereolithography (SLA) and Digital Light Processing (DLP).

1. **Stereolithography (SLA)**

SLA is the older and more well-known method. It works with a tank filled with liquid resin. A platform for building the 3D object is positioned just below the surface of the resin. A UV laser beam moves across the surface of the resin, tracing the shape of the first layer of the object. When the laser shines on the resin, it hardens into solid plastic. The platform then lowers slightly to allow fresh resin to cover the hardened layer, and the process continues layer by layer until the object is complete. SLA produces very smooth and detailed parts, making it great for prototypes like figurines or dental moulds. However, the liquid resin before it hardens is sticky and toxic, so gloves are

needed for handling. After printing, the parts must be washed in alcohol and cured under UV light for extra hardening.

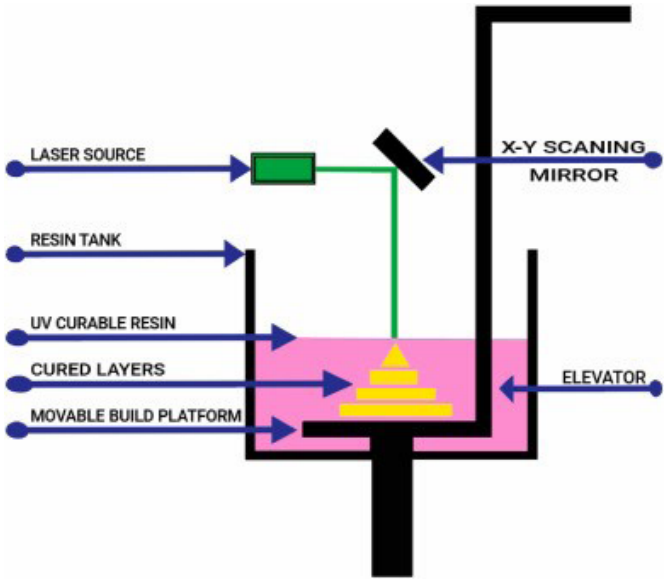


Figure 4.4: Stereolithography 3D printing (Husna et al., 2024)

2. Digital Light Processing (DLP)

DLP is similar to SLA but generally faster. Instead of using a laser to trace each layer point by point, DLP uses a digital projector to shine an entire image of the layer onto the resin all at once (**Figure 4.5**). This works like a stamp, curing the full layer quickly. Although DLP might produce parts with slightly less detail than SLA in some cases, it is faster and works well for small, complex designs. Like SLA, DLP also requires careful handling of the liquid resin and includes the same washing and curing steps after printing.

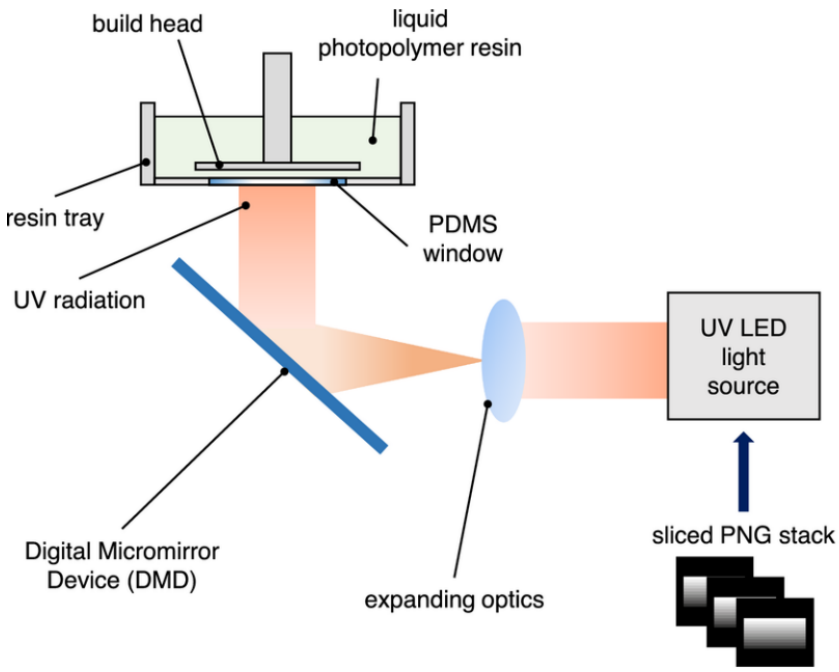


Figure 4.5: Schematic diagram of digital light processing 3D printer (Sekmen et al., 2024)

DIFFERENCES BETWEEN SOLID-BASED AND LIQUID-BASED RAPID PROTOTYPING

To understand the difference between solid-based and liquid-based rapid prototyping (RP), consider the materials used and how they change into solid objects. Solid-based technologies start with solid materials, like plastic filaments or powders. These materials are transformed into solid objects mainly through heat. Think of it like building a wall using bricks and mortar – you have solid pieces that you put together. On the other hand, liquid-based technologies begin with a liquid resin. These materials become solid by using light to harden them. This process is similar to casting a wall in concrete – you pour the liquid into a mould, and it sets into a solid form. In summary, solid-based methods use solid materials and heat, while liquid-based methods use liquid materials and light. Both methods create solid objects, but the materials and processes involved are quite different.

STARTING MATERIAL STATE

Solid-based RP technologies use materials that are already solid. This typically means a thin plastic wire called filament, which comes on a spool, similar to what is used in Fused Deposition Modelling (FDM). It can also include fine powders, like nylon or metal, used in Selective Laser Sintering (SLS). These materials feel solid when you touch them, even before they are printed.

On the other hand, liquid-based RP technologies start with a liquid resin that is kept in a tank. This resin resembles syrup or honey and only hardens when it is exposed to a special type of light, usually ultraviolet (UV) light. Before printing, this resin cannot be held without spilling. Understanding whether a material is solid or liquid is important in identifying which type of printing technology is being used.

HOW THE MATERIAL BECOMES SOLID (BONDING MECHANISM)

In 3D printing, there are two main types of technology based on how they create solid objects. The first type is called solid-based technology. It uses heat to bond materials together. For example, in Fused Deposition Modelling (FDM), a hot nozzle melts plastic filament, which then cools down and hardens into solid layers. Another method, called Selective Laser Sintering (SLS), uses a powerful laser to heat powder particles just enough so they stick together without completely melting. This is similar to how a heat gun can melt plastic or how a laser can weld materials.

The second type is liquid-based technology. This process uses light, specifically UV light, to create a chemical reaction in a liquid resin, a process known as photo polymerisation. When the UV light hits the resin, it makes the liquid molecules connect and form solid chains very quickly, turning the liquid into solid plastic instantly. It's like using a special flashlight that activates glue to harden without any heat being applied. In summary, solid technologies use heat to create solid objects, while liquid technologies use light to quickly turn liquid into solid.

SURFACE QUALITY AND DETAIL

The way materials are joined together during 3D printing affects how smooth and detailed the printed object will look. There are two main types of 3D printing technologies: liquid-based and solid-based. Liquid-based technologies, like Stereolithography (SLA) and Digital Light Processing (DLP), are known for creating objects with very smooth surfaces and fine details. This is because the liquid resin can flow easily, and the light used to harden it is very precise. As a result, these methods can produce small features, sharp edges, and smooth curves very well. They are often used to make detailed prototypes, jewellery, dental models, and figurines where appearance is important.

On the other hand, solid-based technologies usually produce parts that are rougher. For example, Fused Deposition Modelling (FDM) creates objects that have visible layer lines, which look like tiny ridges, because the plastic is built up layer by layer. Selective Laser Sintering (SLS) produces a grainy or sandy texture since it uses fused powder particles. Even though these surfaces can be smoothed out later, they will not be as smooth as those from liquid-based methods right after printing. In summary, liquid-based printing gives better surface quality than solid-based printing.

MATERIAL PROPERTIES AND STRENGTH

Different types of 3D printing use various materials, which affect the strength of the final parts made. One common method, called FDM (Fused Deposition Modelling), uses thermoplastics. These are the same types of plastics found in everyday items like water bottles and car parts. Some common thermoplastics include PLA, ABS, PETG, and Nylon. These materials are strong, durable, and can handle some heat and impact. Another method, SLS (Selective Laser Sintering), can use nylon and even metal powders, allowing it to create parts that are strong enough for actual use in machines or for prototypes.

On the other hand, liquid-based 3D printing technologies use photopolymer resins. These resins can create very detailed parts, but they tend to be more brittle, meaning they can break more easily. They also usually do not resist heat and sunlight as well as thermoplastics do. While there are special flexible or tough resins available, they generally do not match the strength and heat resistance of materials used in FDM or SLS for heavy-duty purposes.

SUPPORT STRUCTURES AND POST-PROCESSING

Most 3D printing technologies require support structures to hold up parts of the model that hang in the air during printing. Different methods handle these supports in unique ways. In Fused Deposition Modelling (FDM), which is a solid-based technique, separate support structures are printed alongside the main part, often using a different material. After printing, these supports must be manually removed, which can leave marks on the main part and may require sanding to smooth it out. Selective Laser Sintering (SLS) is different because it uses unfused powder around the part as support. Once the printing is done, you just dig out the part from the powder without needing any extra support structures.

For liquid-based technologies like Stereolithography (SLA) or Digital Light Processing (DLP), the supports are made from the same resin as the part. These supports are essential to keep the object anchored to the build platform and to hold any overhangs. Removing them requires careful cutting, which can leave small marks on the part. Additionally, parts made with these methods need to be extensively washed in solvents like isopropyl alcohol to get rid of sticky, uncured resin. They also need to be cured under UV light to harden completely. In summary, FDM generally requires just the removal of supports and possibly some sanding, while liquid-based methods need washing and extra curing steps.

SAFETY AND HANDLING

When using 3D printing technologies, safety is very important, and it varies depending on the type of printer you use.

1. **FDM Printers**

These are generally the simplest and safest to use in a school setting. The main risks include the hot nozzle, which can burn you like a hot glue gun, and fumes from the melted plastic. To stay safe, it is important to have good ventilation in the room.

2. **SLS Printers**

These use fine powders, which require special care. Masks should be worn to avoid breathing in the powder, and the lasers used in this type of printing can be powerful, so they are kept enclosed for safety.

3. **Liquid-Based Printers**

These printers have more significant safety risks. The liquid resin they use can be toxic and may cause skin rashes or eye damage. Therefore, wearing gloves and safety glasses is necessary when handling the resin or any uncured parts. It's also important to clean up any spills carefully. The solvents used for cleaning, like isopropyl alcohol, are flammable, so they must be stored and used properly.

Overall, liquid-based 3D printing processes are messier and require more safety precautions compared to desktop FDM printers.

TYPICAL USES AND COST

Different 3D printing technologies have their own strengths and weaknesses, making them suitable for various tasks.

1. **Solid-based technologies**

Solid-based technologies, like Fused Deposition Modelling (FDM), are great for making strong and durable prototypes. These parts, such as brackets and gears, can be tested under real conditions. FDM printers are also affordable and commonly used in schools.

2. **Selective Laser Sintering (SLS)**

SLS is another solid-based method. It is excellent for producing complex and strong parts that do not need support structures. However, SLS printers are very expensive and are typically used in industries like aerospace or custom manufacturing.

3. Liquid-based technologies

On the other hand, liquid-based technologies like Stereolithography (SLA) and Digital Light Processing (DLP) are best for creating high-detail models where appearance and accuracy are crucial. These are useful for architectural models, intricate art pieces, jewellery prototypes, and dental or medical models. Although desktop resin printers, which use these technologies, can be affordable, the resin material tends to cost more than the filament used in FDM.

A summary of these differences helps manufacturers choose the right technology. If a strong part is needed, they will likely choose solid-based FDM or SLS (Table 4.1). For detailed and smooth models, liquid-based SLA/DLP is preferred. Understanding the safety measures such as wearing gloves when handling resin and being cautious with heat when using FDM is also important. Additionally, they need to consider post-processing work, like washing resin parts or removing and sanding support structures from FDM prints. Having knowledge of these differences enables effective decision-making in using 3D printing technologies.

Table 4.1: Difference between solid-based and liquid-based rapid prototyping

Feature	Solid-Based RP	Liquid-Based RP
Starting Material	Solid materials: • Filament (plastic wire) • Powder (plastic/metal dust)	Liquid photopolymer resin (syrup-like)
Bonding Mechanism	Heat-based: • Melting/fusing (FDM) • Laser sintering (SLS)	Light-based: • UV light curing (SLA/DLP) • Photopolymerisation
Surface Quality	Rougher surfaces: • Visible layer lines (FDM) • Grainy/sandy texture (SLS)	Very smooth surfaces • High detail/sharp edges • Minimal layer visibility
Material Properties	Tough, durable thermoplastics: • PLA, ABS, nylon • Heat/impact resistant	More brittle resins: • Less heat/sunlight resistant • Specialised types exist
Support Structures	• FDM: Separate removable supports • SLS: Powder acts as support (no extras)	Always require resin supports Must be carefully cut away Leave small marks

Post-Processing	• Remove supports • Light sanding (optional) • No chemicals needed	Mandatory steps: • Wash in alcohol • UV light curing • Support removal
Safety Considerations	• Hot nozzle (FDM) • Powder masks (SLS) • Ventilation for fumes	Critical precautions: • Gloves & eye protection • Toxic uncured resin • Flammable solvents
Best For	Functional parts: • Machine components • Strength testing • Low-cost prototypes	Detailed models: • Jewellery/art • Dental/medical replicas • Visual prototypes
Example Technologies	• FDM/FFF (filament) • SLS (powder)	• SLA (laser resin) • DLP (projector resin)

CHOOSING THE RAPID PROTOTYPING TECHNOLOGY

Choosing the best rapid prototyping (RP) technology is similar to picking the right tool for a specific task. Different technologies are better suited for different needs. There are two main types: solid-based methods, such as FDM or SLS, and liquid-based methods, such as SLA or DLP. Solid-based methods use materials like plastic or powder, while liquid-based methods use special resins that harden under light. Each method affects the quality, cost, safety, and purpose of the prototype. Understanding these differences helps students select the most suitable technology, making their projects more effective and efficient.

WHAT IS THE PURPOSE OF YOUR PROTOTYPE?

Begin by considering: What is your prototype supposed to do? If you want to make a part that must be strong, tough, and able to handle pressure or fit with other pieces (such as a gear, bracket, or handle), solid-based methods are usually the best choice. For example, Fused Deposition Modelling (FDM) uses hard plastics like PLA, ABS, or nylon, which are strong enough for most daily uses. Selective Laser Sintering (SLS) can create even tougher objects using nylon or metal powders, making them suitable for things that need to work under real stress.

If your main goal is to make something that looks very good, with fine details and a very smooth surface (like models, jewellery designs, or dental moulds), then liquid-based methods such as Stereolithography (SLA) or Digital Light Processing (DLP) are better. These methods use special light to harden liquid resin in thin layers. The result is a part with a shiny, almost glass-like finish and very sharp details, much smoother than what most solid-based printers can make.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

When choosing materials for your prototype, think about what the finished part needs to do. Solid-based methods, like FDM, use common plastics that are cheap and similar to those used in real products. Examples are PLA (easy to use and environmentally friendly), ABS (strong and can handle heat), PETG (tough and resists chemicals), and nylon (flexible and long-lasting). SLS can even use metals and ceramics for tougher jobs in factories.

Liquid-based methods use special resins that can create parts with smooth and detailed surfaces. However, these resins are usually more likely to break or crack if you put them under pressure, and they do not last as long if exposed to heat, sunlight, or chemicals. There are some stronger or bendy resins, but they cost more and still do not match the strength of plastics from FDM or SLS. If the prototype must be strong and durable, solid-based plastics are usually the best choice. If you only need a model that looks very smooth and detailed and it does not need to be strong, then resin is a good option.

SAFETY AND CLASSROOM ENVIRONMENT

Safety matters most, especially in a school environment. Solid-based FDM printers are usually the safest and easiest to use. The main things to watch out for are the hot nozzle, which can burn like a glue gun, and some fumes from melting plastic, so good airflow is needed, but you do not need much special safety gear. SLS printers use fine powders that could be breathed in, so masks should be worn, and the machines have strong lasers that stay safely inside the printer.

Liquid-based printers, like SLA or DLP, are riskier. The liquid resin, before it is hardened, is poisonous. It can hurt your skin, cause allergies, or damage your eyes. This means gloves and safety glasses must always be used when touching resin, the tray, or anything that is not yet fully printed. If resin is spilt, it must be cleaned up carefully. After printing, the parts need to be washed in strong cleaning liquids, which are flammable, so they must be stored and used safely with good ventilation. Because of these extra safety steps and the chemicals involved, liquid-based printing is harder and messier to manage in a busy classroom than FDM printing.

COST AND ACCESSIBILITY

Budget and the resources available are very important to think about. FDM printers, which use plastic spools, are the cheapest and easiest to find, so they are popular in schools. The plastic used in these printers does not cost much. While some types of 3D printers called SLS are very expensive, most schools use FDM printers because they are much more affordable.

There are also liquid-based printers (like SLA or DLP) that are now easier to get and not as expensive as before, but the special liquid (resin) they use costs a lot more than FDM plastic. You also need to buy extra items, such as alcohol to clean the printed parts and special lights to finish making them strong. Even if the printer itself is not too expensive, the cost of the resin and cleaning materials adds up quickly. For most projects that need strong, useful parts and must be done on a budget, FDM printers

are the best choice. If a project really needs to look very detailed and smooth, and the higher cost is not a problem, resin printers can be used.

POST-PROCESSING TIME AND EFFORT

Think about the work required after the print finishes. Solid-based FDM parts generally need relatively simple post-processing: physically removing any support structures (which can sometimes leave marks requiring light sanding) and that's often it. SLS parts need to be removed from the powder bed and cleaned of excess powder, but no support removal is needed.

Liquid-based SLA/DLP parts require extensive post-processing that is mandatory, not optional. Parts must be carefully removed from the build platform, support structures (made of cured resin) must be meticulously cut away, the parts must be thoroughly washed in solvent (like IPA) to remove sticky uncured resin, and then they need a final cure under UV light to achieve full strength and stability. This process is messier, takes more time, and involves handling chemicals. If quick turnaround is needed, FDM often wins. If perfection is required and the extra steps are acceptable, resin delivers (Gibson et al., 2021).

MAKING THE DECISION: A SIMPLE FRAMEWORK

Guide students to ask these questions when choosing solid-based or liquid-based RP technology:

1. Function or Form? Does my prototype need to be strong and work (Function)? Pick Solid-Based (FDM/SLS). Does it need to look super smooth and detailed (Form)? Pick Liquid-Based (SLA/DLP).
2. Safety First: Am I prepared to handle toxic resin safely with gloves and eye protection, and manage solvents? If not, stick with Solid-Based FDM.
3. Budget Check: Can I afford the ongoing cost of resin and cleaning supplies? Filament for FDM is cheaper.
4. Time and Effort: Do I have time for washing and curing resin parts? FDM parts are ready faster with less fuss.

REAL-WORLD EXAMPLE: CHOOSING FOR A CLASS PROJECT

Imagine students are designing a custom phone holder.

Scenario A

They need a sturdy holder to mount on a bike. It must survive bumps and weather.

Choice: Solid-Based FDM. Why? Needs strength and durability (thermoplastics like PETG or ABS). Low cost. Safe for classroom use. Surface finish isn't critical.

Scenario B

They are creating an artistic, decorative holder shaped like a dragon with intricate scales.

Choice: Liquid-Based SLA/DLP. Why? Needs high detail and smooth surfaces. Functionality (holding the phone) is simple. The artistic detail justifies the extra cost and handling precautions.

Activity 4.5 Prototyping Foundations Recap

Aim: To consolidate and connect prior knowledge of prototyping, linking Year 1 and 2 concepts to current rapid prototyping approaches.

Mode of Work: Independent review and small group discussion (2–4 learners).

Resources: Year 1 and 2 class Learner Manuals and notes, Engineering textbooks, notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Individually review your class notes from previous years, focusing on definitions, processes, and examples of both conventional and rapid prototyping.
2. In groups, discuss the notable differences and similarities between traditional and rapid prototyping methods.
3. List at least three real-world examples for each approach, highlighting their advantages and limitations.
4. Summarise the key distinctions in your notebook or on a shared sheet.
5. Swap summaries with another group for peer feedback, refining your points based on discussion.

Note

Add your summary and peer feedback to your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 4.6 Technology Comparison Table

Aim: To construct a detailed comparison table of FDM and SLA technologies, focusing on material state, bonding mechanism, and post-processing steps.

Mode of Work: Pairs or small groups, collaborative research and table creation

Resources: Textbooks, internet access, sample comparison tables (if available), notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Research or review textbook sections describing FDM and SLA processes.
2. Create a table in your notebook comparing material state, bonding mechanism, and post-processing steps for each technology (include at least two details per aspect).

3. Cross-check your table with online resources or sample tables for completeness.
4. Compare your table with another group, discussing differences or missing details.

Note

Include your finalised table and a brief reflection in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 4.7 3D Printing Process Video Analysis

Aim: To observe and differentiate the working of solid-based and liquid-based 3D printers (FDM and SLA/DLP).

Mode of Work: Independent or pairs, collaborative video analysis and discussion

Materials / Resources

Internet-enabled device, access to 3D printing demonstration videos (e.g., YouTube, manufacturer sites), notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Watch a video demonstration of an FDM and SLA/DLP 3D printers, noting step-by-step processes and machine parts.

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=DMWzMpjSJLM	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2vFdwz4U1VQ&t=44s
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Ei2HGPhHPCY	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=9B-HGhN_jCk

2. Repeat for an SLA or DLP printer, focusing on process and material differences.
3. Take notes and sketch the main components for each printer type.
4. Highlight at least two key differences in process or output quality between the technologies.
5. Discuss your sketches and notes with a peer, clarifying unclear processes.

6. Share your sketches and summaries with peers for feedback.

Note

Add your sketches and summary of differences to your Learner Portfolio.

CONCEPT OF POWDER-BASED PROTOTYPING TECHNOLOGY IN MANUFACTURING

Powder-based rapid prototyping is a special way of 3D printing that uses tiny grains of material, such as plastic, metal, or ceramic, to build objects a little bit at a time. Think of it like laying out a thin layer of flour on a table, then using a laser, heat, or glue to stick certain parts together to make the shape you want. Once one layer is finished, the platform moves down a bit, a new layer of powder is added on top, and the process repeats until the whole object is created.

This method is different from other types of 3D printing that use solid pieces or liquid resins. With powder-based systems, the unused powder that surrounds the shape helps to support it, so there's no need for extra materials to hold everything in place during printing. This means you can make very complicated designs, hollow parts, or pieces that fit together, all in one go.

Powder-based rapid prototyping is important in manufacturing because it helps companies create new products faster, wastes less material, and allows for designs that would be hard to make using old methods. Any leftover powder can be used again, which is good for the environment. Because of its flexibility, this technology is perfect for making small numbers of products, testing out tools and ideas, and building detailed parts for all sorts of uses.

TYPES OF POWDER-BASED RAPID PROTOTYPING TECHNOLOGIES

Powder-based rapid prototyping is a special kind of 3D printing that uses very small grains, like tiny sand, to build objects layer by layer. These grains can be made from plastic, metal, or ceramic. With this method, a thin layer of powder is spread out, and then certain parts are joined together using heat, a laser, or glue. Once one layer is finished, a new layer of powder is added on top, and the process repeats until the whole object is made.

This technology is important in modern manufacturing because it allows companies to make complicated shapes and detailed designs quickly. It also helps save material, as unused powder can be used again. Powder-based rapid prototyping is great for making a small number of products, testing new ideas, or creating parts that would be difficult to make with traditional methods. Learning about powder-based rapid prototyping gives students a good understanding of how advanced manufacturing works and why these techniques are widely used today.

SELECTIVE LASER SINTERING (SLS)

Selective Laser Sintering (SLS) is a special type of 3D printing that uses powder to make objects. In SLS, a thin layer of powder, like nylon, metal, or ceramic, is spread over a flat surface (***Figure 4.6***). A powerful laser shines on the powder and "draws" the shape needed, making the powder stick together only in those areas. After one layer is finished, the platform moves down a little, and a new layer of powder is added on top. The laser draws again, joining the new powder to the layer below. This process repeats until the whole item is built up, layer by layer. SLS is very useful because it can create strong, heat-resistant parts with complicated shapes. That is why industries such as aerospace and car manufacturing use it to make parts that are tough and detailed. ***Figure 4.6*** shows how the SLS process works.

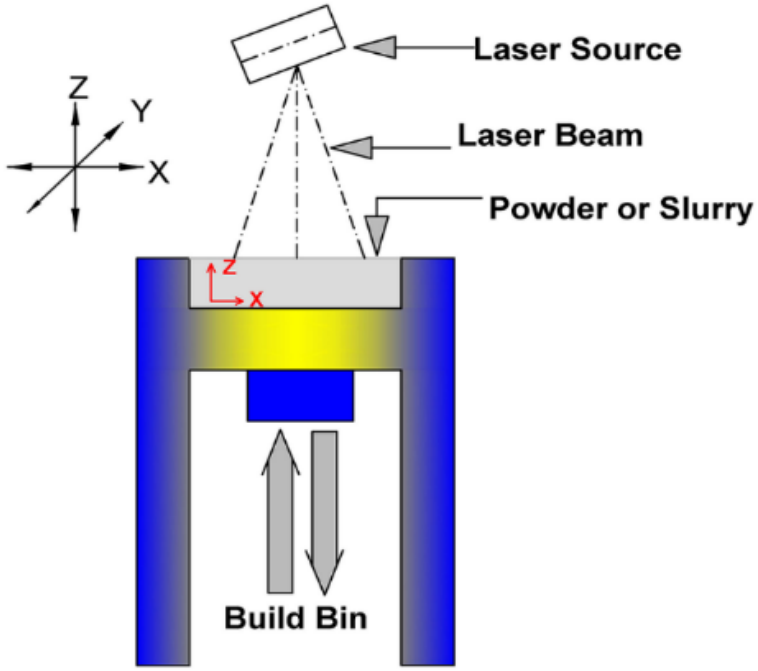


Figure 4.6: Schematic diagram of selective laser sintering (Shakor et al., 2019).

BINDER JETTING

Binder Jetting is a type of 3D printing that uses powder to make objects, but it works differently from some other methods. Instead of using a laser, Binder Jetting uses a special liquid called a binder (Figure 4.7). Here's how it works: a thin layer of powder is spread out, and the printer adds the binder only in the places where the object needs to be. This binder sticks the powder particles together in the shape you want. After one layer is finished, the platform moves down and another layer of powder is added. The process repeats until the whole item is built. Once the printing is done, the object usually needs extra steps, such as heating or drying, to make it strong and give it a good finish. Binder Jetting is popular because it is fast and doesn't cost too much, making it useful for making samples and small numbers of products.

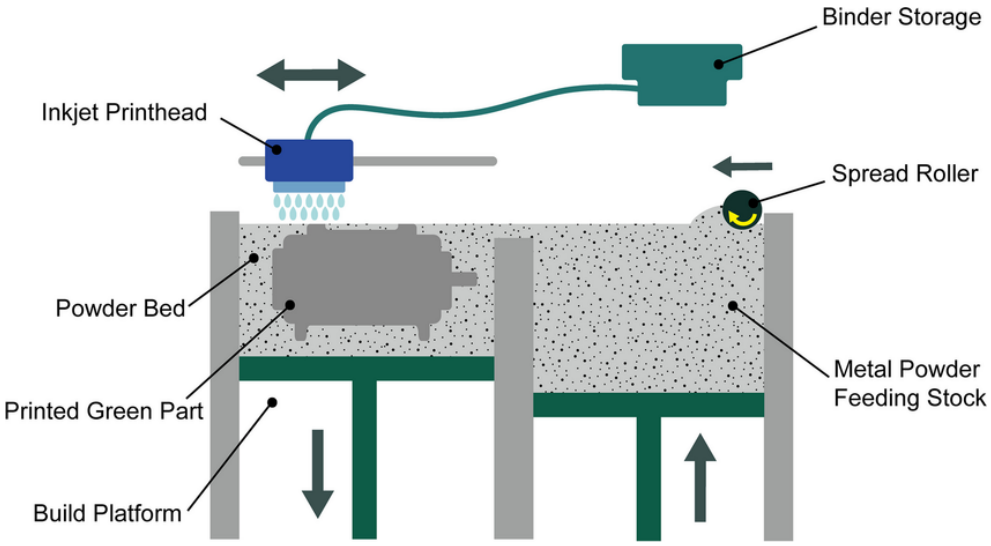


Figure 4.7: Schematic diagram of binder jetting 3D printing process (Wang et al., 2024).

MULTI-JET FUSION (MJF)

Multi-Jet Fusion (MJF) is a modern way to make objects using powder, similar to other 3D printing methods (Figure 4.8). Here's how it works: First, a thin layer of powder is spread on a flat surface. Then, special liquid agents are sprayed onto the powder to mark out the shape of the object. After that, heat is applied, which causes only the marked areas to stick together and become solid. This process is repeated layer by layer until the entire object is formed. MJF is fast and creates parts that are strong and have a smooth surface. Because of its speed and ability to make detailed parts, it is useful in industries like electronics and medical equipment.

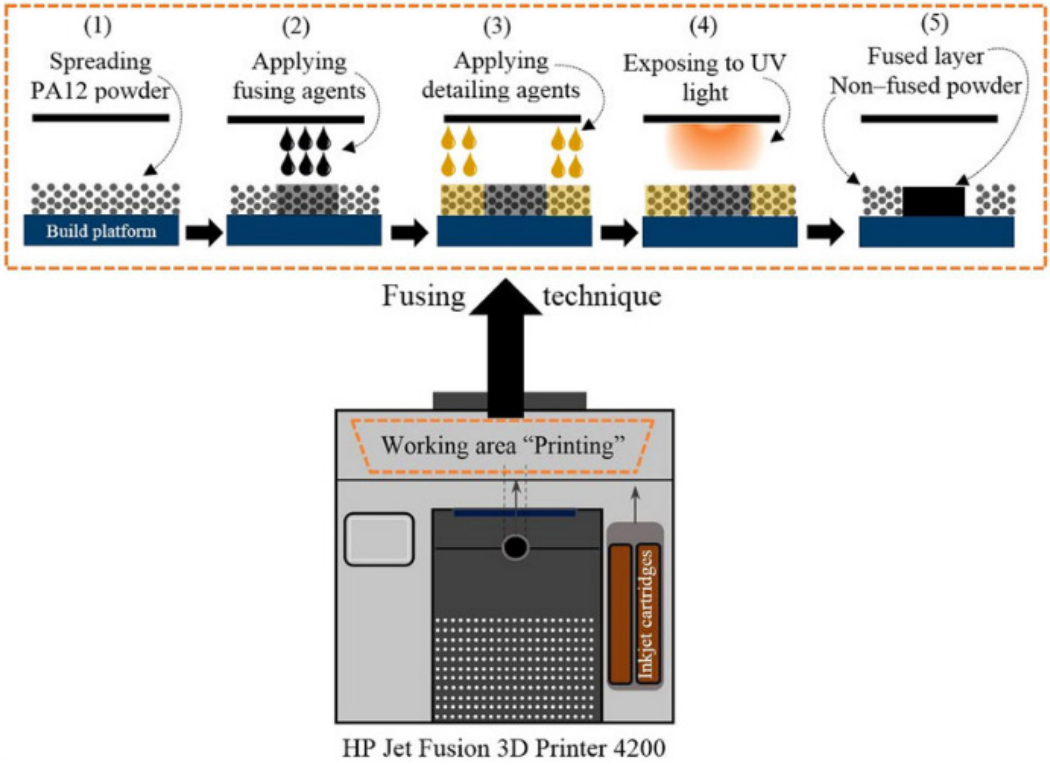


Figure 4.8: Schematic diagram of the MJT process as developed by HP

MATERIALS USED IN POWDER-BASED PROTOTYPING

Powder-based rapid prototyping is a modern way of making objects by using very fine powders. These advanced methods are important in today's manufacturing because they can create complicated shapes and strong parts. The type of powder used, such as plastic, metal, or ceramic, is very important. It affects how strong, smooth, or useful the final product will be. Choosing the right material depends on what the part will be used for, how strong it needs to be, and what kind of surface finish is needed. Understanding these materials helps you know why different powders are chosen for different products.

POLYMERS

Polymers are special kinds of plastics often used in powder-based 3D printing because they are easy to work with and can make many different things. One common type, called nylon, is popular in a process known as Selective Laser Sintering (SLS). Nylon powder is strong, flexible, and tough, which means the objects made from it can bend without breaking and last a long time. This makes nylon good for making models that work like real products or even for final parts used in real life. It is also possible to print parts with complicated shapes and small details using nylon. Sometimes, other materials like tiny glass or carbon fibres are mixed with the polymer powder to make the printed items even stronger or to give them special qualities.

METALS

Metal powders are very important in modern 3D printing methods, especially when strong and long-lasting parts are needed. In these processes, fine metal powders—like titanium, stainless steel, aluminium, and cobalt-chrome are used to build objects layer by layer. These materials are chosen because they can handle high temperatures and heavy forces, which makes them perfect for making parts for aeroplanes, medical devices, and cars. One big benefit of using metal powders is that they allow the creation of parts with very detailed shapes and complex designs that would be difficult to make using traditional methods.

CERAMICS

Ceramic powders are important in making strong and heat-resistant parts using powder-based 3D printing. These materials are used where parts need to withstand high temperatures and be very tough, such as in electronics and aeroplanes. Common ceramic powders include alumina and zirconia. They are shaped into objects by special 3D printing methods, like Selective Laser Melting and Binder Jetting. After printing, the parts often need extra steps, like heating them in a furnace (called sintering), to make them strong enough for real use. This helps the ceramic parts get the right hardness and strength needed for demanding jobs.

COMPOSITE POWDERS

Composite powders are special mixtures made by combining two or more different materials. This is done so the final powder has the best qualities from each material. For example, by mixing certain powders together, the result can be stronger, lighter, or

better at handling heat than using just one material alone. A common example is when plastic (polymer) powder is mixed with ceramic powder. This creates a material that is both flexible, like plastic, and heat-resistant, like ceramic. These mixed powders are useful in making car parts and electronic devices, especially when there is a need for materials that can do more than one job well. As technology improves, these composite powders are being used more and more in different industries.

PROCESS OF POWDER-BASED PROTOTYPING

Powder-based rapid prototyping is a modern way of making real objects from digital designs by using very fine powders. This method is important in today's manufacturing because it can quickly create parts with detailed shapes and designs. It is useful for making things that are hard to build with traditional methods. To understand how this works, it helps to learn each step of the process. Figure 4.9 shows a summary of these steps in powder-based prototyping.



Figure 4.9: Step-by-step process of powder-based prototyping

CREATION OF A 3D CAD MODEL

The process starts by making a 3D design of the part using a computer. This design acts as the plan for building the item. It is very important for the design to be correct and clear because any mistakes in the design will show up in the final part. Paying attention to detail at this step helps make sure the finished product will be made properly and work as expected.

CONVERSION TO STL FORMAT

After finishing the 3D design on the computer, the next step is to change it into a file type called STL. This STL file changes the design into lots of small triangles. These triangles make it easier for the 3D printer to understand and build the model. Turning the design into an STL file is important because it lets the printer cut the model into thin layers. The machine then builds up the part layer by layer, following these slices until the whole object is made.

LAYER SLICING

After the 3D design is changed into an STL file, the next step is to use special computer software to cut the design into very thin, flat layers. Each of these layers shows a slice of the final object, almost like cutting a loaf of bread into many thin pieces. These slices tell the prototyping machine exactly how to build each part, layer by layer, from the bottom up. This step is important because it allows the machine to create objects with complicated shapes and fine details, making sure the finished model matches the original design closely.

POWDER SPREADING AND LAYER BUILDING

The actual prototyping begins with the spreading of a thin layer of powder across the build platform. A mechanism, such as a roller or blade, ensures that the layer is even and smooth. For each layer, a laser or other energy source selectively fuses the powder particles according to the design specified in the slice. This process is repeated layer by layer, with the platform lowering slightly after each pass, until the entire part is built (Chua, Leong, & Lim, 2010).

POST-PROCESSING

Once the part is completely made, it goes through extra steps called post-processing to make it stronger and look better. This means removing any leftover powder, heating the part to make it tougher, or adding a smooth finish to the surface. These steps are important because they help the finished product work properly and look good. It is essential for students to understand that without post-processing, the prototype may not be strong enough or may not look the way it should.

APPLICATIONS OF POWDER-BASED PROTOTYPING

Powder-based rapid prototyping uses special machines to make new products quickly. These machines use fine powders and build up objects layer by layer, using techniques like Selective Laser Sintering (SLS) and Binder Jetting. This way of making things helps companies create products faster and more easily. It is important to learn about these methods because they are now used in many areas, such as making car parts, medical devices, and custom items. By understanding how powder-based prototyping works, you will know how new products are designed and brought to life in modern manufacturing.

CONCEPT MODELS AND VALIDATION

Powder-based prototyping helps create sample models of new products, called concept models. These are real objects made from a computer design, allowing people to see and touch the idea before it is made into a final product. With these models, engineers and designers can check if their ideas will work, look good, and do what they are supposed to do. This step is important in fields like electronics and industrial design, where it is necessary to test ideas quickly and make changes based on feedback.

FUNCTIONAL PROTOTYPING

Powder-based prototyping is often used to make test versions of new products that are very similar to the final items. These test models are made from materials and designed to work like the real thing. They are carefully checked to make sure they perform well and meet the right standards. This method is commonly used in areas like car and aeroplane manufacturing, where it is important to test new parts in real-life situations. By using these prototypes, companies can improve their designs and bring new products to market more quickly.

CUSTOMISATION AND PERSONALISATION

One important benefit of powder-based prototyping is that it allows products to be made specially for each person or situation. This is useful in areas like healthcare and fashion, where items often need to fit someone's unique needs. For example, in medicine, this technology can be used to make implants and artificial body parts that fit a patient perfectly, helping them recover better. In fashion, designers can use it to create clothing or accessories that are made just for one person, based on their style or measurements. This means products can be more comfortable, useful, and suited to each individual.

TOOLING AND JIGS

Powder-based prototyping can be used to make special tools, jigs, and fixtures that help with building and assembling products in factories. These tools are made from powder and built up layer by layer using machines. They can be created quickly and at a lower cost, which helps factories work faster and have less waiting time. For example, in car factories, custom jigs and fixtures are needed to put together complicated parts, and powder-based prototyping makes it easier to produce these helpful tools.

SPARE PARTS PRODUCTION

Industries like car and aeroplane making use powder-based prototyping to make spare parts quickly and easily. This is very important for fixing machines, because it means repairs can be done faster and there is less waiting time. With powder-based technology, companies can create spare parts only when they are needed. This helps to save money, as there is no need to keep many extra parts in storage, and it also allows repairs and maintenance to happen more smoothly (Gibson et al., 2014).

EDUCATION AND TRAINING

In schools, powder-based prototyping is a helpful way for students to learn how products are designed and made. It gives students the chance to use modern technology and solve real problems by making models of products. This hands-on experience helps students understand how things are created in factories and prepares them for jobs in engineering and manufacturing.

ADVANTAGES AND LIMITATIONS OF POWDER-BASED PROTOTYPING

Powder-based rapid prototyping uses special methods like Selective Laser Sintering (SLS) and Binder Jetting to help make things in factories. These methods allow companies to create test models and parts quickly and with a lot of detail. They are useful because they can build objects that have complicated shapes, which is difficult with normal tools. However, these technologies also have some drawbacks. They can be expensive to set up and run, and not all types of materials can be used. It is important to know both the advantages and the challenges of using powder-based prototyping, so that you can decide when and how to use it for making products in real life.

ADVANTAGES OF POWDER-BASED PROTOTYPING

One of the main benefits of powder-based prototyping is that it can make objects with very complicated shapes that are hard or even impossible to produce using regular manufacturing methods. This is very useful in fields like making aeroplanes or medical equipment, where detailed and complex designs are often needed. With powder-based technology, it is possible to create parts that have special features such as hollow spaces inside, hanging sections, and very fine details. This allows for new and creative designs that solve problems in different ways. Also, powder-based prototyping can use many types of materials, like metals, plastics, and ceramics. This means it can make parts for many different uses and industries (Kalpakjian and Schmid, 2020).

Another important advantage is how fast and efficient powder-based prototyping is. These methods help speed up the process by removing the need for special moulds or tools, allowing quick changes and tests of designs. Being able to do this quickly is important in industries like car making and electronics, where products need to reach the market as soon as possible. Powder-based prototyping also makes it possible to manufacture parts only when they are needed, which helps reduce the cost of storing extra parts and lowers waste by not making unnecessary items (Gibson et al., 2014).

LIMITATIONS OF POWDER-BASED PROTOTYPING

Even though powder-based prototyping has many advantages, there are some important challenges to keep in mind. The first challenge is the cost. The machines and special powders needed for this technology are expensive. This can make it hard for small companies and new businesses to use powder-based prototyping, because they may not have enough money to buy the equipment. Also, after making a part, extra steps like cleaning and heating (called sintering) are needed, which can add more time and cost.

Another challenge is the choice of materials. Powder-based prototyping can use different types of materials, but not as many as traditional methods. This means that sometimes the finished parts may not be as strong or have the smooth finish needed. In some cases, these parts might need extra work or extra materials to make them strong enough for their purpose.

Finally, using powder-based prototyping requires people who are well trained. The machines and processes are complicated, so proper training and skills are necessary to get good results. Without skilled people, it can be difficult for companies or schools to use this technology well.

Activity 4.8 Powder Prototyping Recap

Aim: To consolidate and deepen understanding of powder-based prototyping by comparing it with conventional rapid prototyping methods, building on foundational knowledge from Year 1 and Year 2.

Mode of Work

1. Independent review and paired discussion

2. Collaborative analysis and summary creation

Materials / Resources

1. Year 1/2 Learner Manuals, class notes and previous assignments
2. Textbooks and library resources, notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Individually review your Learner Manuals notes from previous years, focusing on definitions, processes, and examples of both conventional (subtractive, liquid-based) and powder-based prototyping.
2. List five key differences between conventional rapid prototyping and powder-based prototyping, using your notes to support your analysis.
3. Pair up with another learner. Share, discuss, and refine your lists together, noting any new insights.
4. Summarise your findings by constructing a concise comparison table in your notebook or on a shared sheet.
5. Post your table on the class discussion board or shared folder for collaborative feedback.
6. Include your table and a brief reflection on how your understanding has developed since Year 1 in your Learner Portfolio.
7. Share your comparison table with peers and discuss additional insights.

Note

Reflect on peer feedback and update your portfolio accordingly.

Activity 4.9 Technology Video Exploration

Aim: To observe and analyse the main powder-based prototyping technologies, including SLS, Binder Jetting, and MJF, by watching demonstration videos.

Mode of Work: Individual exploration and paired discussion

Materials / Resources

1. Online video resources (e.g., YouTube, manufacturer websites)
2. Headphones, notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Search for and watch at least one video each on SLS, Binder Jetting, and MJF processes.

   You can watch the following sample videos:

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=j2r8_nlBcDo	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=hjIoGPZPNjU
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=gf5JTfwsAFw	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=G_YThyVQFQg

2. Note the sequence of steps, equipment used, and unique features of each technology as you watch.
3. Write a brief summary (4–6 sentences) for each video, emphasising process flow and key takeaways.
4. Pair up with a classmate to compare summaries and discuss any differences or new insights.
5. Add your summaries and a note on which video was most instructive and why to your Learner Portfolio.
6. Discuss your video summaries with a peer, noting improvements or new perspectives.

Note

Include your final summaries and reflection in your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 4.10 Textbook Deep Dive

Aim: To build comprehensive knowledge of powder-based prototyping technologies, materials, and process steps through targeted reading and collaborative discussion.

Mode of Work: Individual study followed by small group sharing

Resources

1. Textbooks and library resources
2. Learner notes, notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Identify and read relevant textbook and library sections covering powder-based prototyping types, materials, and process steps.

2. Summarise the three main powder-based technologies, four material categories, and five core process steps in your own words.
3. List two advantages and one limitation for each technology, supported by examples.
4. Form a small group and share your summaries for peer feedback, clarifying misunderstandings and strengthening your understanding together.
5. Share and discuss your summaries with group members, capturing additional insights or corrections.

Note

Update your Learner Portfolio with final summaries and feedback reflections.

BUILDING OF PROTOTYPES USING RAPID PROTOTYPING

Rapid prototyping is a modern way of making models and parts quickly from computer designs. Instead of slowly cutting away material to make something, this method builds objects by putting down thin layers on top of each other. It all starts with a 3D design made on a computer. This design is turned into a special file, which is then divided into many thin slices. The prototyping machine uses these slices to build the object, one layer at a time.

One big benefit of rapid prototyping is that it can create very complicated shapes and designs that are hard or impossible to make with old methods. For example, it can make objects with hollow parts, curved shapes, and fine details. Another advantage is that it works with many different materials, such as plastics, metals, and ceramics. This means engineers can test out their designs using the best material for the job.

Rapid prototyping helps companies develop products faster and cheaper. It allows for quick testing and changes to designs, which means new products can reach the market more quickly. This is especially important in industries like car making, aeroplanes, and electronics, where technology changes fast. It also gives designers and engineers the freedom to try new ideas and improve their creativity, as they are not limited by traditional manufacturing methods.

Learning how to use rapid prototyping is useful in school because it teaches important skills for future jobs in engineering and design. By practising with these technologies, students can understand how to turn ideas into real objects, solve problems, and work well with others. Pictures of 3D printers at work, computer designs, and finished models can help students see how the process works and make the learning more interesting. The stages for rapid prototyping process from CAD model to 3D part is displayed in ***Figure 4.10***.

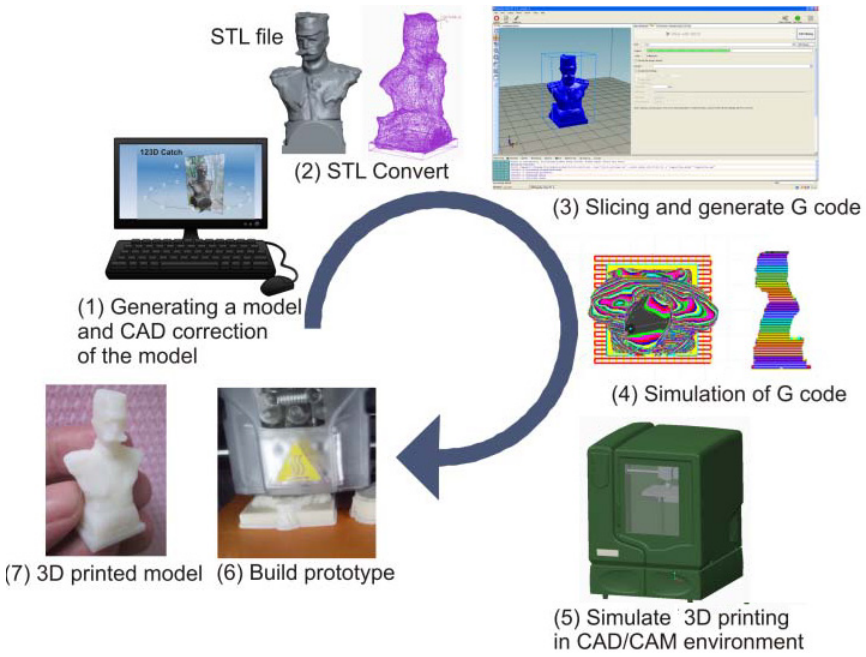


Figure 4.10: Stages for rapid prototyping process from CAD model to 3D part (Zivanovic et al., 2019)

DESIGNING THE PROTOTYPES

Designing prototypes is an important part of rapid prototyping. This means taking ideas and turning them into computer models that can later be made into real objects. In this step, it is important to be creative, use technical skills, and understand what the design needs to do. This section will explain how prototypes are designed using rapid prototyping methods, helping students learn the basic steps involved.

UNDERSTANDING THE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

(Refer to Year 1: Demonstrate understanding of the design process)

Before beginning to design a prototype, it is important to know exactly what the prototype should do and what it needs to include. This means finding out why the prototype is needed, what features it should have, and any limits such as its size, the materials to use, or how it should work. Knowing these details helps make sure the design matches what is required. Using tools like checklists or design briefs can help organise these ideas and keep the focus on the main goals.

CREATING A 3D CAD MODEL

The next step is to make a detailed 3D computer model of your design using special software called CAD (Computer-Aided Design). With CAD software, you can draw your prototype on the computer, showing all its shapes and sizes clearly. This computer model works like a guide for the machine that will build your prototype. CAD software also makes it easy to change your design or try out new ideas. Learning how to use this software is important because it helps you turn your ideas into plans that can be built in real life.

ITERATIVE DESIGN PROCESS

Rapid prototyping is a process where you can quickly make and test different versions of a design. It works in steps, allowing you to change and improve your design based on what you learn after each test. First, you create a simple model (called a prototype), then you check how well it works. If there are problems or ways to make it better, you adjust the design and make a new prototype. You keep repeating these steps, including making, testing, and improving, until the design does everything it is supposed to do. Keeping careful notes about what you change each time helps you see how your design gets better with each new version.

PREPARING FOR PROTOTYPING

After finishing the computer design (CAD model), the next step is to get it ready for making a real object. This is done by saving the design as an STL file, which is a special type of file that turns the design into lots of tiny triangles. These triangles help the 3D printer or prototyping machine understand the shape of the object. Next, special software cuts the STL file into thin layers, like slicing bread. The machine then reads these layers and builds the object one layer at a time. Understanding this process is important because it helps make sure the final prototype is accurate and well-made.

COLLABORATION AND FEEDBACK

When designing prototypes, it is important to work together as a team. Each person in the group can bring different skills and ideas, which helps make the design better. Working in groups with students who have different strengths allows everyone to learn from each other and find the best solutions. It is also useful to share your design with classmates and listen to their feedback. They might notice things you missed or suggest ways to improve your design. Taking advice from others and making changes based on their suggestions is a key part of creating a successful prototype.

TOOLS AND SOFTWARE FOR RAPID PROTOTYPING

To make models quickly using rapid prototyping, such as 3D printing, three main digital steps must be followed.

1. First, use a computer to draw your idea and create a 3D model.
2. Second, get this design ready for the printer by saving it in a special file format and slicing it into thin layers.
3. Third, use a 3D printer, which builds your model layer by layer until the full object is complete.

Using the right computer programmes and machines makes it much easier to turn your ideas into real objects. Understanding how these tools work together will help you design and build prototypes more successfully in your studies.

COMPUTER-AIDED DESIGN (CAD) SOFTWARE

The first step in rapid prototyping is to create a 3D computer model of the object using special software called computer-aided design (CAD). Programmes like Autodesk

Fusion 360, SolidWorks, and Tinkercad help users draw and shape their ideas on a computer. These tools make it possible to add fine details and test different parts of the design before making it in real life. CAD software is important because it makes sure the digital model is correct. If the model on the computer is not accurate, the final prototype may not work as planned.

SLICING SOFTWARE

After you finish designing an object on the computer, you need to get it ready for a 3D printer or prototyping machine. This is done using a special programme called slicing software. Examples include Cura, PrusaSlicer, and Simplify3D.

The slicing software changes your computer design into a type of file called an STL file. This file is then cut into many thin layers, like slices of bread. The software creates instructions for the machine to follow, telling it how to build your object one layer at a time. You can also use the software to change important settings, such as how thick each layer should be, how fast the machine works, and if any extra supports are needed to help the object print properly. These steps help make sure your model comes out well and matches your design.

3D PRINTERS AND PROTOTYPING MACHINES

3D printers and prototyping machines are used to turn digital designs into real objects. There are different types of these machines, and each one works in a special way and uses different materials. For example, Fused Deposition Modelling (FDM) printers build objects using thin strings of plastic, melting them and placing them layer by layer. Stereolithography (SLA) printers use liquid resin that is hardened by light to create parts. Selective Laser Sintering (SLS) machines use a laser to fuse powdered material into solid shapes. Each machine has its own strengths and weaknesses, so it is important to know which one is best for your project and the materials you want to use.

POST-PROCESSING TOOLS

After the prototype is printed, extra steps are often needed to make it look and work better. Tools like sandpaper, polishers, and heat guns are used to remove any rough parts, smooth the surface, and give the prototype a neat finish. Sometimes, paint or special coatings are added to make the prototype look good or to give it extra protection. These post-processing steps are important because they help make sure the final product is strong, smooth, and ready to use.

TESTING AND EVALUATION OF RAPID PROTOTYPES

Testing and evaluation are critical steps in the rapid prototyping process. They ensure that the prototype meets the design specifications and performs as intended. This section provides an overview of the testing and evaluation process, highlighting the importance of verifying the functionality, durability, and quality of prototypes created through rapid prototyping.

FUNCTIONAL TESTING

The first thing to do when checking a rapid prototype is to see if it works properly. This is called functional testing. It means making sure the prototype does what it is supposed to do. Test the prototype in different situations to find out if it is strong, reliable, and does its job well. For example, if the prototype is a part for a machine, check if it moves as it should, can carry weight, and fits with other parts. These tests help to spot any problems with the design so improvements can be made before the final product is created.

MATERIAL TESTING

Material testing means checking how strong and suitable the materials in your prototype are for their job. This involves testing things like how much weight the material can handle before breaking, how bendy it is, and how well it can stand up to heat or cold. For example, if the prototype needs to work in very hot places, you must make sure the material does not get damaged by the heat. Common ways to test materials include pulling them to see when they snap (tensile test), hitting them to check if they crack (impact test), and heating them to see if they can survive high temperatures (thermal analysis). These tests help you know if the material is right for the prototype's purpose.

DIMENSIONAL ACCURACY AND TOLERANCE CHECKS

Checking that the prototype has the correct size and shape is very important if it needs to fit with other parts. Use measuring tools like rulers, callipers, or micrometres to see if the prototype matches the measurements from the original design. If there are any mistakes in the size, it might not fit or work properly when put together with other pieces. By carefully measuring, you can find and fix any problems before the final product is made.

AESTHETIC AND SURFACE QUALITY EVALUATION

Besides checking if the prototype works well and is made from the right materials, it is also important to look at how it looks on the outside. This means checking things like how smooth or rough the surface is and how the whole prototype appears. Looking at the appearance is especially important for things people will buy, because how it looks can affect if people want it. Make sure the surface matches what you want, whether that is very smooth or has some texture. If needed, make changes after making the prototype so it looks just right for its purpose (Gibson et al., 2014).

GATHERING FEEDBACK AND ITERATION

It is important to ask classmates, teachers, and future users for their opinions about your prototype. Their comments can help you see what works well and what needs to be improved. By showing your prototype and listening to advice, you can learn from others and improve your problem-solving skills. After getting feedback, you should make changes to your design so that the prototype performs better and does its job more effectively.

CASE STUDIES

Rapid prototyping (RP) is not just something you do for fun in class—it is a powerful method used by real companies to make and improve products quickly. It helps turn ideas into real objects, which can then be tested and made better. Here are some examples of how rapid prototyping is used in the real world:

1. **Medical tools**

When a hospital needs a special tool for a rare surgery, engineers can use 3D printing to make a working model in just two days. They design the tool using computers, print it out, and test it with doctors. If it needs changes, they can quickly make new versions. This saves time and helps doctors prepare for surgery, making it safer for patients.

2. **Prosthetic limbs**

Some companies make artificial arms for children using 3D printing. They scan the child's arm, design a comfortable fit, and print it in strong plastic. The child can try it out, and if it needs to be changed, a new version can be printed quickly. This means children get their prosthetic limbs faster and at a lower cost.

3. **Car parts**

Car companies use rapid prototyping to make car engine parts. For example, Ford used special 3D printers to make many models of an engine part called an intake manifold. They tested each one to see which worked best. This process saved money and reduced the time it took to design the part from months to just a few weeks. Even racing teams use rapid prototyping to quickly replace broken car parts during competitions.

4. **Everyday products**

Companies use rapid prototyping to design things like smartwatch cases. They can print many test versions to check if the buttons are easy to use and if the screen is easy to see. Each test costs very little, so they can keep improving it before making the final product in large numbers.

5. **Space rockets**

Companies like SpaceX use rapid prototyping to make and improve rocket parts. They print parts using strong metal and test them to make sure they survive the high heat and pressure of rocket launches. This helps them fix problems quickly and build better rockets in less time.

6. **Sports shoes**

Big brands use rapid prototyping to make better trainers. They print hundreds of test shoes and ask athletes to try them. The feedback helps them make shoes that are more comfortable and perform better in sports.

In summary, rapid prototyping allows companies to quickly turn ideas into real objects, test them, and make changes until they work perfectly. This makes products safer, cheaper, and better for everyone.

Activity 4.11 Powder Prototyping Recap

Aim: To consolidate and deepen your understanding of powder-based prototyping by comparing it with conventional rapid prototyping methods, building on foundational knowledge from Years 1 and 2.

Mode of Work: Independent review followed by paired discussion; collaborative analysis and creation of a summary

Materials / Resources

- Year 1 and 2 Learner Manuals, class notes, and previous assignments
- Textbooks and library resources, notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Individually review your notes from previous years, focusing on the definitions, processes, and examples of both conventional rapid prototyping (such as subtractive and liquid-based methods) and powder-based prototyping.
2. Identify and list five key differences between conventional rapid prototyping and powder-based prototyping, using evidence from your materials to support your analysis.
3. Pair up with another student. Share and discuss your findings, refining your lists together and noting any new insights gained from your discussion.
4. Work collaboratively to summarise your findings by constructing a concise comparison table. This can be created in your notebook or on a shared document.
5. Upload or post your comparison table on the class discussion board or shared folder for collective feedback from your peers.
6. Include your finalised table and a brief reflection on how your understanding of prototyping methods has progressed since Year 1 in your Learner Portfolio.
7. Share your comparison table with classmates and engage in discussion to gather further insights.

Note

Reflect on the feedback received from peers and update your portfolio entry to demonstrate your improved understanding.

Activity 4.12 Sustainable Product Design Challenge

Aim: To design and prototype a sustainable product that effectively addresses a real-world community or environmental need, building practical skills in sustainable innovation.

Mode of Work: Small group collaboration (3–5 students per group)

Materials & Resources

- Internet access for research, CAD software for digital design, Brainstorming templates
- Prototyping materials and equipment (use if available)

Instructions

1. Identify Sustainability Challenges:
2. Brainstorm and list key challenges facing your local community or environment, focusing on areas such as waste reduction, renewable energy, water conservation, or social inclusion.
3. Research and Analyse Existing Solutions:
4. Investigate current products or initiatives tackling these challenges. Highlight gaps or areas for improvement where innovation is needed.
5. Design Your Sustainable Product:
6. Develop a new product concept using CAD software. Prepare a brief description detailing the product's features and its anticipated benefits to the community or environment.
7. Prototype Your Solution:
8. If equipment, materials and tools are available, create a physical prototype using rapid prototyping methods. If not, produce a comprehensive digital model to showcase your design.
9. Share your product concept and prototype with another group. Present your design and explain its sustainable impact. Listen to feedback and note constructive suggestions for improvement.
10. Record each stage of your design process, including your group's brainstorming outcomes, research findings, design rationale, prototype development, and feedback received.
11. Present your sustainable product and prototype to peers for evaluation and discussion.
12. Engage with feedback, reflect on suggestions, and make refinements to your design or documentation where appropriate.

Portfolio Note

Compile and save your group's design process summary and peer feedback. Add a brief reflection on what you learned about sustainable design and group collaboration for inclusion in your learner portfolio.

EXTENDED READING

- Chua, C. K., & Leong, K. F. (2017). 3D Printing and Additive Manufacturing: Principles and Applications (5th ed.). World Scientific.
- Gebhardt, A., Kessler, J., & Thurn, L. (2019). Additive Manufacturing: 3D Printing for Prototyping and Manufacturing (2nd ed.). Hanser Publishers.
- Gibson, I., Rosen, D., Stucker, B., & Khorasani, M. (2021). Additive Manufacturing Technologies (4th ed.). Springer.
- Groover, M. P. (2020). Fundamentals of Modern Manufacturing (8th ed.). Wiley.
- Kalpakjian, S., & Schmid, S. (2020). Manufacturing Engineering & Technology (8th ed.). Pearson.

REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. Describe the steps involved in Selective Laser Sintering (SLS) and discuss the safety precautions required when using this technology.
2. Compare the bonding mechanisms of FDM and SLA technologies. Use a Table to illustrate your answer.
3. Mrs. Ananse was recently involved in an accident that resulted in a fracture of her mandible. The nature of the injury requires a complete replacement of her lower jaw. As a student of manufacturing engineering, you have been assigned the responsibility of designing an artificial mandible for Mrs. Ananse. Utilising your expertise in materials selection and prototyping methods, develop a comparison table outlining the various suitable prototyping techniques available. Subsequently, based on your analysis, assess which technique would be most appropriate for producing the prototype, and provide a rationale for your selection.



SECTION

5

APPLICATIONS OF MACHINE TOOLS AND COMPUTER NUMERICALLY CONTROLLED MACHINES (CNC)



MANUFACTURING TOOLS, EQUIPMENT AND PROCESSES

MANUFACTURING TOOLS AND EQUIPMENT

INTRODUCTION

This section introduces the basics of using cutting tools and computer-controlled machines (CNC) in manufacturing. Learners will learn how cutting tools work and why CNC machines are important for making products with high accuracy. Key topics include how to set a starting point (datum) on a piece of material, how to use coordinate systems to measure and draw objects, and how to mark and measure parts correctly. Standard measurement units and different types of measuring tools, like gauges, will also be covered. These lessons help build a strong foundation for understanding more advanced manufacturing techniques in the future.

KEY IDEAS

- Accurate measurement and gauging are essential for verifying dimensions and ensuring quality, especially when operating CNC machines.
- Choosing appropriate coordinate systems is important when dimensioning objects and setting datum points, which is a crucial step in CNC machining.
- CNC machines use both manual-hand tools and power-hand tools, so distinguishing between them is vital for selecting the right equipment in manufacturing processes.
- Marking out on a workpiece prepares materials for CNC programming and subsequent machining operations.
- Understanding and applying standard units of measurement ensures consistency and precision across manufacturing processes and is fundamental for CNC machine input and operation.
- Setting datum points on a workpiece facilitates reliable reference and enhances the accuracy of CNC machine operations.

IDENTIFICATION AND CLASSIFICATION OF CUTTING TOOLS USED IN MANUFACTURING

Cutting tools are important instruments used in manufacturing to remove material from objects, which helps shape and finish them. They work by slicing through the material, making it possible to create pieces that meet specific designs.

In machining processes, cutting tools play a crucial role in accurately removing material to achieve precise results, which is essential across different industries. These tools act as the link between machines and the materials being worked on, allowing machines to do productive tasks. To be effective, it is important to identify and classify cutting tools correctly. This helps in selecting the right tool for a job, improving performance, and extending the tool's lifespan.

There are various types of cutting tools used in manufacturing, such as single-point tools for turning and multi-point tools for milling and drilling. Understanding the differences in their shapes, materials, and uses enables workers to make better decisions in workshops.

Furthermore, organising cutting tools according to international standards helps ensure consistent selection and usage, reducing mistakes and improving communication among technicians, engineers, and machinists.

CLASSIFICATION BASED ON THE METHOD (CONVENTIONAL AND NON-CONVENTIONAL) OF MANUFACTURING

Conventional machining processes, like turning, drilling, milling, and grinding, use sharp tools to cut away material from a piece of work, creating chips in the process. However, there are other methods to remove material that do not rely on cutting tools. These are called nontraditional machining techniques.

Nontraditional machining uses different forms of energy, such as mechanical, thermal, electrical, or chemical, to remove material (Tables 5.1 and 5.2). They were developed after World War II to handle specific tasks that traditional methods could not perform effectively.

To better understand these methods, they can be categorised into two groups: conventional machining and non-conventional machining. This classification helps in choosing the most suitable method for a particular manufacturing task. These requirements, and the resulting commercial and technological importance of the nontraditional processes, include:

1. The need to machine newly developed metals and nonmetals. These new materials often have special properties (e.g., high strength, high hardness, high toughness) that make them difficult or impossible to machine by conventional methods.

2. The need for unusual and/or complex part geometries that cannot easily be accomplished and, in some cases, are impossible to achieve by conventional machining.
3. The need to avoid surface damage that often accompanies the stresses created by conventional machining.

Many of these needs are linked to industries like aerospace and electronics, which have grown more important in recent years. There are many types of special machining methods, called nontraditional processes, and each has its own purpose. These methods are often grouped based on the main type of energy used to remove material, such as mechanical, electrical, thermal, or chemical energy. By this classification, there are four types:

1. **Mechanical**

Mechanical energy in some form other than the action of a conventional cutting tool is used in these nontraditional processes. Erosion of the work material by a high-velocity stream of fluid or abrasives (or both) is a typical form of mechanical action in these processes.

2. **Electrical**

These nontraditional processes use electrochemical energy to remove material; the mechanism is the reverse of electroplating.

3. **Thermal**

These processes use thermal energy to cut or shape the work part. The energy is generally applied to a very small portion of the work surface, causing it to be removed by fusion and/or vaporisation. The thermal energy is generated by the conversion of electrical energy.

4. **Chemical**

Most materials (metals, particularly) are susceptible to chemical attack by certain acids or other etchants. In chemical machining, chemicals selectively remove material from portions of the work part, while other portions of the surface are protected by a mask.

Table 5.1: Breakdown of Non-Conventional Machining by Energy Type

Energy Type	Representative Process	Mechanism of Material Removal	Use Case Examples
Mechanical	Water Jet, Abrasive Jet, Ultrasonic Machining	High-speed erosion via fluid or abrasives	Cutting brittle ceramics and composite materials
Electrical	Electrochemical Machining (ECM)	Reverse of electroplating (anodic dissolution)	Machining hard metals (e.g. titanium), delicate medical components

Thermal	EDM, Laser Beam Machining	Localised melting/ vaporisation using electrical or photonic energy	Aerospace fuel injector holes, precision dies
Chemical	Chemical Machining	Controlled etching via masked acid exposure	Metal nameplates, printed circuit boards (PCBs)
Hybrid (common in practice)	Some processes combine energies (e.g. laser-assisted water jet)	Mixed-mode benefits for advanced tasks	Research labs, custom tooling development

Table 5.2: Classification of Manufacturing Methods: Conventional vs Non-Conventional

Method Type	Examples	Energy/ Tool Used	Key Characteristics	Typical Applications
Conventional Machining	Turning, milling, drilling, grinding	Sharp cutting tools or abrasives	Removes material as chips using direct mechanical contact	Automotive: gears, shafts, brackets, etc.
			Generates stress and potential surface damage	Consumer electronics: housings, fasteners, etc.
			Limited capability for very hard or complex materials	Machine tools: standard metal parts
			Well-suited for mass production and simpler geometries	Industrial: housings, fasteners, etc.

Non-Conventional Machining	Electrical Discharge Machining (EDM), Electrochemical Machining (ECM), Laser Beam Machining, Water Jet/ Abrasive Jet Machining, Ultrasonic Machining, Chemical Machining, and Additive Manufacturing	Mechanical, thermal, electrical, or chemical energy (excluding sharp tools)	Emerged post-WWII to meet advanced material and geometry needs	Aerospace: turbine blades, precision components
			Capable of machining high-strength, high-toughness materials	Electronics: micro-features, delicate materials
			Suitable for delicate or stress-sensitive surfaces	Medical: implants, stents
			Enables complex, miniaturised, or custom geometries	Tool and die: moulds, dies
			Classified based on energy form used (see below)	Rapid prototyping and custom parts

CLASSIFICATION BASED ON CUTTING ACTION (SINGLE POINT CUTTING, MULTI-POINT CUTTING, ABRASIVE ACTION)

Cutting tools in manufacturing can be organised based on how they cut materials. There are three main types: single-point cutting tools, multi-point cutting tools, and abrasive tools.

SINGLE-POINT CUTTING TOOLS

These tools, like lathe tools and boring bars, have one cutting edge. They are mainly used for processes like turning, shaping, and planning. Their design allows for the precise shaping of materials.

MULTI-POINT CUTTING TOOLS

Tools such as broaches are examples of multi-point cutting tools. They have several cutting edges that can remove a lot of material at once. These tools are especially useful for making gears and parts for engines.

ABRASIVE TOOLS

This category includes grinding wheels, honing stones, and lapping plates. Instead of having sharp edges, these tools use many hard particles to smooth out surfaces. They are ideal for achieving very smooth finishes and precise measurements, especially on hard materials.

Understanding these categories helps engineers improve machining processes to make them more accurate and efficient, leading to better quality in manufacturing. The classification of cutting tools based on their cutting action, number of edges and applications has been summarised in Table 5.3

Table 5.3: Classification of cutting tools based on cutting action, Number of edges, and typical applications

Category	Tool Type/ Examples	Number of Cutting Edges	Typical Operations	Description
Single-Point Cutting	Lathe tool, Boring bar	1	Turning, Shaping, Planning, Boring	Used in operations requiring precision, simple geometry, and ease of manufacturing. Produces fine finishing and controlled material removal.
Multi-Point Cutting	Drill bit, milling cutter, Broach, Hobs, Circular saw blade	2 or more	Drilling, Milling, Broaching, Sawing	Multiple cutting edges allow higher material removal rates, improved surface finish, and longer tool life. Suitable for mass production and complex geometries.
Abrasive Action	Grinding wheel, Sandpaper	Many (abrasive grains)	Grinding, Honing, Lapping	Material is removed by the action of countless abrasive grains. Used for fine finishing and high-precision surface generation.
Form Tools	Thread cutting tool, Gear cutter	Varies	Thread cutting, Gear shaping	Tools designed to produce specific shapes or profiles on a workpiece.

CLASSIFICATION BASED ON TOOL MATERIAL (HIGH-SPEED STEEL TOOLS, CARBIDE TOOLS, CERAMIC TOOLS, DIAMOND TOOLS)

The classification of cutting tools based on their material is crucial in manufacturing, as different tool materials offer distinct advantages suited to specific applications. Tool materials such as high-speed steel (HSS), carbide, ceramic, and diamond are selected according to the demands of various machining operations and workpiece materials.

Choosing the appropriate tool material involves understanding several key properties:

1. High hardness: The tool material must be harder than the workpiece to cut efficiently and maintain its sharp edge.
2. Hot hardness: The ability to retain hardness at elevated temperatures, often achieved by alloying with elements like chromium, tungsten, and vanadium.

3. Wear resistance: Essential for resisting abrasion during cutting, this property is enhanced by the presence of hard carbides in the tool matrix.
4. Strength and toughness: Tools must withstand the forces and shocks encountered during machining without breaking or deforming.
5. Thermal conductivity and specific heat: High thermal conductivity helps dissipate heat, while adequate specific heat prevents excessive temperature rise in the tool.
6. Low coefficient of friction: Reduces heat generation and prolongs tool life.
7. Chemical stability: Prevents adverse reactions between the tool and workpiece, minimising tool wear.
8. Cost-effectiveness: The overall cost includes not just the initial price, but also maintenance and replacement expenses.

Understanding the different types of cutting tools is important for manufacturers. It helps them choose the right tools, such as high-speed steel, carbide, ceramic, or diamond, to make machining (the process of shaping materials) efficient, accurate, and cost-effective. Cutting tool materials can be classified into two main groups: ferrous (made from iron) and nonferrous (not made from iron) (***Figure 5.1***). A table can show you the properties, benefits, and uses of these common cutting tool materials, helping you see the best options for different machining tasks (***Table 5.4***).

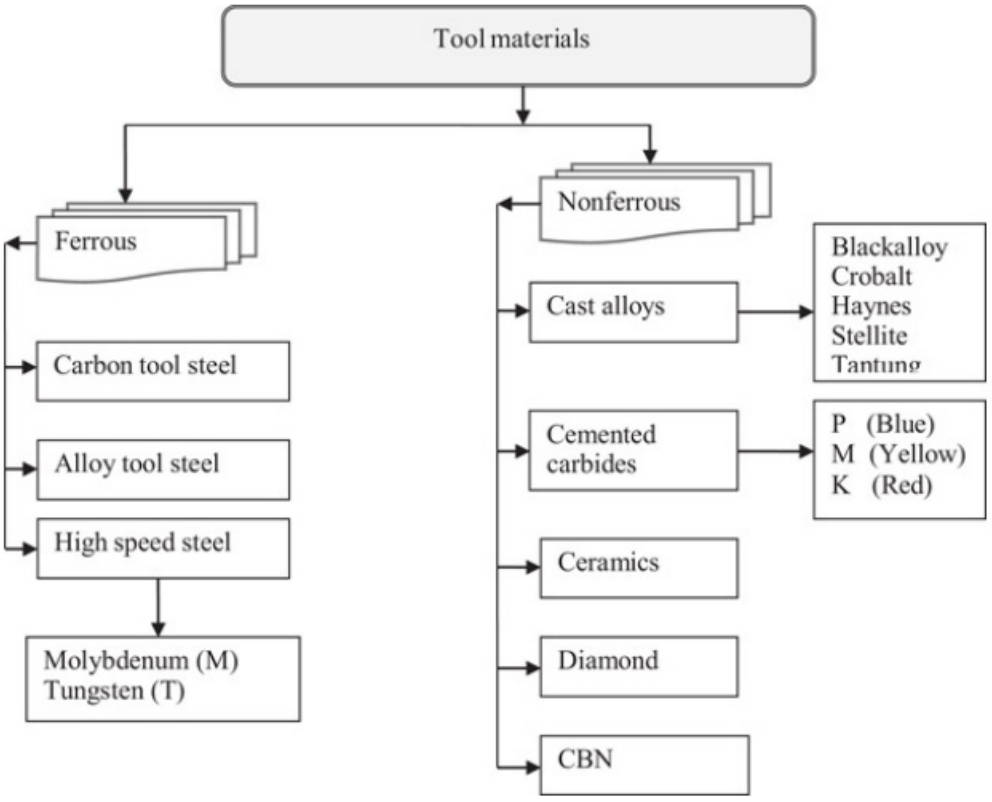


Figure 5.1: Classification of cutting tool materials into ferrous and non-ferrous materials (Groover, 2021)

Table 5.4: Comparative Properties, Advantages, and Applications of Common Cutting Tool Materials

Tool Material	Relative Cost	Cutting Speed Range	Hot-Hardness / Max Temp	Key Advantages	Key Limitations	Typical Applications
High-Speed Steel (HSS)	Low	15–80 m/min (coated up to ≈ 120 m/min)	Retains hardness to ≈ 550 °C	Tough core resists shock and vibration	Limited wear life vs cemented carbide	General-purpose drills, taps, reamers, and milling cutters for mild and alloy steels at low–medium cutting speeds
				Easy to grind and resharpen	Lower red hardness than ceramics and CBN	
				Low purchase cost		
Cemented Carbide	Medium	100–1 000 m/min	Retains hardness to ≈ 1,000 °C	Very high hardness and wear resistance	Brittle—low resistance to impact	Indexable inserts for turning, milling, and drilling of steels, cast irons, nonferrous alloys, and composites
				High allowable feeds and speeds	Demands rigid fixtures and stable machines	
				Good dimensional stability		

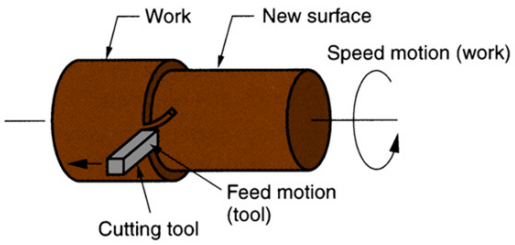
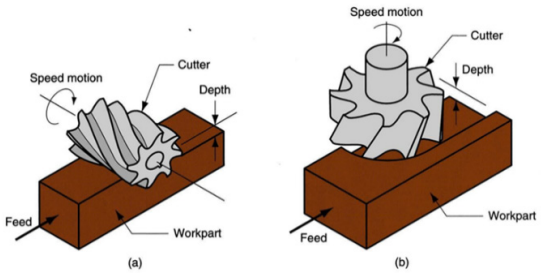
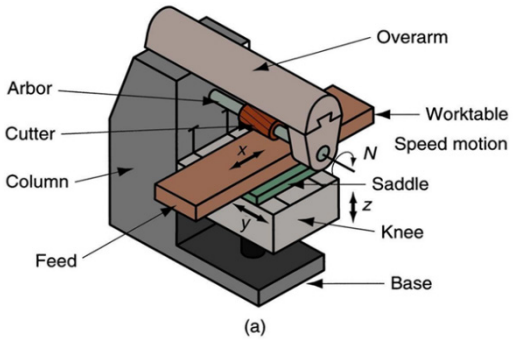
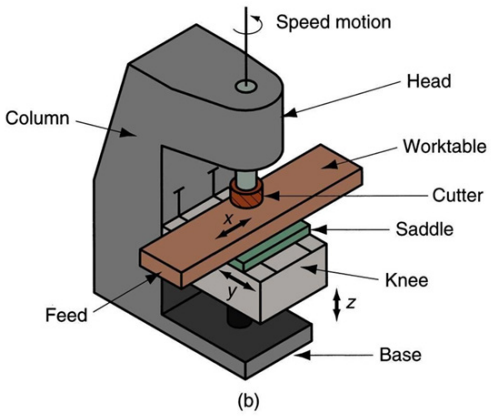
Ceramic Tools	High	300–3 000 m/ min	Retains hardness to 1,200–1,400 °C	Excellent hot-hardness and chemical stability	Extremely brittle—very low shock resistance	High-speed finishing of cast iron, hardened steels, superalloys; dry machining, high-temperature applications
				High wear resistance	Sharp edges prone to chipping	
				Low tendency to weld material		
Polycrystalline Diamond	Very High	500–5000 m/min	Risk of graphitisation above 650 °C in ferrous materials	Ultimate hardness—extreme wear resistance	Unsuitable for steels/irons (graphitised)	Machining abrasive nonferrous alloys (Al-Si), composites, CFRP/GFRP, ceramics; ultra-precision finishing
				Very low friction coefficient	High tool and grinding costs	
				Exceptional surface finish		

CLASSIFICATION BASED ON MACHINING OPERATION (TURNING TOOLS, MILLING CUTTERS, DRILLING TOOLS, THREADING TOOLS)

In manufacturing, cutting tools are sorted according to the type of job they do. Each job, like turning, milling, drilling, or threading, needs its own special tool shape and material. For example, some tools spin to cut the material, while others stay still, and the material spins instead.

Understanding how tools are grouped this way helps you see why it is important to choose the right tool for each job. It also prepares you to learn more about advanced topics such as how tools wear out, how to set cutting speeds, and how computer-controlled machines (CNC) work. Choosing the correct tool makes machining safer, faster, and more accurate. Images of machining processes have been displayed in Table 5.5. Also, a comparison of the machining processes has been summarised in Table 5.6.

Table 5.5: Machining processes

Machining operation	Image
Turning operation	
Milling Cutters	 Forms of milling: (a) peripheral milling, (b) face milling
	 horizontal knee-and-column milling machine
	 (b) vertical knee-and-column milling machine

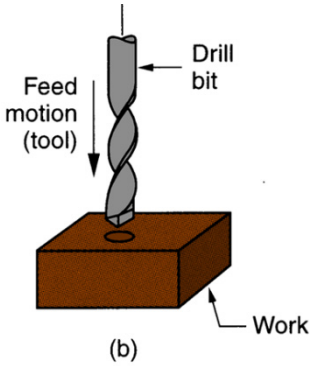
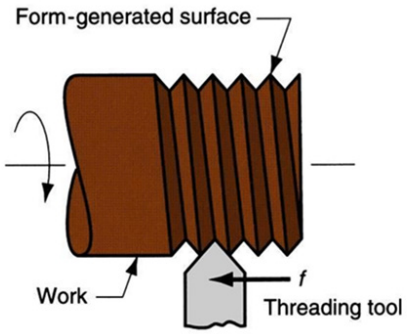
Drilling tools	
Threading tools	 Thread cutting on a lathe machine

Table 5.6: A comparative table highlighting tools, cutting edges, and machines used in machining processes

Machining Operation	Tool Type	Cutting Edge Type	Typical Machine
Turning	Lathe tools, Boring bars	Single-point	Lathe
Milling	End mills, Face mills	Multi-point	Milling machine
Drilling	Twist drills, Reamers	Multi-point	Drill press, CNC
Threading	Taps, Dies, Thread mills	Single or Multi-point	Lathe, Tapping machine

CLASSIFICATION BASED ON APPLICATION (WOODWORK, METALWORK, MACHINING)

Manufacturing processes can be grouped based on what they work with: wood, metal, or both metals and plastics, using machines. In woodwork, the main job is to shape, join, and finish wood to make things like furniture or parts for buildings. Tools often used include hand saws, planes, and power tools. When working with wood, it is important to wear eye protection and make sure not to wear loose clothing to stay safe. Metalwork is about cutting, shaping, and joining metals to create items such as car parts or building structures. Tools may include files, welding machines, and

grinders. Safety rules for metalwork include wearing gloves, putting on a face shield, and working in a space with good ventilation.

Machining is a type of process where material is carefully removed from metals or plastics to get the exact shape and size needed. Tools used for machining include drill presses, lathes, milling machines, and computer-controlled (CNC) systems. To stay safe during machining, it is important to secure your workpiece, keep your hands away from moving parts, and use safety guards and emergency stop buttons. Each of these groups uses different tools and methods and has its own safety rules. These differences affect how the work is done and the final products that are made. A summary is shown in Table 5.7.

Table 5.7: Classification based on application (woodwork, metalwork, machining)

Application	Description	Common Tools	Materials	Key Safety Practices
Woodwork	Shaping, joining, and finishing wood for furniture, cabinetry, and construction.	Hand saws, planes, power tools	Wood	Eye protection, avoid loose clothing
Metalwork	Cutting, forming, and joining metals for automotive parts, frameworks, and hardware.	Files, welding machines, grinders	Metals (steel, aluminium, etc.)	Gloves, face shields, proper ventilation
Machining	Precision material removal for exact dimensions in metals or plastics.	Drill presses, lathes, milling machines, CNC systems	Metals, plastics	Secure workpieces, maintain a safe distance from rotating parts, and use guards

FACTORS TO CONSIDER WHEN SELECTING CUTTING TOOLS

Selecting the right cutting tool is crucial for ensuring efficiency, quality, and cost-effectiveness in manufacturing operations. Several important factors must be considered to achieve optimal performance and results.

1. Workpiece Material: The hardness, toughness, and abrasiveness of the material being machined influence the required tool properties.
2. Tool Material: The material of the cutting tool should be chosen based on its ability to withstand cutting forces and high temperatures (e.g., high-speed steel, carbide, ceramic, diamond).

3. Type of Machining Operation: Operations such as turning, milling, drilling, or grinding each require specific tool geometries and strengths.
4. Cutting Speed and Feed Rate: Higher speeds and feeds generate more heat and stress, demanding tools with excellent heat resistance and durability.
5. Tool Geometry: Features like rake angle, relief angle, and nose radius affect chip formation, cutting forces, and surface finish.
6. Surface Finish Requirements: Desired surface quality may require particular tool shapes and cutting conditions.
7. Tool Life and Cost: Longer-lasting tools reduce downtime but may come at a higher initial cost. Balancing durability and expense is important.
8. Machine Capability: The machine's rigidity, power, and speed range can limit tool choices and performance.

Activity 5.1 Cutting Tools Recap

Aim: To review classifications and safety practices for cutting tools, revisiting content from Years 1 and 2 Learner Manuals and notes.

Mode of Work: Independent or pairs. Collaborative comparison and discussion

Materials / Resources

1. Year 1 and Year 2 Learner Manuals and class notes
2. Engineering or technology textbook, notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Independently read through your Learner Manuals and notes from Years 1 and 2, focusing on types of cutting tools used in woodwork, metalwork, and machining.
2. List at least three tools for each category and note their key safety practices.
3. In pairs, compare your lists and discuss any differences in classification or safety advice.
4. Summarise the main similarities and differences in a table in your notebook.
5. Exchange your tables with another pair for peer feedback and suggestions.

Portfolio Note

Add your final table and peer comments to your portfolio.

Activity 5.2 Machining Process Video Watch

Aim: To visually understand conventional and non-conventional machining processes.

Mode of Work: Independent or small groups (2–3 learners)

Materials / Resources

1. Internet-enabled device
2. Access to educational videos (YouTube, manufacturer websites), notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Search for two short videos: one showing a conventional machining operation (e.g., turning or milling) and another showing a non-conventional process (e.g., laser cutting or EDM).
2. Watch both videos, making notes on the tools used, the energy source, and the main differences in the machining process.

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=PaYInS9axxw&list=PLzC-SUZGIUJkaSyCzPiQMWynGyxm-C8hrpl	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Vw-cUiBLuHw
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=eWuG54faCPo	https://www.youtube.com/shorts/ilXQEsrJdrc

3. Draw a simple diagram of each setup and label the key parts.
4. In your group, discuss which process would be best for cutting complex shapes or hard materials and why.
5. Share your diagrams and reflections within your group, inviting discussion on the observed differences.

Portfolio Note

Include your diagrams and a short reflection on the differences you observed.

Activity 5.3 Library and Workshop Classification Research

Aim: To deepen understanding of cutting tool classification systems using library resources.

Mode of Work: Small groups (2–4 learners). Collaborative research and summary creation

Resources: Engineering textbooks, library computer for research, notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Visit the library to find a textbook or online article that explains the various classification systems for cutting tools, such as cutting action, tool material, and applications. If your school has a workshop, consider visiting it as well for a more hands-on experience.
2. Each group member researches a different classification method and notes key features and examples.
3. Combine your research to create a summary table listing the main classification types, their criteria, and at least one example for each.
4. Present your group's table to another group and ask for feedback on clarity and completeness.
5. Exchange feedback with another group and discuss possible improvements to your summary table.

Portfolio Note

Add your summary table and any feedback received to your portfolio.

Activity 5.4 Tool Identification Challenge

Aim: To practise identifying and classifying cutting tools based on images and descriptions.

Mode of Work: Pairs or small groups (2–3 learners)

Materials/Resources

- Pre-prepared set of tool images (printed or digital)
- Classification tables from your notes or textbooks, notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Work in pairs to examine each tool image or description provided.
2. Classify each tool according to at least two methods (e.g., by cutting action and by material).

3. Record your classifications and provide a brief justification for each choice, referencing your classification tables.
4. Swap your answers with another group for cross-checking and discussion.

Portfolio Note

Keep your completed classifications and feedback for your portfolio.

Activity 5.5 Cutting Operations

Aim: To perform activities on different materials with different tools

Mode of Work: Pairs or small groups (2–3 learners)

Materials/Resources

- Materials – soft wood block, acrylic plastic sheet, aluminium rod
- Tools for cutting wood, drilling plastic and milling aluminium

Instructions

1. Softwood block – Task: Cut a groove to fit a rectangular key
2. Acrylic plastic sheet – Task: Drill three holes (Ø 6 mm, 8 mm, 10 mm)
3. Aluminium rod – Task: Reduce diameter by 1 mm using a turning operation (lathe)
4. Discuss what worked well and what could be done to improve the activity.

Portfolio Note

Include your notes on this activity and a short reflection on the difficulties you experienced and what would improve it in the future.

APPLICATION OF CUTTING TOOLS

Cutting tools are important for shaping, sizing, and finishing materials in manufacturing. Using these tools correctly helps to make things more precise, faster, and with a better finish. Here, you will learn how cutting tools are used in woodworking, metalworking, and machining. You will focus on how to choose the right tool, how to handle it properly, and how to stay safe while using it. Different cutting tools are used for different jobs. For example, some are for turning, some for milling, others for drilling, and some for threading. Knowing how each tool works helps you decide which one to use so you can work better and help the tools last longer.

Understanding things like what the tool is made of, its shape, and how it is used affects how well it works. Learning these skills prepares you for future jobs in manufacturing and engineering. It also helps you learn how to pick and use the right tools safely in any workshop or manufacturing setting.

WOODWORKING (SHAPING, CARVING, FINISHING)

Woodworking is an important part of manufacturing. It involves shaping, carving, and finishing wood to make things like furniture, cabinets, decorations, and building parts. To do this, people use different tools and techniques. For example, chisels are used for cutting and shaping wood, while gouges help carve patterns. Rasps, files, and sandpaper are used to smooth and refine surfaces.

Some common tools in woodworking are hand saws (for cutting wood), planes (for smoothing surfaces), chisels (for shaping), mallets (for striking chisels), and sanding blocks (for smoothing). Each tool is chosen based on what job needs to be done and how the wood grain runs. It is important to use these tools safely. This means wearing safety goggles to protect your eyes, using dust masks to avoid breathing in wood dust, clamping the wood securely before working on it, and always making careful, controlled cuts. Woodworking is about both creativity and being precise. By using the right tools and being safe, wood can be changed from a rough piece into a finished product that is strong, useful, and looks good.

WOODWORKING APPLICATIONS

Focus: Shaping, carving, and finishing wood using appropriate tools.

Materials: Wood block samples

Tools Used: Chisels, Hand saws, Planes, Rasps and files, Sandpaper and sanding blocks

ACTIVITIES

1. Demonstrate shaping a wooden block using a chisel and mallet.
2. Carve simple patterns using gouges.



Figure 5.2: Simple wood patterns

3. Smooth surfaces using rasps and sandpaper.
4. Discuss grain direction and its effect on cutting.
5. Documentation of the entire process, including observation

SKILLS DEVELOPED

1. Tool handling and control
2. Surface preparation
3. Safety in wood cutting

SAFETY EMPHASIS

1. Use of goggles and dust masks
2. Proper clamping of workpieces
3. Safe direction of cutting strokes

METALWORKING (TURNING, MILLING, DRILLING)

Metalworking is an important skill in manufacturing, where metals are cut, shaped, and finished for many different uses, such as building machine parts, structures, and tools. The main steps include cutting metal with hacksaws, smoothing surfaces with files (flat, round, or half-round), and marking positions using a centre punch and hammer.

Common tools for metalworking are hacksaws, files, centre punches, hammers, and bench vices. Each tool is used for a special purpose, depending on the type of metal and the job required. To do metalworking well, it is necessary to learn proper handling of tools and how to prepare the metal for work. Safety is also very important. This means wearing gloves and goggles to protect your hands and eyes, clamping the metal securely in a bench vice, using the correct grip and posture, and being careful around sharp edges.

By following these steps, metals can be changed from their raw form into finished products that are useful and well-made, all while making sure everyone stays safe during the process.

METALWORKING APPLICATIONS

Focus: Cutting and shaping metal using hand and machine tools.

Materials: Metal rods



Figure 5.3: Metal rods (Rebar)

Tools Used: Hacksaws, Files (flat, round, half-round), Centre punch and hammer, Bench vice

ACTIVITIES

1. Cut mild steel rods using a hacksaw.
2. File edges to remove burrs and achieve smoothness.
3. Mark out drilling points using a centre punch.
4. Discuss differences in filing techniques for soft vs. hard metals.
5. Documentation of the entire process, including observations.

SKILLS DEVELOPED

1. Precision in cutting and filing
2. Understanding metal hardness
3. Manual dexterity

SAFETY EMPHASIS

1. Use of gloves and goggles
2. Proper posture and grip
3. Awareness of sharp edges

MACHINING (TURNING, MILLING, DRILLING, THREADING, BORING)

Machining is an important part of manufacturing where machines are used to shape, cut, and smooth materials like metals and plastics. Some common machining processes include turning, milling, drilling, and threading. For example, turning uses a lathe to make round shapes, milling removes material to create flat or shaped surfaces, drilling creates holes, and threading forms screw threads. The main tools and machines used in machining are lathes, milling machines, drilling machines, and tools for making threads. Each machine is chosen based on the specific job and the material being used.

To do machining well, it is important to select the right tool, set the machine to the correct speed and feed, and check the finished surface for smoothness and accuracy. Safety is also very important. Always use safety equipment like goggles, gloves, and aprons. Make sure the workpiece is set up properly, use machine guards, and know how to stop the machine quickly in an emergency.

By following the right steps and being careful about safety, machining can turn raw materials into precise and useful parts, showing both engineering skill and responsibility in the workshop.

MACHINING APPLICATIONS (TURNING OPERATION)

Focus: Performing basic machining operations using machine tools.

Materials: Mild steel or aluminium rods



Figure 5.4: Aluminium rod

Tools Used: Lathe machine, Single-point cutting tool, Calliper or micrometre, Bench vice

ACTIVITIES

1. Mount the metal rod on the lathe.
2. Perform facing and straight turning to reduce the diameter.
3. Measure the final diameter using a calliper.
4. Discuss how feed rate and depth of cut affect surface finish.

SKILLS DEVELOPED

1. Precision in diameter reduction
2. Understanding of lathe operation
3. Measurement and inspection techniques

SAFETY EMPHASIS

1. Tie back long hair and avoid loose clothing
2. Use safety goggles
3. Keep hands away from rotating parts

DOCUMENTATION

1. Record initial and final dimensions
2. Note tool settings and observations on surface finish

MACHINING APPLICATIONS (MILLING OPERATION)

Materials: Aluminium or brass blocks



Figure 5.5: Aluminium block

Tools Used: Vertical milling machine, End mill cutter, Vernier calliper, Clamping tools

ACTIVITIES

1. Secure the workpiece on the milling table.
2. Perform face milling to flatten the surface.
3. Mill a slot or step on the block.
4. Compare climb vs. conventional milling techniques.

SKILLS DEVELOPED

1. Workpiece alignment and clamping
2. Understanding cutter direction and feed
3. Surface preparation and slotting

SAFETY EMPHASIS

1. Use guards and shields
2. Never reach over the cutter
3. Ensure proper clamping before starting

DOCUMENTATION

1. Sketch the machined part
2. Record cutter type, speed, and feed used.

MACHINING APPLICATIONS (DRILLING OPERATION)

Materials: Mild steel or plastic plates



Figure 5.6: Mild steel plate with holes

Tools Used: Pillar drill or bench drill, Twist drill bits, Centre punch and hammer, Safety goggles

ACTIVITIES

1. Mark hole positions using a centre punch.
2. Drill holes of different diameters.
3. Deburr holes using a countersink tool.
4. Discuss drill bit selection based on material.

SKILLS DEVELOPED

1. Accurate hole positioning
2. Drill speed and pressure control
3. Tool selection for different materials

SAFETY EMPHASIS

1. Clamp work securely
2. Use correct drill speed
3. Wear eye protection

DOCUMENTATION

1. Record hole sizes and spacing
2. Note any issues like bit wandering or overheating

MACHINING APPLICATIONS (THREADING OPERATION)

Materials: Mild steel rods, Bolts, Nuts



Figure 5.7: Mild steel rods



Figure 5.8: Bolts



Figure 5.9: Nuts

Tools and Equipment Used: Die and die stock, Tap and tap wrench, Cutting fluid, Bench vice, Lathe machine

ACTIVITIES

1. Cut external threads using a die.
2. Cut internal threads using a tap.
3. Test fit with a matching nut or bolt.
4. Discuss thread pitch and tolerance.

SKILLS DEVELOPED

1. Manual threading technique
2. Understanding thread types
3. Use of cutting fluids

SAFETY EMPHASIS

1. Apply steady pressure
2. Use cutting fluid to reduce friction
3. Avoid forcing the tool

DOCUMENTATION

1. Record thread size and pitch
2. Reflect on ease of cutting and fit quality

MACHINING APPLICATIONS (BORING OPERATION)

Materials: Pre-drilled metal blocks, Plain metal blocks



Figure 5.10: Pre-drilled metal blocks



Figure 5.11: Plain metal blocks

Tools and Equipment Used: Lathe or boring machine, Boring bar, Dial indicator or bore gauge

ACTIVITIES

1. Mount the workpiece and align the boring tool.
2. Enlarge an existing hole to a precise diameter.
3. Measure internal diameter using a bore gauge.
4. Compare boring to drilling in terms of accuracy.

SKILLS DEVELOPED

1. Precision internal machining
2. Tool alignment and depth control
3. Measurement of internal features

SAFETY EMPHASIS

1. Use proper tool setup
2. Avoid overcutting
3. Monitor tool wear

DOCUMENTATION

1. Record initial and final bore sizes
2. Note tool settings and surface finish observations

Activity 5.6 Cutting Tools Recap

Aim: To review and consolidate your understanding of cutting tools gained in Years 1 and 2, forming a foundation for advanced study and practical use.

Mode of Work: Individual or pairs; Peer support only – no teacher input

Materials / Resources

1. Year 1 and Year 2 Learner Manuals and personal notes
2. Reliable engineering textbooks or trusted online sources, notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Independently review your notes and manuals from previous years, focusing on the types, uses, and safety practices of cutting tools.
2. For each main tool category (e.g., saws, drills, files), summarise three key points you have learned.
3. Identify and list any questions or uncertainties for further group discussion.
4. Read relevant textbook sections or search online to clarify unfamiliar concepts or broaden your understanding.
5. Share your summaries with a partner, filling in any gaps and noting new insights.
6. Present your findings to your partner or small group, comparing summaries and addressing any outstanding questions.

Portfolio Note

Compile your recap notes and highlight one new insight or question for future exploration. Attach this page to your Learner Portfolio.

Activity 5.7 Cutting Tool Video Watch

Aim: To observe cutting tool operations in real contexts and identify best practices through video demonstration.

Mode of Work: Small groups (3–4 learners)

Materials / Resources

1. Selected online demonstration videos (e.g., YouTube or reputable engineering sites)
2. Sketchbook or plain sheets (A2 or A4 sheets) and pens

Instructions

1. Watch videos on woodworking, metalworking, and machining cutting tools. Here are some sample video links you can begin with:

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=m3CqH4DjVlI	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Pw02sYZVEac
https://www.youtube.com/shorts/KwphFGlo-6I	https://www.youtube.com/shorts/tu0HO4UgRPg

2. Individually sketch each tool observed, noting its main application and an important safety practice.
3. As a group, discuss the differences in tool handling and results shown in the videos.
4. Compare your sketches and notes, highlighting key techniques and best practices observed.
5. Present your sketches and notes to your group, discussing similarities and unique insights.

Portfolio Note

Attach your sketches and a summary of one best practice from the video session to your portfolio.

Activity 5.8 Use Cutting Tools to Make Appropriate

Aim: To undertake cutting tool operations in real contexts and identify best practices through video demonstration.

Mode of Work: Small groups (3–4 learners)

Resources: Cutting tools to perform practical operations, materials to use cutting tools on.

Instructions

1. Use appropriate cutting tools to perform practical operations such as:
   a. cutting shafts
   b. machining keyways
   c. creating threads.
2. Discuss what went well and would could be done to improve this operation next time.

Portfolio Note

Attach photos of your work and a summary of the activity in your portfolio.

COMPUTER NUMERICALLY CONTROLLED (CNC) MACHINE

INTRODUCTION TO CNC MACHINES (BASIC PRINCIPLES)

CNC (Computer Numerically Controlled) machines are advanced machines that automatically perform tasks like cutting, drilling, milling, and turning materials. They follow instructions that are programmed into the machine, so they do not need people to control them directly. These instructions are created using computers, starting with a design made in special drawing software (called CAD) and then turned into machine instructions with another type of software (called CAM).

CNC machines use motors and sensors to move parts very accurately in different directions. This means they can make the same part many times with high precision and little chance of mistakes. They are important in factories because they work quickly, produce good quality parts, and can create shapes that are difficult to make by hand. CNC machines are used in industries such as making cars, aeroplanes, electronics, and medical equipment. They can shape many materials, including metals, plastics, and wood. In summary, CNC machines help make manufacturing faster, more accurate, and more reliable.

COMPUTER NUMERICAL CONTROL (CNC)

Computer numerical control (CNC) systems are advanced machines that use computers to control their actions. Instead of being operated by hand, these machines follow instructions that are programmed into them. The computer inside the machine stores the instructions, can be updated with new ones, and allows changes to be made right where the machine is used. This makes it easy to update or improve how the machine works.

CNC machines are very important in modern factories because they make it possible to shape materials like metal, plastic, and wood with great accuracy. They do this by following the computer instructions exactly, which means parts are made to the same size and shape every time, with very few mistakes.

There are different types of CNC machines for different jobs: milling machines use spinning tools to shape materials into complex forms, drilling machines make precise holes, turning centres create round parts, and grinding machines give surfaces a smooth finish. Understanding what each type of CNC machine does is important for choosing the right one for a specific job, such as building cars, planes, or electronic devices.

By using computers and specialised software, CNC machines help factories work faster, produce better-quality products, and repeat the same results over and over again. Pictures of typical CNC machines can be seen in Figure 5.12.



Figure 5.12a: Industrial CNC milling machine



Figure 5.12b: Industrial CNC lathe machine

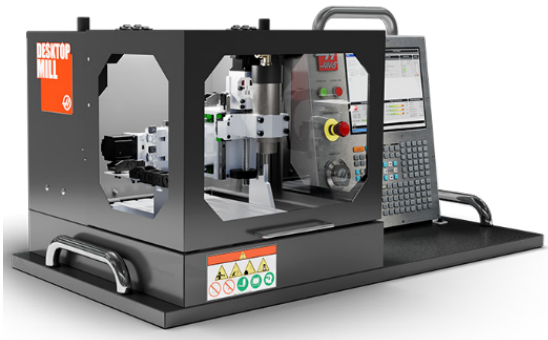


Figure 5.12c: Desktop CNC milling machine

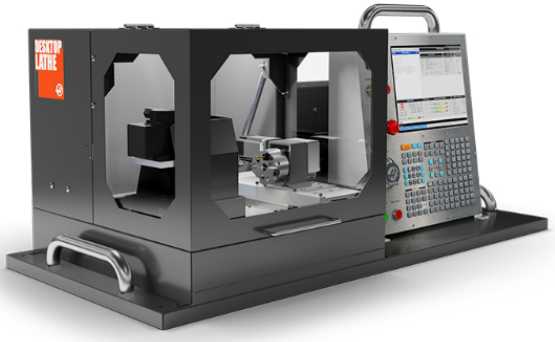


Figure 5.12d: Desktop CNC lathe machine

TYPES OF CNC MACHINES (MILLING, DRILLING, TURNING, GRINDING)

Computer numerically controlled (CNC) machines have changed the way factories make things by using computers to control the shaping of materials such as metal, plastic, and wood. Instead of being operated by hand, CNC machines follow instructions that are programmed into their computer system. This allows them to cut and shape materials with a very high level of accuracy and to make the same part in exactly the same way, every time.

There are different types of CNC machines, each designed for a specific job:

1. CNC milling machines use rotating tools to cut away material from a workpiece that stays still. They can move in three directions (X, Y, and Z), and some can move in even more directions for more complex shapes. Milling machines are used for tasks such as making flat surfaces, cutting slots, and creating detailed shapes.
2. CNC drilling machines are made for creating holes in materials with very precise sizes and depths.
3. CNC turning centres (also called CNC lathes) spin the material while a cutting tool shapes it. This is the best way to make round or cylindrical parts, like shafts or bolts.
4. CNC grinding machines use wheels with rough surfaces to make parts very smooth and to reach exact sizes.

Learning how these different CNC machines work and what they are best used for is important for anyone interested in modern manufacturing. This knowledge helps in choosing the right machine for building things like car parts, aeroplane components, or electronic devices. Tables 5.8 and 5.9 compare these machines, their designs, the ways they move, and the kinds of jobs they can do best.

Table 5.8: A comparison of common CNC machining centre types, configurations, axes, and their additional features.

Type	Configuration	Axes	Additional Features
Vertical Machining Centre	3-Axis	X, Y, Z	-
	4-Axis	X, Y, Z, Rotary Table	Rotary Table
	5-Axis	X, Y, Z, Rotary Table, Rotary Spindle	Rotary Table, Rotary Spindle
Horizontal Machining Centre	3-Axis	X, Y, Z	-
	4-Axis	X, Y, Z, Rotary Table	Rotary Table
	5-Axis	X, Y, Z, Rotary Table, Rotary Spindle	Rotary Table, Rotary Spindle

Table 5.9: Overview of various CNC machine types, outlining their operational methods, distinctive features, common applications, and typical tolerances achieved in precision manufacturing.

Machine Type	Operation	Types	Key Features	Typical Applications	Tolerance
CNC Milling Machines	Rotating multi-point cutting tools remove material from stationary workpiece; moves along multiple axes (3-5+); subtractive process	Vertical Machining Centres (VMCs), Horizontal Machining Centres (HMCs), 5-Axis Milling Machines, Multiaxis Machines	G-code controlled; face milling, end milling, drilling, tapping, shoulder milling; roughing and finishing	Aerospace (engine components, moulds), Automotive (gears, engine blocks), Mould and Die Making, Prototyping	±0.001 inches (±0.025 mm)
CNC Drilling Machines	Rotating drill bit creates holes in stationary workpiece; G-code controls position, speed, depth	Upright CNC Drill Press, Radial Arm CNC Drill Press, Multiple Spindle Drilling Machine, CNC Deep Hole Drilling Machine	G81 (Simple Drilling), G83 (Peck Drilling), G73 (High-Speed Peck Drilling); spot drilling, reaming, counterbor-ing, coun-tersinking, tapping, micro-drilling	Electronics (PCBs), Automotive (engine blocks), Aerospace (aircraft structures), Construction	±0.005 inches (±0.127 mm)
CNC Turning Machines	Rotates workpiece against a stationary cutting tool; produces cylindrical/ symmetrical parts; X, Z, (Y) axes	Horizontal CNC Lathes, Vertical CNC Lathes, CNC Turning Centres, Engine Lathes	CAD/CAM integration, tool turret, spindle control; straight turning, taper turning, facing, threading, grooving, knurling	Automotive (gears, shafts), Aerospace (landing gear), Medical (surgical tools), Electronics (connectors)	±0.00016 inches (±0.004 mm)

CNC Grinding Machines	Rotating abrasive wheel removes small amounts of material, finishing operations	Surface Grinders, Cylindrical Grinders, Internal Grinders, Centreless Grinders, Creep Feed Grinders, Jig Grinders, Gear Grinders	Programming (G-code), setup, grinding, quality control; coolant required; high precision, superior surface finish	Tool and Die Making (cutting tools), Automotive (gears, bearings), Aerospace (turbine blades), Electronics (silicon wafers)	0.0001 inches (0.0025 mm)
CNC Router	High-speed rotating spindle drives a cutting bit along multiple axes to carve, cut, and engrave flat or contoured materials	3-Axis Routers, 4-Axis Routers, 5-Axis Routers	Large work area; designed for wood, plastics, composites; high-speed spindle; vacuum table for material hold-down	Sign making, cabinetry, furniture, architectural models, prototyping	±0.005 inches (±0.127 mm)
CNC Plasma/ Laser Cutter	Uses a high-energy plasma arc or focused laser beam to cut through metal or non-metal materials with precision	Plasma Cutters, CO_2 Laser Cutters, Fibre Laser Cutters	Non-contact process; intricate shapes; low material deformation; fast cutting speeds; suitable for metal, acrylics, plastics	Metal fabrication, automotive parts, signage, decorative panels, electronics enclosures	±0.002 inches (±0.05 mm) (laser), ±0.01 inches (±0.25 mm) (plasma)

CNC MACHINE COMPONENTS AND SYSTEMS (CONTROL SYSTEM, MOTION CONTROL SYSTEM, TOOLING SYSTEM, WORK HOLDING)

A CNC (Computer Numerical Control) machine is made up of several important systems that work together to shape materials like metal or wood with great accuracy. The main part is the control system, which acts like the brain of the machine. It reads instructions called G-code and tells the machine what to do next.

The control system also lets users give commands and see what's happening on a display screen. The motion control system takes these instructions and moves the different parts of the machine, such as the cutting tool, in the right directions. It uses motors and guides to make sure everything moves smoothly and stops in exactly the right place.

The tooling system holds the cutting tools and can switch them automatically, so the machine can do different jobs without needing someone to change the tools by hand.

Another important part is the workholding system. This system keeps the material being worked on tightly in place using special holders like chucks, clamps, or Vises. This prevents the material from moving or shaking, which helps make sure the finished product is the correct size and shape. Together, these systems allow CNC machines to create things like signs, parts for cars, furniture, and many other items, all with high precision and speed.

Table 5.10 shows the main parts of a CNC machine, what they do, what they are made of, and where they are used. It helps explain how CNC machines work by breaking down each part and its job in the machine. This makes it easier to understand how all the parts come together to make the machine work properly for different tasks.

Table 5.10: Key CNC Machine Subsystems, Their Functions, Components, and Applications

System	Function	Key Components	Processes & Features	Applications & Benefits
Control System	Central hub that interprets G-code and co-ordinates machine operations	• Machine Control Unit (MCU) • Data Processing Unit (DPU) • Control Loops Unit (CLU) • Input devices (keyboard, USB, touch-screen) • Display unit • Feedback system (sensors, transducers)	• DPU decodes G-code and calculates tool paths • CLU manag-es position, velocity, backlash, and auxiliary functions • Feedback ensures precision via real-time cor-rection • Supports open-loop and closed-loop control	• Achieves tolerances of ±0.0001 in (±0.0025 mm) • Essential for aerospace, medical, and high-precision manufacturing • Enables au-tomation and consistency

Motion Control System	Executes precise axis movements based on control system signals	• Servo motors • Stepper motors • Drives • Ball screws • Linear guides • Rack and pinion systems • Encoders and resolvers	• Converts electrical signals into physical motion • Closed-loop feedback for accuracy • Supports rapid positioning, straight-line, and circular motion • Enables multi-axis (e.g., 5-axis) machining	• Tolerances up to ±0.0002 in (±0.005 mm) • Used in aerospace, electronics, and precision drilling • Supports complex geometries in a single setup
Tooling System	Performs cutting, shaping, and finishing operations	• Cutting tools (end mills, drills, turning tools, grinding wheels) • Tool holders (collet, hydraulic, shrink-fit) • Automatic Tool Changer (ATC) • Coated tools (e.g., TiN)	• Tool selection based on material and operation • ATC enables rapid tool changes • Coatings extend • tool life • Supports multiple operations in one setup	• Enhances productivity and versatility • Used in automotive, electronics, and general machining • Reduces downtime and manual intervention

Workholding System	Secures the workpiece for stable and accurate machining	• Vises (e.g., Kurt Vise) • Clamps (step, toe, edge) • Chucks (3-jaw, 5C collets) • Fixtures (custom and modular) • Vacuum fixtures • Magnetic chucks	• Selection based on shape, size, and material • Minimises vibration and improves repeatability • Modular systems allow quick change-overs • Advanced fixturing supports 5-axis machining	• Critical for precision and safety • Used in aerospace, woodworking, and high-volume production • Enables complex part machining with minimal setup time

CLASSIFICATION BASED ON MACHINING OPERATION (TURNING TOOLS, MILLING CUTTERS, DRILLING TOOLS)

In CNC machining, cutting tools are grouped according to the job they do. For example, some tools are made for turning (shaping round parts), others for milling (cutting shapes and designs), and some for drilling (making holes). This grouping helps users know which tool to pick for each task. Each tool has a special shape and design that matches its job.

Knowing which tool to use and how it works makes the machining process safer, more accurate, and more efficient. Understanding these groups and their uses is important for anyone learning about machining or working in a machine shop (Table 5.11).

Table 5.11: Overview of Common Machining Operations, Tools, Geometries, and Applications

Operation	Tool Type	Geometry/Design	Applications/Examples
Turning	Single-point cutting tools	Cutting edge, rake face, flank face, tool shank	External turning, internal boring, facing, threading (boring bars, parting tools)
Milling	End mills, Face mills, Slot drills, Ball nose cutters	End mills: Cutting edges on periphery and end face; Face mills: Large diameter, replaceable inserts; Slot drills: Two-flute; Ball nose: Rounded cutting end	Profiling, slotting, surface milling, high-volume removal, 3D contouring, complex surface machining

Milling	Milling cutter coatings	-	Wear resistance, reduced friction
Drilling	Twist drills, Centre drills, Countersinks, Gun drills	Twist: Two helical flutes, chisel edge; Centre: Short, rigid; Countersinks: -; Gun: Single straight flute, coolant passage	General drilling, starting holes, chamfering, and deep-hole drilling
Boring	Boring bars	Single-point internal cutting	Internal surfaces, diameter adjustment
Reaming	Reamers	Multi-flute	Precise hole diameters, smooth finishes
Broaching	Broaching tools	Progressive tooth height increments	Keyways, splines, internal/external profiles
Sawing	Band saw blades, Circular saw blades	Band: Continuous band with teeth; Circular: Disc-shaped, set teeth	Irregular shapes, straight cuts, high-speed cutting
Grinding	Grinding wheels, Abrasive discs/ belts	Grinding wheels: Abrasive grains bonded; Discs/Belts: Flexible abrasives	Surface, cylindrical, centreless grinding, finishing, deburring, polishing
Threading	Taps, dies, and threading inserts	-	Internal/external threading tools

Note

Tool selection depends on material, operation type, and desired finish.

CNC PROGRAMMING (G CODE, PROGRAMMING TECHNIQUES, CNC PROGRAMME STRUCTURE)

Computer Numerical Control (CNC) programming is a way of telling a special machine, called a CNC machine, what to do in order to shape or cut metal and other materials. CNC machines are automatic tools, like advanced drills or lathes, that follow a set of instructions written in a special code. These instructions are given using a language called G-code, which tells the machine how to move, where to cut, and how fast to go. There are also M-codes, which let the machine do extra things, like turn on the coolant or change tools.

To use a CNC machine, it is important to understand the G-code language and know how to write clear, step-by-step instructions. A CNC program is made up of a list of these instructions, which the machine follows one by one to create the final product. Learning about CNC programming helps learners gain skills for modern engineering and manufacturing, where machines do much of the work based on computer instructions.

MACHINE COORDINATE SYSTEM DESIGNATION

The right-hand rule is a simple way to help you remember the directions of movement on a CNC machine. When you point your thumb, index finger, and middle finger at right angles to each other, each finger shows a different direction: the thumb is the X axis, the index finger is the Y axis, and the middle finger is the Z axis. The Z axis always lines up with the main spindle of the machine, and its positive direction points into the spindle.

On a milling machine, the longest direction that the table can move is called the X axis, and it is always at a right angle to the Z axis. The base of your fingers shows where the machine starts counting from, which is called the origin (X0, Y0, Z0). This rule also helps you see how the machine can rotate around each axis, named A, B, and C. Figure 5.13 is a visual guide that helps you understand how to use your hand to find these directions and rotations, making it easier to programme and operate CNC machines correctly.

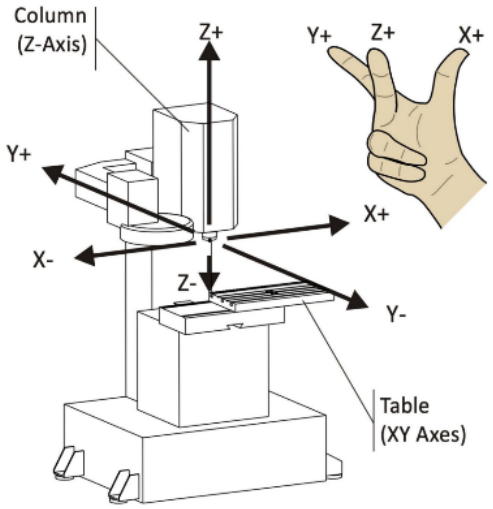


Figure 5.13: Right-Hand Rule for CNC machine axes

The right-hand rule is a simple way to remember the directions a CNC machine can move or rotate. Hold out your hand and point your thumb straight, as this shows the direction of one axis (X, Y, or Z). If you curl your fingers, they show the way the machine can turn around that axis. These turning movements are called A, B, and C, depending on which axis is being rotated. The right-hand rule helps you understand both straight movements and rotations, making it easier to write correct instructions for the machine and operate it safely in a workshop or classroom.

G-CODE

G-code is a special set of instructions used to control machines called CNC (Computer Numerical Control) machines, such as those that cut or shape metal, wood, or plastic. These instructions tell the machine exactly what to do, like where to move, how fast to go, and what path to follow. The name “G-code” stands for “preparatory code”, which means these commands set up the machine for different jobs. Each line in a G-code file is called a block, and it gives the machine a clear order, such as how to move the tool, change the speed, or switch between tools.

G-code was first developed in the 1950s and has become the standard language for CNC machines all over the world. Whether in milling machines, lathes, or routers, most modern machines understand G-code instructions. For example, the command G01 tells the machine to move in a straight line, G00 tells it to move quickly to a new position, and M06 tells it to change tools. By learning how G-code works, students can write programs that control the machine to drill, cut, or shape materials with high accuracy. Understanding G-code helps make sure the work is done correctly, safely, and efficiently in factories and workshops.

G-CODE PROGRAMMING COMMANDS AND FORMAT

A G-code programme is a list of instructions, with each instruction written on a separate line, called a block. Each block uses letters and numbers to tell the machine what to do. For example, in the line N50 G01 X100.0 Y50.0 F150:

1. N50: This is the line or sequence number. It helps keep track of the order of instructions. It is often optional.
2. G01: This is a command code. G01 means the machine should move in a straight line while cutting.
3. X100.0 Y50.0: These show the exact position where the machine should move the tool. X is the position along the X axis, and Y is along the Y axis.
4. F150: This tells the machine how fast the tool should move during cutting (the feed rate).

Each letter in the code means something special:

1. N: The line or sequence number.
2. G: The type of movement or machine operation (like moving quickly, cutting in a straight line, or making a curve).
3. X, Y, Z: The positions along the three axes (directions) the tool should move to.
4. F: The speed at which the tool moves while cutting (feed rate).
5. S: The speed at which the spindle (the part holding the cutting tool) rotates.
6. T: Which tool to use, if the machine can use different tools.
7. M: Other machine functions, such as turning the spindle on or off, turning the coolant on or off, or stopping the programme.

By following these coded instructions, the CNC machine knows exactly how to move, how fast to go, and what actions to perform to shape or cut a material correctly.

MODAL VS. NON-MODAL COMMANDS

Some G-codes stay active until a different code is given. These are called modal codes. For example, if G01 is used to tell the machine to move in a straight line, the machine will keep moving in straight lines every time it gets new instructions, until it receives another code, like G00, which tells it to move quickly without cutting. Other codes are non-modal. Non-modal codes only work for the instruction where they appear and do not affect later instructions.

UNITS AND COORDINATE SYSTEM

G-code instructions can specify units and coordinate modes:

1. G20/G21 select inches or millimetres, respectively, as units.
2. G90/G91 set absolute or incremental positioning modes:
    a. Absolute positioning (G90) means coordinates are interpreted from a fixed origin (usually the part zero or workpiece datum).
    b. Incremental positioning (G91) means each coordinate is relative to the current position (the machine moves relative to where it last was).

COMMON G-CODES

While the exact list of G-codes can vary slightly by machine or controller, some common milling G-codes include:

1. G00: Rapid traverse (fast, non-cutting movement to position the tool).
2. G01: Linear interpolation (straight cutting move at set feed rate).
3. G02: Circular interpolation clockwise (arc move).
4. G03: Circular interpolation counterclockwise.
5. G17, G18, G19: Select the plane for arcs (XY plane, XZ plane, YZ plane, respectively).
6. G40, G41, G42: Cutter radius compensation (off, left, right).
7. G43/G44: Tool length offset apply (+ or -).
8. G54 (and G55-G59): Work coordinate system selection (offsets for part zero positions).
9. G80: Cancel canned cycle.
10. G81, G82... G89: Canned drilling cycles (common drilling, peck drilling, boring cycles, etc.).
11. G92: Set a new work coordinate origin or preset position.

For turning (lathe) operations, common G-codes might include G00, G01, G02, G03 as well (for moves), and other lathe-specific cycles (like G71 for roughing cycle, G70 finishing, etc.), though this explanation focuses on general concepts applicable to both milling and turning.

Common M-Codes

1. M00: Program stop (pause until operator intervention, often).
2. M01: Optional stop (stops if the optional stop is enabled on the machine).
3. M03: Spindle on clockwise (for milling; on lathes, M03 might mean spindle forward).
4. M04: Spindle on counter clockwise (or spindle reverse).
5. M05: Spindle stop.

6. M06: Tool change command (tells the machine to swap to a new tool number).
7. M08: Coolant on.
8. M09: Coolant off.
9. M30: Program end and reset (often rewinds to program top).

PROGRAMMING TECHNIQUES

G-code programming is a way of giving instructions to machines so they can make parts exactly as designed.

There are different methods used to create these instructions:

1. **Manual Programming**

This means writing each line of G-code by hand. It gives full control over every step, but takes more time and requires careful attention, especially for parts that are unusual or complicated.

2. **CAM Software**

CAM (Computer-Aided Manufacturing) software makes things easier by taking a design made on a computer (CAD model) and automatically turning it into G-code. This saves time and reduces mistakes compared to writing everything by hand.

3. **Parametric Programming**

This approach uses variables and simple computer logic (like "if" statements) to write flexible programs. These programmes can be reused and easily changed if the size or shape of the part needs to be different.

Understanding these techniques helps people who use CNC machines to make sure parts are made accurately and efficiently. It is important not just to learn the G-code commands, but also to use good programming methods so the machine works safely and correctly, producing high-quality parts every time.

KEY PROGRAMMING TECHNIQUES

1. **Absolute vs. Incremental Programming**

As noted with G90/G91, a programmer must decide whether to use absolute coordinates (all positions from a fixed origin) or incremental moves (each position relative to last). In practice, absolute mode (G90) is common for clarity – every coordinate refers to a known datum on the part. Incremental (G91) can be useful inside repeated structures or subroutines where relative moves are easier to repeat. Many programmers stick to absolute mode for most programming to avoid confusion, switching to incremental only when needed for particular tasks (like certain canned cycles or loops).

2. **Planning Toolpaths and Safety**

Before writing code, a programmer plans the machining steps and toolpath:

a. Approach and Retract Moves: Always include safe approach moves (rapid positioning to a safe start point above the part) and safe retract moves. For

instance, using G00 (rapid) to position the tool clear of the work before and after cutting prevents collisions with the workpiece or fixtures.

b. Avoiding Singularities: Plan paths to avoid sudden sharp turns or over-travel. Use appropriate radii for corners if needed.

c. Order of Operations: Typically, perform roughing cuts first, then finishing cuts for accuracy. Also, if multiple tools are involved, group operations by tool to minimise tool changes.

3. **Cutter Radius Compensation and Tool Offsets**

CNC programming often uses cutter compensation (G41/G42) for milling so that the programmer can specify the path of a part's geometry while the machine offsets the path to account for the cutter's radius. For example, if milling a contour, using G41 (left compensation) or G42 (right compensation) with a known cutter diameter allows the same program to be used even if the tool size changes slightly, by adjusting an offset in the controller.

a. G41/G42 are invoked typically just before a contour, and G40 cancels the compensation after finishing the contour.

b. Proper lead-in and lead-out moves (usually linear moves) are needed when using cutter compensation so the tool can offset properly without gouging the part.

Similarly, tool length compensation (G43/G44) is used on mills for the Z-axis to account for different tool lengths. The program references a standard reference point (like tool tip at some plane), and the machine adjusts based on stored length offset for each tool to achieve correct depth. Usually G43 with an H offset (H1, H2 matching the tool number) is used to apply a tool's length offset.

4. **Canned Cycles and Subroutines**

To simplify programming common operations, CNC controls offer canned cycles – shorthand commands for repetitive tasks like drilling holes, tapping, or boring. For example:

a. G81: Standard drilling cycle (drill down to a certain Z depth at feed rate, then retract).

b. G83: Peck drilling cycle (drill with periodic retractions to break chips).

c. G84: Tapping cycle (feeds in and reverses out for threads). Using canned cycles reduces the number of lines and chances for error, as the machine handles the motion pattern internally. Teachers can illustrate how a single G81 line can replace several lines of explicit motion code.

5. **Subroutines and Loops**

In CNC programming, it is possible to repeat a set of instructions by using subprograms or loops. For example, if there is a task, like cutting a shape in several places, the instructions for that task can be written once. Then, the machine can be told to repeat those instructions wherever needed. This is done using special commands such as M98 to call a subprogram, or G91 with a loop count on some machines. Using subprograms

and loops helps to make the CNC programme shorter and easier to change if needed. This is a useful skill for writing efficient and organised programmes.

6. **Using CAM vs. Manual Coding**

It is worth mentioning that in industry, CAM (Computer-Aided Manufacturing) software often generates G-code automatically from CAD models. However, understanding manual G-code is fundamental:

a. It helps in verifying and troubleshooting CAM output.

b. It's essential for making quick edits or writing simple programs without full CAM software. Educators can stress that while students might use CAM in projects, knowing the G-code language provides insight into what the machine is actually doing, and is important for debugging machining issues.

7. **Comments and Readability**

Good programming practice includes commenting and formatting:

a. Comments: Anything in parentheses () in a G-code program is a comment for the human reader. Programmers use comments to label sections, describe operations, or give special instructions. Example: (Milling outer profile) as a comment header for that section of code.

b. Readable Formatting: Although machines don't care about spacing beyond the basic word structure, programmers often write one command per line in a consistent order. A common convention is to write axis motions in X, Y, Z order, followed by feedrate (F), and have one motion (G00 or G01, etc.) per line. Consistency in ordering words in a block (e.g., always N, then G, then X, Y, Z, then F, S, T, M) makes it easier for others to read and understand the code.

8. **Verification and Simulation**

While not part of coding itself, a critical step in CNC programming is verification:

a. Programmers often run through the code in a simulator or the machine's dry-run mode to ensure there are no crashes or mistakes.

b. Visualising the toolpath (many CNC machine interfaces graph the path) helps catch mistakes in coordinate values or sequence.

9. **Error Checking and Debugging**

CNC controls are strict about formatting. Missing a decimal point or a letter can cause errors or misinterpretation. For example, writing G01 X100 Y100 without a feed rate could cause an alarm if a feed rate wasn't previously set. Good practice is to define all necessary parameters clearly at the start (units, feed rates, spindle speeds) and check the program for any undefined moves.

CNC PROGRAM STRUCTURE

Every CNC program follows a logical structure from start to finish. A well-structured program ensures the machine operates safely and produces the desired result. Adhering

to a standard program structure is important both for safety and for other machinists or students to read the program easily.

A typical CNC program (for one setup and part) can be broken into the following sections:

1. **Program Start and Safety Block**
    a. The beginning of a program may have a start sentinel (like % in some controls) and a program number (e.g., O1234).
    b. A safety block (or startup block) is then used to set default modes and ensure no old settings carry over. This usually includes:
        i. Unit selection (G20 for inch or G21 for mm).
        ii. Modal cancellations (cancel any tool offsets, cutter comp, or canned cycles with G40, G49, G80).
        iii. Plane selection (often G17 for XY plane on mills).
        iv. Default to absolute mode (G90) unless incremental is specifically needed.
        v. Feedrate or spindle defaults if required.
    c. Example safety line: G90 G21 G17 G40 G49 G80 – which sets absolute mode, metric units, XY-plane, and cancels tool radius comp, tool length comp, and canned cycles.
2. **Tool Selection and Setup**
    a. Issue a tool change command (e.g., T1 M06 for Tool #1). The machine will prepare Tool 1.
    b. Set spindle speed and turn on spindle (e.g., S1500 M03 to rotate at 1500 RPM clockwise).
    c. Activate coolant if needed (M08).
    d. Move to a safe position to start machining, often using a combination of G54 (work offset) and a rapid move. For example: G54 G00 X... Y... to position laterally, and G43 Z... H1 to move the tool to a safe height while applying the tool length offset (H1 corresponds to Tool 1's length offset).
3. **Machining Operations**
    a. This section contains the main sequence of machining commands. Depending on complexity, it might be divided into subsections for each feature or each tool.
    b. For each operation (or each tool if multiple tools are used), you would typically:
        i. Approach: Rapid move close to the cut start point.
        ii. Possibly use a canned cycle (for drilling) or explicit moves (for milling contours, pockets, etc.).
        iii. Execute the necessary G-code moves to perform the cutting.

iv. Retract: Rapid away from the work at the end of the operation.

If multiple tools are used, after finishing with one tool, turn off coolant (M09), stop spindle (M05), then move back to a safe location (often home or a tool change position), and command the next tool change (T2 M06, etc.), repeating the cycle for the next tool's operations.

4. **Program Ending**
   a. After all operations are done, ensure the spindle is off (M05) and coolant is off (M09) if not already.
   b. Some programs move the tool away to a safe location or machine home. A common practice is using G28 (return to reference home) with G91 (temporary incremental) to send axes home safely, e.g., G91 G28 Z0; G91 G28 X0 Y0; G90 which returns Z axis to machine zero, then X and Y, and finally switches back to absolute mode.
   c. End the program with an end-of-program code. For many machines, M30 signifies program end and reset (rewind to start). Older controllers or certain contexts might use M02 (program end without rewind), but M30 is common.
   d. End-of-file is often indicated by another % or just the file end.
5. **Program Comments and Documentation**
   a. Optionally, many programs include an initial comment block describing the program's purpose, the part name, the programmer, the date, etc. For example:

      (PART: Bracket_12345)

      (MATL: Aluminium 6061)

      (PROG: Akosua Bawa, 01-Jan-2025)
   b. Throughout the program, comments can mark sections or give hints, as discussed in *Programming Techniques*.

MULTIPLE TOOL PROGRAMS

In more complex programs that use multiple tools, the structure repeats the cycle of tool change -> machine with that tool -> end operations for that tool as needed. Each tool usage might be considered a sub-section of the program. For instance:

1. Program Start & Safety (with first tool setup).
2. Operations with Tool 1.
3. Prepare for Tool 2 (stop spindle, coolant off, tool change to Tool 2, spindle on, etc.).
4. Operations with Tool 2.
5. ... and so on for all tools.
6. Final program end.

Each tool section itself often follows a structure:

1. Tool Change and Spindle/Coolant On (begin tool section).
2. Approach moves (get into position).
3. Cutting moves (do the work).
4. Retraction moves (leave the part safely).
5. (Maybe a brief dwell or coolant off if needed between certain operations).
6. Then move to prepare for next tool or end.

STRUCTURED EXAMPLE EXPLANATION

To illustrate the structure, consider a scenario where a CNC milling program first mills a profile with an endmill (Tool 1) and then drills a hole with a drill (Tool 2). The structured flow would be:

1. **Start/Safety:** Set modes (absolute, units, cancel any old modes).
2. **Tool 1 (End Mill) Operations**
    a. Tool change to T1, spindle on, coolant on.
    b. Rapid above first cut position.
    c. Perform milling (G-code moves for contour).
    d. Retract and coolant off, spindle off.
3. **Tool 2 (Drill) Operations**
    a. Tool change to T2, spindle on, coolant on.
    b. Rapid above hole position.
    c. Drill hole using a canned cycle (e.g., G81).
    d. Retract, cancel canned cycle (G80), coolant off, spindle off.
4. **End:** Return to home, program end (M30).

This structure helps students and educators see the logical sequence; it mirrors how one might explain the process verbally: first set everything up, then do this cut, then change tool, do that cut, finally wrap up safely.

SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS IN STRUCTURE

Emphasise that the structured approach is not only for organisation but also for safety:

1. Always ensure the machine is in a known state at the start (so no unexpected motion or mode).
2. Always end in a safe state so the next program or manual move starts safely (for instance, ensuring the tool is retracted and spindle off at the end prevents accidents).
3. The strict ordering of motions in each block (only one movement command per line, etc.) and sequence of operations is intended to minimise mistakes that could cause tool crashes.

EXAMPLE OF A SIMPLE CNC PROGRAM

```
%
O1001 (Sample Program)
G90 G21 G17 G40 G49 G80 (Safety startup: absolute, metric, XY-plane, cancel offsets)
G54 (Select work coordinate system 1)
T1 M06 (Tool change to Tool #1)
S1500 M03 (Spindle on clockwise at 1500 RPM)
G00 X50.0 Y50.0 (Rapid move to XY start position)
G43 Z5.0 H1 (Apply tool length offset #1, move Z to 5.0 above part)
M08 (Coolant on)
G01 Z0.0 F100 (Feed to Z0 at 100 mm/min – start cutting)
X100.0 Y50.0 F200 (Cut in X direction to X100 at 200 mm/min)
Y100.0 (Cut in Y direction to Y100)
X50.0 (Cut back to X50, forming a square path)
Y50.0 (Cut back to start Y, closing the square)
G00 Z100.0 (Rapid retract to safe Z height)
M09 (Coolant off)
M05 (Spindle stop)
G28 X0 Y0 Z0 (Return to machine home position)
M30 (End program)
%
```

In this example, the special codes called G-codes (such as G90, G00, G01) tell the CNC machine how it should move—like whether it should move quickly or slowly, and in which direction. The numbers after these codes show the exact places the machine should go to. M-codes are used to control things on the machine, such as turning the spindle or coolant on and off. The percentage signs (%) at the start and end, and the program number (like O1001), help the machine know where the programme begins and ends. Anything written inside brackets () is just a note for people reading the code and is not followed by the machine.

Activity 5.9 CNC Fundamentals Recap

Aim: To consolidate foundational knowledge of basic manufacturing tools, safety, and measurement methods from Years 1 and 2, relating them to CNC machining.

Mode of Work: Small groups (2–4 learners)

Materials/Resources

- Year 1 and 2 Learner Manuals and class notes
- Engineering workshop textbook, online materials, notebook, pen

Instructions

1. Individually review your Year 1 and 2 Learner Manuals and notes on basic workshop tools, safety conventions, and measurement instruments from previous years.
2. In groups, discuss how these fundamentals are applied or adapted when working with CNC machines compared to manual tools.
3. As a group, create a table listing key similarities and differences between manual and CNC tool use and safety.
4. Exchange tables with another group for peer review and feedback.

Portfolio Note

Add your table and peer feedback to your learning portfolio.

Activity 5.10 CNC Machine Video Observation

Aim: To visually compare the operation of CNC and manual machines, focusing on programming, accuracy, and speed.

Mode of Work: Independent or pairs

Materials/Resources

- Video clips of CNC and manual lathe/ milling machines (e.g., YouTube, manufacturer websites)
- Notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Watch a video demonstration of a CNC milling machine, followed by a manual milling machine in action. Begin by viewing the video links provided here before continuing online to explore additional videos.

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=d2gAjdCVxzc	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=cj0-wSGGe6g&t=1s
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=j7CuzmPzr0M	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=5XihF05K4yM
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=FwmXcWQAh5s	https://www.youtube.com/shorts/RINcgjmhhvs

2. Take notes on differences in how each machine is operated, focusing on programming, precision, and efficiency.
3. Write a 150-word response addressing: How does the CNC machine's operation as a machine tool differ from the manual machine? Which would be better for producing a precise wooden mould, and why?
4. Share your response with a partner and provide constructive feedback to each other.

Portfolio Note

Include your written response and feedback in your portfolio.

Activity 5.11 G-Code Programming Practice

Aim: To develop hands-on skills in writing and understanding CNC G-code for basic machining operations.

Mode of Work: Small groups (2–4 learners)

Materials/Resources

- CNC programming worksheet
- G-code quick reference sheet, notebook and pen
- Access to a computer or CNC simulator (if available) or CNC Machines (if available)

Instructions

1. In your group, review the model G-code program for milling a 50 mm × 30 mm pocket (from the lesson).
2. Work together to write a CNC program to machine a 50 mm × 50 mm square starting at X30 Y30, to a depth of Z = −3 mm, using Tool #3 (12 mm end mill), spindle speed 2000 RPM, and feed rate 150 mm/min.
3. Annotate each line of your program, explaining the function and purpose of each G-code and M-code used.
4. If available, simulate your program using CNC software to verify correctness and observe the toolpath.
5. Exchange your annotated program with another group/ present in class for review and suggestions.

Portfolio Note

Add the final, annotated program and peer feedback to your portfolio.

OPERATION AND APPLICATION OF CNC MACHINE

CNC (Computer Numerically Controlled) machines are special machines used in factories to make parts automatically. Instead of using hand tools, these machines work by following set instructions from a computer. They can do jobs like cutting, drilling, turning, and milling with high accuracy. It is important to learn about how CNC machines work and where they are used, especially for students interested in manufacturing or engineering.

Because CNC machines are controlled by computer programmes, they can repeat the same task many times, which helps to save time, reduce mistakes, and make the workplace safer. To use CNC machines well, it is necessary to understand both how to write the computer instructions and how to prepare and operate the machine itself.

CNC MACHINE OPERATION AND SETUP (SETUP PROCEDURES, OPERATION PROCEDURES, SAFETY CONSIDERATION)

CNC (Computer Numerical Control) machines work best when you follow simple steps for setting them up and using them. To get good results, make sure you prepare the machine and your work carefully, follow clear instructions when operating the machine, and always pay attention to safety rules. This helps you make precise parts, keeps the machine in good condition, and protects people from accidents.

In this section, you will learn the basic steps you need to take: getting the machine and tools ready, setting up your workpiece, running the machine to do the cutting, and following important safety measures during the whole process.

SETUP PROCEDURES FOR CNC MACHINES

Getting the CNC Machine Ready:

1. First, switch on the machine. Let it find its home position so all its moving parts know where to start. This step helps the machine understand its working area.
2. Setting Up the Cutting Tools: Choose the right cutting tools for the job. Clean them well, then put them into the correct holders. Use a tool measuring device or set the tool length by hand so the machine knows how long each tool is. This makes sure your cuts are accurate.
3. Securing the Workpiece: Place the material you want to cut into the machine. Use strong clamps, chucks, or vices to hold it tightly. Make sure it is flat and does not move. Remove any tools you used to set it up before starting the machine.
4. Setting the Zero Point (Work Origin): Tell the machine where to start by setting the workpiece origin (called program zero). Use the machine's controls or an automatic probe to do this. Enter this information in the machine's computer so it knows where to begin.
5. Loading the CNC Program: Put the instructions (G-code) into the machine. Check the programme for mistakes. Run a dry test without cutting to see that the tool moves in the right path and there are no crashes.
6. Choosing Cutting Settings: Check that the speed, feed rate, cutting depth, and coolant are correct for the material and tools. You can set these in the programme or by hand.
7. Final Checks Before Starting: Make sure all tools are loaded and set. Confirm the workpiece is secure, the correct programme is ready, and all safety covers are in place. Remove any loose items from the machine area.
8. Starting and Running the Machine: Turn on the machine and let it warm up so the oil spreads and the spindle reaches a steady temperature. Follow the maker's instructions for this.
9. Beginning the Cutting Process: Close the safety doors. Keep your hand near the emergency stop button. Press the start button, but use a slow feed rate at first to watch for any problems.
10. Watching the Process: Pay close attention to the machine. Listen for odd sounds or vibrations. Check that chips are clearing and coolant is running.
11. Pausing and Adjusting: If needed, press the pause button to stop the machine. You can also adjust speeds while the machine is working to keep everything safe and working well.
12. Changing Tools: Watch the machine change tools automatically or do it by hand if needed. Make sure each tool is in place and follow the right steps.

13. Quality Checks While Machining: Stop the machine to measure your work and make sure it matches the required size. If needed, adjust the machine settings.
14. Finishing Up: Wait until the machine has fully stopped before opening the cover. Turn off the spindle and coolant. Carefully take out your finished part—use gloves if needed.
15. Cleaning Up: Take out your part, remove any chips, and clean the machine and tools. Keeping everything tidy prevents problems later and is good practice.
16. Turning Off the Machine: Move the machine's moving parts to their resting positions, turn off extra equipment, and shut down the machine as instructed. Write down any notes about how the machine was used or if any maintenance is needed, especially in a school setting.

SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS IN CNC MACHINE OPERATION

1. Personal Protective Equipment (PPE): You must always wear safety glasses or a face shield to protect your eyes. If the machine is noisy, use hearing protection. Wear gloves and aprons when setting up or cleaning the machine—but never wear gloves near moving parts because they can get caught.
2. Attire and Personal Safety: Wear clothes that fit closely to your body. Remove all jewellery and tie back long hair so it does not get caught in the machine. It is best to wear shoes with steel toes for protection. Never wear gloves near parts that spin, like spindles or chucks, when the machine is running.
3. Machine Guards and Enclosures: Machine guards and safety doors are there to protect you. Always keep them in place and closed while working. Do not remove or disable any safety devices or interlocks.
4. Pre-Operational Safety Checks: Before starting work, check the machine and surrounding area for anything dangerous. Make sure emergency stop buttons are easy to reach, and the area is free from tools, spills, or anything that could cause an accident.
5. Safe Operation Practices: Stay alert and avoid the moving parts of the machine. Never reach into the machine when it is running. Use the emergency stop button if something unexpected happens.
6. Handling of Materials and Tools: Handle all tools carefully and only change or adjust them when the spindle is stopped. If you have to lift something heavy, use safe lifting methods to avoid injury.
7. Emergency Preparedness: Know where the emergency stop buttons and the main power switch are located. Understand what to do in case of a fire and know basic first aid procedures.
8. Training and Supervision: Only people who have been properly trained or supervised should use CNC machines. Always pay close attention and stay focused when operating the machine.

9. Maintenance for Safety: Keep the machine clean and well-maintained to make sure it works correctly and safely. Regularly remove chips and debris and always check the safety systems and interlocks.

APPLICATIONS OF CNC MACHINES (MILLING, TURNING, MULTI-AXIS MACHINING, OPERATION, SPECIALTY MACHINING PROCESS).

CNC machines are special tools used in factories to make many different parts and products. These machines are controlled by computers, which means they can work with great accuracy and repeat the same job many times without mistakes.

There are several main ways CNC machines work:

1. **Milling**

In this process, a spinning tool removes material from a piece of metal or plastic that stays still. This is useful for making slots, holes, and complex shapes.

2. **Turning**

Here, the material spins while a cutting tool shapes it. This method is common for making round objects such as rods or tubes.

3. **Multi-axis machining**

Some CNC machines can move in more directions at the same time, not just up, down, left, and right. This means they can make very detailed and complicated parts all at once. These machines are important in industries like making aeroplanes and cars.

4. **Special processes**

CNC machines can also use different methods to cut or shape materials. For example, they can use electricity to cut hard metals (called electrical discharge machining), lasers for precise cutting, or water mixed with sand to cut without making the material hot.

Because CNC machines can do so many different jobs, they are very important in modern manufacturing. ***Table 5.12*** shows examples of how CNC machines are used for different processes.

Table 5.12: Applications of CNC machines by process type

Process Type	Description	Key Applications	Typical Industries
CNC milling	Rotating multi-point cutter removes material from a fixed workpiece to create slots, pockets, contours, and 3D shapes.	Face milling, profiling, pocketing, gear cutting, mould machining	Aerospace, automotive, mould & die, electronics

CNC turning	Single-point cutting tool removes material from a rotating cylindrical workpiece, producing axisymmetric parts.	Shafts, bushings, threaded parts, pulleys, nozzles	Automotive, plumbing, hydraulic systems, aerospace
Multi-axis machining	Uses 4 or more axes for simultaneous cutting at multiple orientations, enabling complex geometry production in one setup.	Turbine blades, impellers, orthopaedic implants, complex moulds	Aerospace, medical devices, mould & die
CNC machine Operation	Execution of programmed toolpaths with automated tool changes, part handling, and cycle control. Includes setup, execution, and monitoring.	Repetitive production of precise components, optimised machining cycles, and automated tool management	All manufacturing sectors
Speciality machining	Non-traditional CNC processes such as EDM, waterjet, laser, plasma, and CNC grinding are used for hard-to-machine or delicate parts.	Die cutting, thin sheet profiling, stone inlay, superfinishing, precision cavities	Toolmaking, aerospace, electronics, fabrication

Activity 5.12 Manufacturing Processes Recap

Aim: To refresh and consolidate your understanding of key manufacturing processes studied in Years 1 and 2, providing a solid foundation for learning about CNC machining.

Mode of Work: Work in small groups (2–4 learners).

Resources: Year 1 and Year 2 class notes, Engineering processes textbook, internet access, notebook and pen

Instructions

1. As a group, review your previous notes and resources on manufacturing processes, including casting, forging, extrusion, machining, welding, and additive manufacturing.
2. Each group member chooses one process to research further, using textbooks or reputable online sources.
3. Individually, write a one-sentence summary that explains the key principle or use of your selected process.
4. Share your summaries within your group and discuss any additional insights.

5. Work together to create a comparison table that outlines the main features and typical uses of each manufacturing process reviewed.
6. Exchange your group's comparison table with another group. Review their table, provide constructive feedback, and note any additions or corrections during a group discussion.

Portfolio Note

Include your completed comparison table and peer feedback in your learning portfolio as evidence of your collaborative work and understanding.

Activity 5.13 CNC Application Research

Aim: To investigate practical applications of CNC machines across different industries, linking these examples to improvements in productivity and precision.

Mode of Work: Work in small groups (2–4 learners).

Materials/Resources: Internet access or library resources, an engineering textbook, a notebook and a pen

Instructions

1. Each group member selects one industry (for example, aerospace, automotive, or medical devices).
2. Research a specific CNC application relevant to your chosen industry, such as turbine blade production or orthopaedic implant machining.
3. Identify and note how CNC technology enhances productivity and precision in this context. Use examples or statistics to support your findings where possible.
4. Share your research with your group and discuss the applications and their benefits.
5. Together, compile your findings into a clear summary table that lists each application alongside its key benefits.
6. Present your group's summary table to another group/ class. Engage in discussion to gather further insights and consider any additional points raised by your peers.

Portfolio Note

Add your group's completed summary table and any peer comments or discussion notes to your portfolio as evidence of your research and collaborative learning.

EXTENDED READING

- Groover, M. P. (2021). Fundamentals of modern manufacturing: Materials, processes, and systems (7th ed., International adaptation). John Wiley & Sons.
- Oberg, E., Jones, F. D., Horton, H. L., Ryffel, H. H., & McCauley, C. J. (Eds.). (2020). Machinery's handbook (31st ed.). Industrial Press.
- El-Hofy, H. (2018). Fundamentals of machining processes: Conventional and nonconventional processes (3rd ed.). CRC Press.
- Walker, J. R., & Dixon, B. (2021). Machining Fundamentals (11th ed.). Goodheart-Willcox.
- Kalpakjian, S., & Schmid, S. (2014). Manufacturing Engineering and Technology (7th ed.). Pearson.

REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. Explain the primary differences between conventional and nonconventional machining processes. Provide examples of each.
2. Compare and contrast at least two different machining operations in terms of their applications, advantages, and limitations.
3. Explain how advancements in cutting tool technology have influenced modern machining practices. Support your answer with at least two examples.
4. Discuss how CNC machines have transformed modern manufacturing. Include at least three specific applications and explain how CNC technology improves productivity and precision.
5. A machinist is using a CNC machine to engrave a logo on a stainless-steel plate. Identify the most suitable CNC process for this task and justify your choice based on the material and required detail. Indicate the most appropriate cutting tool for the engraving operation.



SECTION

6

PRINCIPLES OF MATERIAL REMOVAL PROCESSES AND APPLICATIONS OF THE CENTRE-LATHE MACHINE



Manufacturing tools, equipment and processes

Manufacturing processes

INTRODUCTION

This section provides a comprehensive overview of material removal processes, exploring their fundamental principles and practical applications in manufacturing. Learners will examine conventional machining methods such as turning, drilling, and milling, as well as abrasive and nontraditional techniques. The section covers the operation and setup of the centre-lathe machine, including its main components, work-holding devices, and safety procedures. Key machining operations (turning, drilling, and milling) are explained with emphasis on their sequence, tool selection, and parameter settings. The importance of grinding as a finishing operation is also detailed, highlighting its role in achieving superior surface finish and dimensional accuracy. Finally, the section guides learners through the practical steps of performing a material removal process using a lathe, reinforcing skills in measurement, setup, and safe operation.

KEY IDEAS

- There are several ways to shape materials by removing parts you do not need. These include conventional machining, abrasive methods, and non-traditional techniques. The main goal is to remove extra material, so the final piece has the right shape and a good surface.
- Some common machining processes are turning, drilling, and milling. Each one is used for different tasks, such as making round objects, creating holes, or making flat surfaces. These processes help create parts with the shapes and features needed for different uses.
- To get accurate results, it is important to control things like how fast the cutting tool moves (cutting speed), how much it moves with each pass (feed rate), and how deep it cuts (depth of cut). Proper measuring and using cutting fluids also help make sure the work is done well.
- Machines such as centre lathes, CNC lathes, and other special machines hold the cutting tools and workpieces firmly in place. These machines give the power and guidance needed for material removal.
- Special devices like chucks, collets, centres, and faceplates are used to hold the material tightly. This keeps the workpiece safe and prevents mistakes while machining.

- Following safety rules and setting up the machines correctly are very important. Choosing the right tool, preparing the machine properly, and using safety equipment help make sure the work is done safely and correctly.

FUNDAMENTALS OF MATERIAL REMOVAL PROCESSES

Material removal processes are ways used to shape materials by taking away extra parts that are not needed. Imagine you have a block of metal or plastic, and you want it to become a certain shape or size. These processes help you cut or scrape away the extra material until you get the shape you want. There are different types of material removal processes:

1. **Conventional machining**

This uses sharp cutting tools to cut the material. The most common examples are turning (spinning the material and cutting it), drilling (making holes with a rotating drill), and milling (removing layers from a surface with a moving tool). Other similar methods include shaping, planning, broaching, and sawing.

2. **Abrasive processes**

These use tiny hard particles to rub away material. Grinding is a common example, and there are other methods like honing, lapping, and superfinishing, which make the surface even smoother.

3. **Non-traditional processes**

These use different types of energy, like electricity, heat, or chemicals, to remove material instead of sharp tools or abrasives. Examples include using electrical or chemical reactions to shape the material.

When you use these methods, the main goal is to remove extra bits from the starting material, so you end up with the correct shape and size. For instance, in machining, a tool cuts the material, and the piece that is cut off is called a chip. This exposes a new surface on the workpiece. Machining is especially important for shaping metals and is widely used because it helps make parts that fit exactly as needed. The classification of material removal processes is illustrated in Figure 6.1. Figure 6.2 shows a cross-sectional view of the machining process, emphasising the tool geometry and the material removal. Figure 6.2(b) depicts a tool with a negative rake angle for comparison with the positive rake angle presented in Figure 6.2(a). The clearance angle, also known as the relief angle, is indicated in the illustrations.

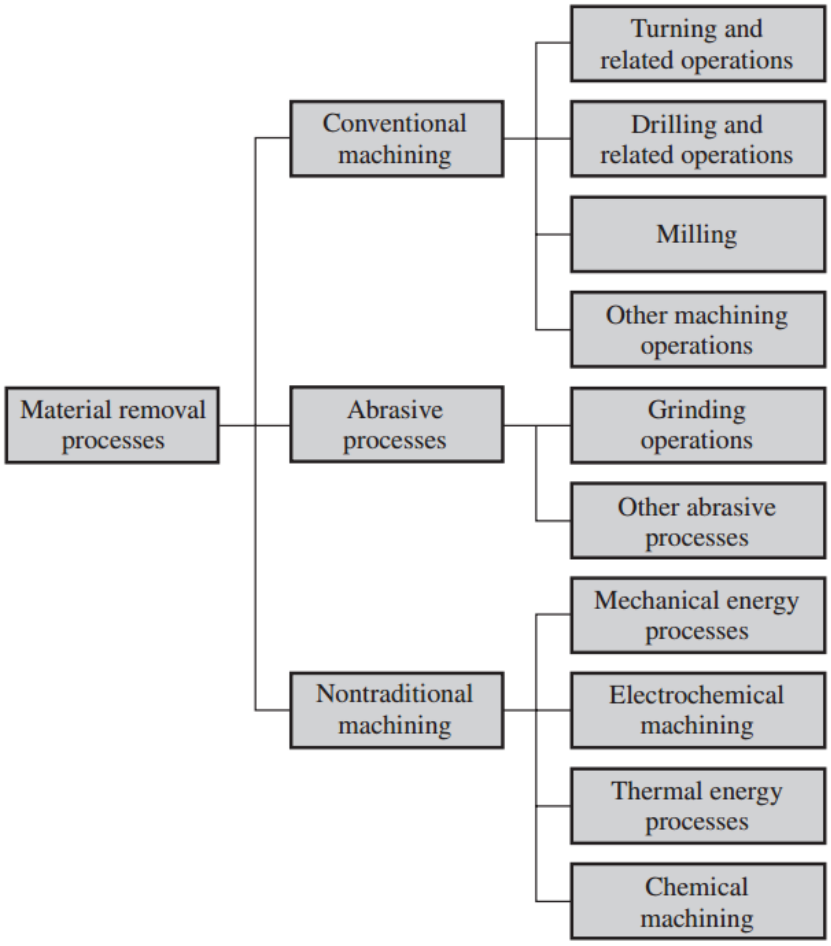


Figure 6.1: Classification of material removal processes.

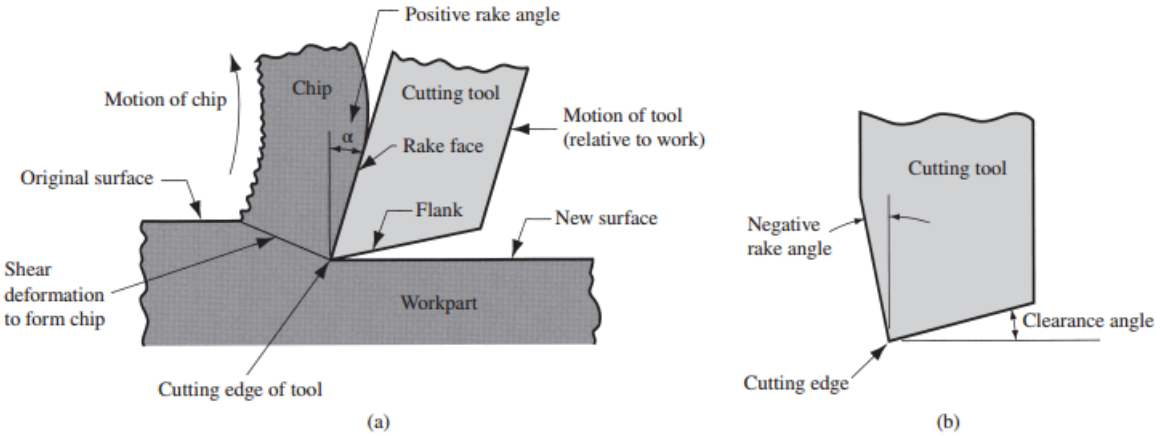


Figure 6.2: (a) Cross-sectional illustration of the machining process, highlighting tool geometry and material removal; (b) depiction of a tool with a negative rake angle, shown for comparison with the positive rake angle in (a). The clearance angle, also referred to as the relief angle, is indicated.

Machining is a way to shape different materials, especially solid metals, plastics, and even some ceramics, by removing small pieces called chips. It allows for the creation of many shapes and features, from simple flat surfaces, holes, and cylinders to more complex forms like screw threads and gear teeth, depending on the tool and its movement. When several machining steps are done in sequence, parts of almost any shape can be made.

One big advantage is its accuracy, as measurements can be made very close to the desired size, sometimes within ±0.025 millimetres, which is better than most other manufacturing methods. Machined parts can also be very smooth, with some surfaces so fine that they are almost without roughness, and special abrasive processes can make them even smoother. However, machining does have disadvantages. It creates waste chips, which are usually recycled, but they still represent wasted material. It also takes more time compared to other methods like casting (pouring metal into a mould) or forging (hammering metal into shape), so machining is typically used after these basic processes to give the final, precise shape and surface finish to the part.

OVERVIEW OF MACHINING TECHNOLOGY

Machining is a group of methods that shape materials by cutting away small pieces. All these methods use a tool that removes a tiny chip from the main material. To do this, the tool and the material must move against each other. There are usually two types of movement: one is the main movement called cutting speed, and the other is a slower movement called feed. The shape of the cutting tool, how deep it goes into the material, and cutting tool path (geometry of its movement or the way it moves to cut the workpiece) decide the final shape of the item.

There are several types of machining processes, but the three most common ones are turning, drilling, and milling.

1. Turning: In this method, the material spins while a sharp tool removes bits from it, creating a round or tube-like shape.
2. Drilling: This process uses a spinning tool, called a drill bit, to make holes in the material by pushing it into the surface.
3. Milling: Here, a tool with many cutting edges rotates and moves across the material to make flat or straight surfaces. There are two main types of milling: peripheral milling (cuts along the edges) and face milling (cuts across the surface).

Other common machining methods include shaping, planning, broaching, and sawing. In addition, there are abrasive processes like grinding, which use hard particles to make the surface of the material smoother. These processes are often used after the main machining steps to give the finished part a very fine surface.

TYPES OF MACHINING OPERATIONS

Machining is a method used to shape solid materials by removing small pieces from them, and it includes several different operations to create specific shapes and surfaces. The three most common types are turning, drilling, and milling. Turning involves spinning the material while a sharp tool cuts away at it to create round or tube-like shapes, while drilling uses a spinning tool called a drill bit to make holes by pushing into the material, and milling uses a tool with many cutting edges that moves across the material to make flat or straight surfaces; in milling, there are two main types: peripheral milling, which cuts along the edges, and face milling, which cuts across the

surface. Besides these, there are other methods like shaping, planning, broaching, and sawing, each used for different kinds of cuts.

After the main machining steps, abrasive processes such as grinding are often used, which rely on hard particles to smooth the material's surface and give it a very fine finish. Each machining operation can make particular shapes and textures, and all of them play important roles in manufacturing parts with the right geometry and surface quality. Figure 6.3 illustrates the three most common types of machining processes, which include turning, drilling, and two forms of milling: peripheral milling and face milling.

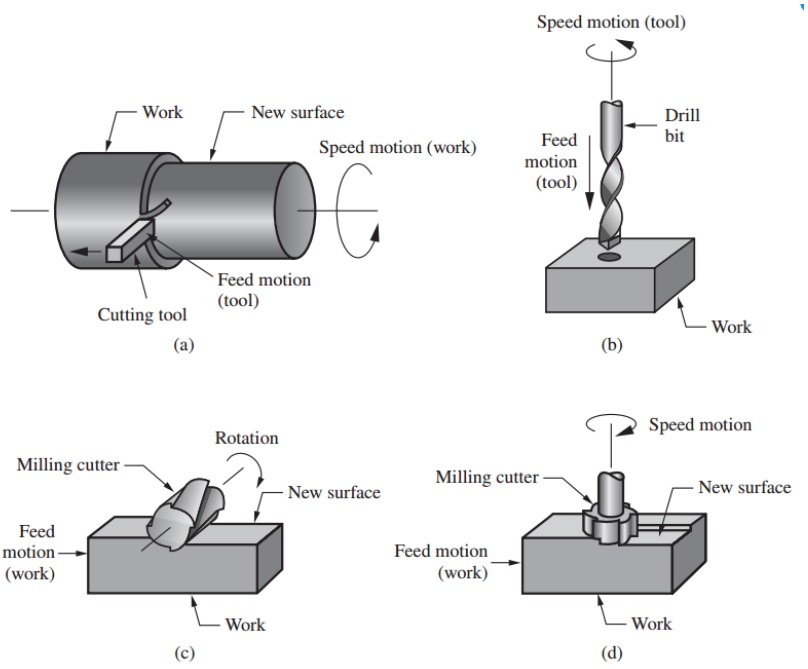


Figure 6.3: The three most common types of machining processes: (a) turning, (b) drilling, and two forms of milling: (c) peripheral milling and (d) face milling

THE CUTTING TOOL

A cutting tool is a special instrument made from a material that is much harder than the material it is used to shape. The edge of the cutting tool is sharp and is designed to remove small pieces, called chips, from the main material. The tool has two main surfaces connected to this edge: the rake face and the flank. The rake face helps guide the chips away from the material as they are removed and is set at a certain angle, known as the rake angle. This angle can be either positive or negative, depending on how the tool is positioned. The flank is the surface that keeps a gap between the tool and the material that has just been cut, so the new surface does not get scratched or damaged. The angle of the flank is called the clearance or relief angle.

There are two main types of cutting tools. Single-point tools have one cutting edge and are used for jobs like turning, where the tool cuts as it moves along the spinning material. The very tip of the single-point tool is rounded, which helps make smoother corners; this rounded part is called the nose radius. Multiple cutting-edge tools have more than one cutting edge and usually spin to do their work. Examples include drill

bits and milling cutters, which are used in drilling and milling. Even though these tools may look different, the way their cutting edges, rake faces, and flanks work is very similar.

Understanding the basic shapes and angles of cutting tools helps in choosing the right tool for each job and ensures that the finished part has a good surface and the correct shape. Figure 6.4 illustrates (a) a single-point tool that shows the rake face, flank, and tool point, and (b) a helical milling cutter, which represents tools with multiple cutting edges.

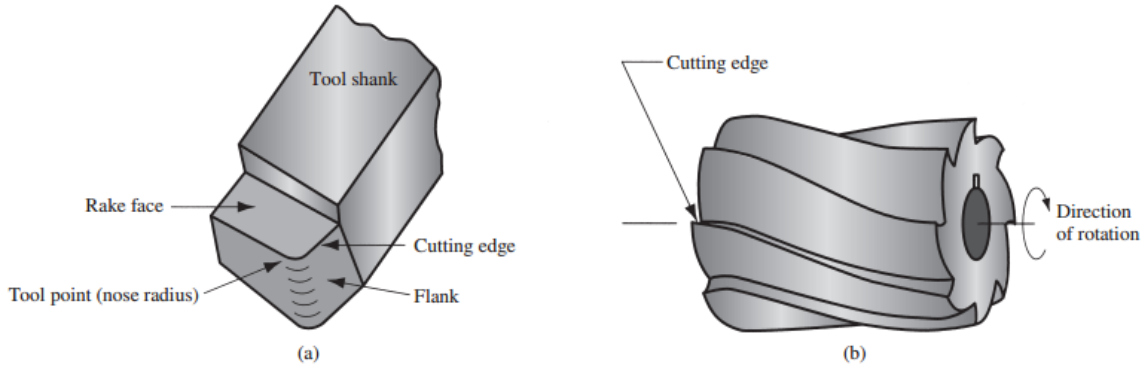


Figure 6.4: (a) A single-point tool showing rake face, flank, and tool point; and (b) a helical milling cutter, representative of tools with multiple cutting edges.

CUTTING CONDITIONS

To shape a piece of material using machines, the tool and the workpiece must move in relation to each other. There are three main ways they move, and these are important in machining:

1. **Cutting Speed (v)**

This is how fast the cutting tool moves against the material. Imagine how quickly a knife moves when slicing bread – the faster it moves, the higher the cutting speed. Cutting speed is usually measured in metres per second (m/s) or metres per minute (m/min).

2. **Feed (f)**

This is how slowly the tool or the workpiece moves sideways, allowing the tool to cut across the surface. In turning operations, feed is given in millimetres per revolution (mm/rev), which means how much the tool moves sideways for every full turn of the workpiece.

3. **Depth of Cut (d)**

This is how deep the tool goes into the material. It is measured in millimetres (mm).

Together, these three factors are called cutting conditions (***Figure 6.5***). They decide how much material is removed during the process. For most machining operations, you can work out how fast material is being removed using this formula:

Material Removal Rate (RMR) = Cutting Speed (v) × Feed (f) × Depth of Cut (d)

RMR tells you how much material is taken away every second, measured in cubic millimetres (mm^3/s).

In different types of machining, these terms might mean slightly different things. For instance, in drilling, the depth is how deep the hole goes.

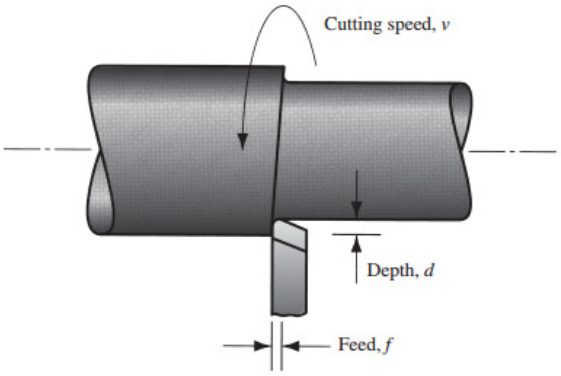


Figure 6.5: Cutting speed, feed, and depth of cut for a turning operation

Machining involves two main types of cutting: roughing and finishing. Roughing cuts are the first stage, where a lot of material is removed quickly to get the workpiece close to the desired shape. However, some extra material is left on purpose for the next stage. Finishing cuts come after, removing a small amount to give the part its final size, smoothness, and accuracy.

Usually, one or more roughing cuts are done first, followed by one or two finishing cuts. Roughing cuts use larger feed rates (how much the tool moves with each turn) and deeper cuts, which means they take away material faster. The feed for roughing is typically between 0.4 mm and 1.25 mm per turn, and the depth of cut ranges from 2.5 mm to 20 mm. Finishing cuts use smaller feed rates, between 0.125 mm and 0.4 mm per turn, and shallower depths of cut, from 0.75 mm to 2.0 mm. This is to make sure the final part is accurate and has a smooth surface. Also, the roughing process usually uses slower cutting speeds than finishing.

Cutting fluids (liquids used during machining) are often used to cool and lubricate the cutting tool. Deciding whether to use a cutting fluid and which one to use depends on the material and tool and is an important part of setting up the machining process. Choosing the right conditions affects how well the operation works and the quality of the finished product.

MACHINE TOOLS

A machine tool is a special machine that helps shape and make parts from materials like metal. It does three main things: it holds the piece you want to work on, puts the cutting tool in the right place, and gives the power needed for cutting at the chosen speed, feed, and depth. When you control all these things well, machine tools can produce parts that are very accurate (sometimes within just 0.025 millimetres of the correct size). The term “machine tool” means any powered machine that does a cutting job, such as grinding. It can also refer to machines that shape metal by pressing or forming.

The most common machine tools for shaping metal are lathes (for turning), drill presses (for drilling holes), and milling machines (for cutting shapes and surfaces). In older workshops, a human operator is needed to put the material in the machine, take it out when finished, change the tools, and set up how the machine should cut. Today, many machines can do these jobs automatically using computer controls, which is called computer numerical control (CNC).

MACHINING AND PART GEOMETRY

Machined parts are grouped into two types: rotational and nonrotational (Figure 6.6). Rotational parts are shaped like cylinders or discs. To make these, a cutting tool removes material from a piece that spins around, such as in turning and boring.

Drilling is similar, but instead of the workpiece spinning, the tool itself rotates to cut a hole inside, making a round shape.

Nonrotational parts, also called prismatic parts, look like blocks or plates. These are made by moving the workpiece in straight lines, while the cutting tool either spins or moves in straight lines too. Common operations for making these shapes include milling, shaping, planning, and sawing.

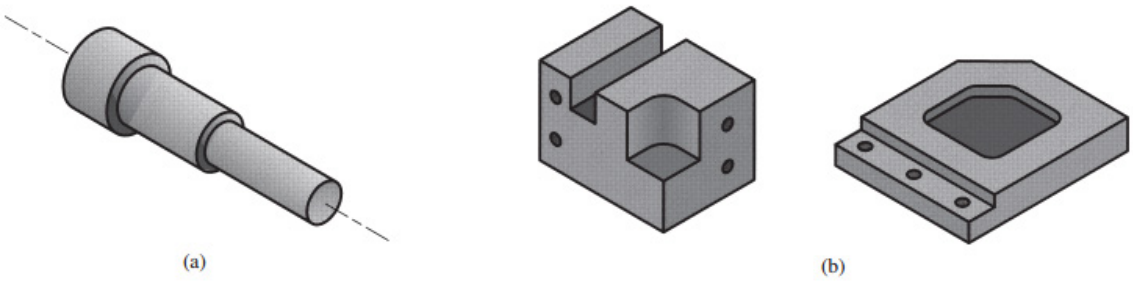


Figure 6.6: Machined parts are classified as (a) rotational or (b) nonrotational, shown here by block and flat parts

Every machining operation makes a specific shape on a workpiece because of two main things: (1) how the tool and the workpiece move in relation to each other, and (2) the shape of the cutting tool itself. There are two ways to make these shapes: generating and forming.

In generating, the shape of the part comes from the path the cutting tool follows as it moves. As the tool moves along the workpiece, it creates the final shape. For example, when doing straight turning, taper turning, contour turning, peripheral milling, or profile milling, the way the tool moves (called the feed motion) decides the shape (Figure 6.7). During these processes, the tool removes material, but the feed motion (the direction and distance the tool travels) gives the part its final form. Sometimes, this motion means the tool cuts deeper or wider as it moves, like in contour turning and profile milling.

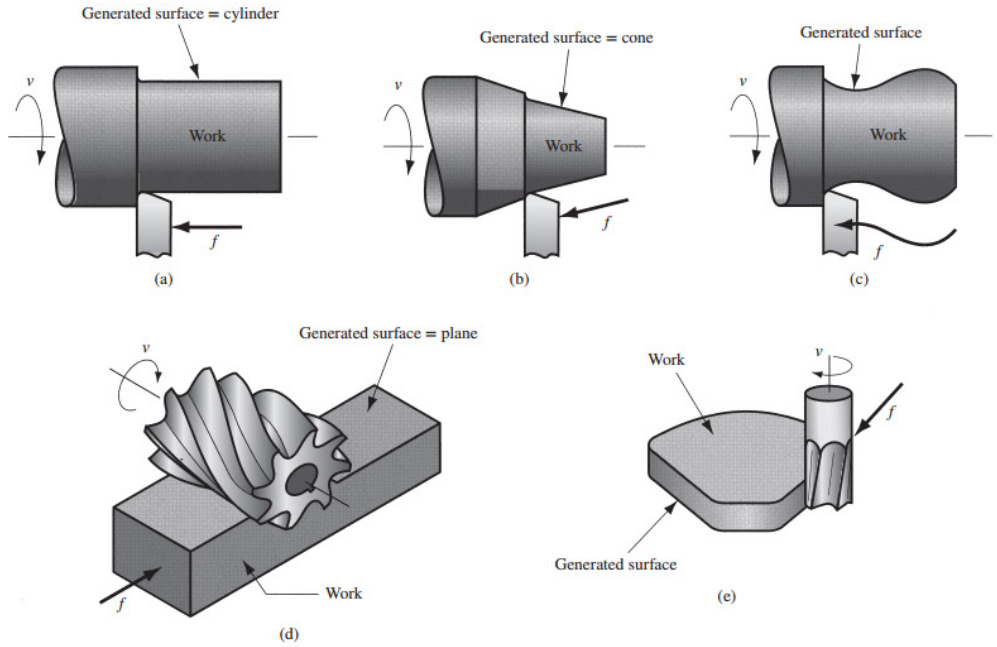


Figure 6.7: Generating shape in machining: (a) straight turning, (b) taper turning, (c) contour turning, (d) plain milling, and (e) profile milling.

In forming, the shape of a part is made by the shape of the cutting tool itself. Imagine the tool has the opposite shape of what you want to make; as the tool presses into the material, it creates the desired form on the workpiece. Common examples are form turning, drilling, and broaching. In these methods, the tool's shape is copied onto the material.

Usually, the machine combines the main movement (speed) with a pushing movement (feed) that drives the tool into the workpiece. The "depth of cut" means how deep the tool goes into the material after this movement is finished. Sometimes, forming and another method called generating are used together. For instance, when cutting threads on a lathe or making slots in milling, the shape of the tool decides the shape of the thread or the width of the slot, while the movement of the tool creates the full thread or slot. In thread cutting, the pointed tool shapes each thread, but the way the tool moves makes the spiral. In slotting, the cutter's width sets the slot size, but the slot is made as the tool moves through the material.

Forming to create shape in machining can be carried out through processes such as form turning, drilling, and broaching (as illustrated in Figure 6.8), while a combination of forming and generating is used in operations like thread cutting on a lathe and slot milling to produce the base of a T-slot (as shown in Figure 6.9).

Machining is a secondary process. This means it usually happens after a basic process that gives the material its first shape, like casting, forging, or rolling metal into bars and rods. These basic shapes often need more work to become the final product. Machining changes these rough shapes into the exact size and design needed, such as turning a rod into a shaft.

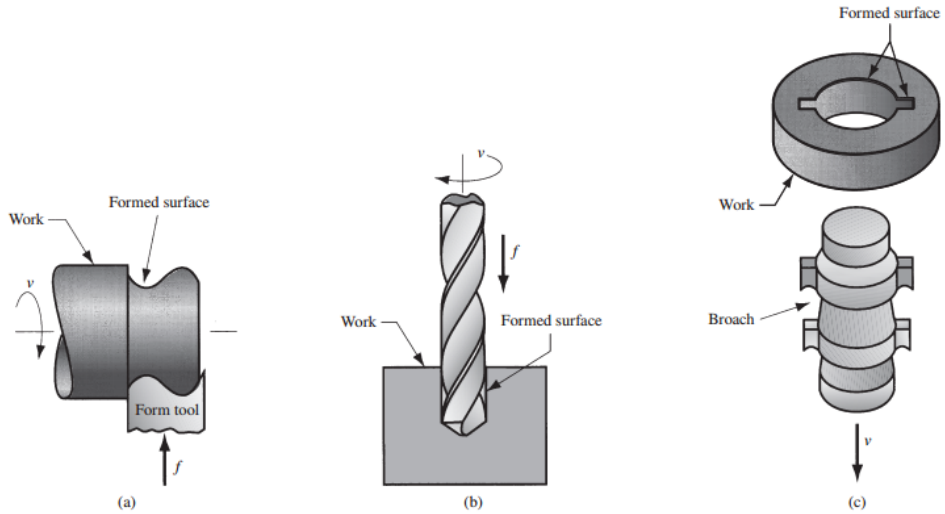


Figure 6.8: Forming to create shape in machining: (a) form turning, (b) drilling, and (c) broaching

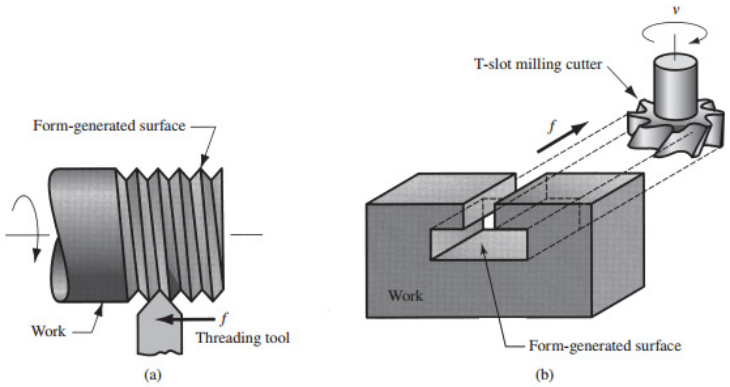


Figure 6.9: Combination of forming and generating to create shape: (a) thread cutting on a lathe and (b) slot milling to form the base of a T-slot.

PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION OF THE CENTRE-LATHE MACHINE

A centre-lathe machine, also referred to as a centre lathe, is a fundamental tool in shaping metal or wood by spinning the workpiece and applying a sharp cutting tool to remove material with precision. The term “lathe” is derived from an Old English word meaning “machine”, reflecting its longstanding role in manufacturing. Its importance is underscored by the fact that many other machines are constructed using components produced on a lathe, earning it the title “mother of all machines”. Figure 6.10 shows a centre-lathe machine, highlighting key components such as the bed, headstock, tailstock, carriage, lead screw, and various other parts.

The machine secures the material between the headstock, which houses the motor and drives the spindle, and the tailstock, which provides support at the opposite end. The cutting tool is mounted in a tool post affixed to the cross-slide, itself situated on the carriage that travels along accurately machined tracks known as ways. This arrangement ensures precise linear guidance for the tool. The carriage’s movement is regulated by

a leadscrew, controlling the feed rate, while the cross-slide enables adjustment of the tool's position relative to the rotating workpiece for various operations.

Typically, the spindle is oriented horizontally, optimising the machine for long, slender components, though some lathes are designed to spin workpieces vertically for larger or heavier items. The size of a centre-lathe is specified by its swing (the maximum diameter of material it can accommodate) and the distance between centres, which is the maximum length of workpiece that can be held between the headstock and tailstock. For instance, a lathe described as 350 mm × 1.2 m can handle workpieces up to 350 mm in diameter and 1.2 metres in length.

Figure 6.11 presents a diagram of a centre lathe, highlighting its principal components, while ***Figure 6.12*** details key lathe measurements, including A: the length of the bed, B: the distance between centres, C: the maximum diameter of work that can be turned over the ways, and D: the maximum diameter of work that can be turned over the cross-slide. This robust and versatile construction underpins its central role in precision engineering and production.

Every lathe, no matter how advanced, does three main jobs:

1. It turns (spins) the material.
2. It holds and rotates the workpiece.
3. It holds and guides the cutting tool to shape the material.

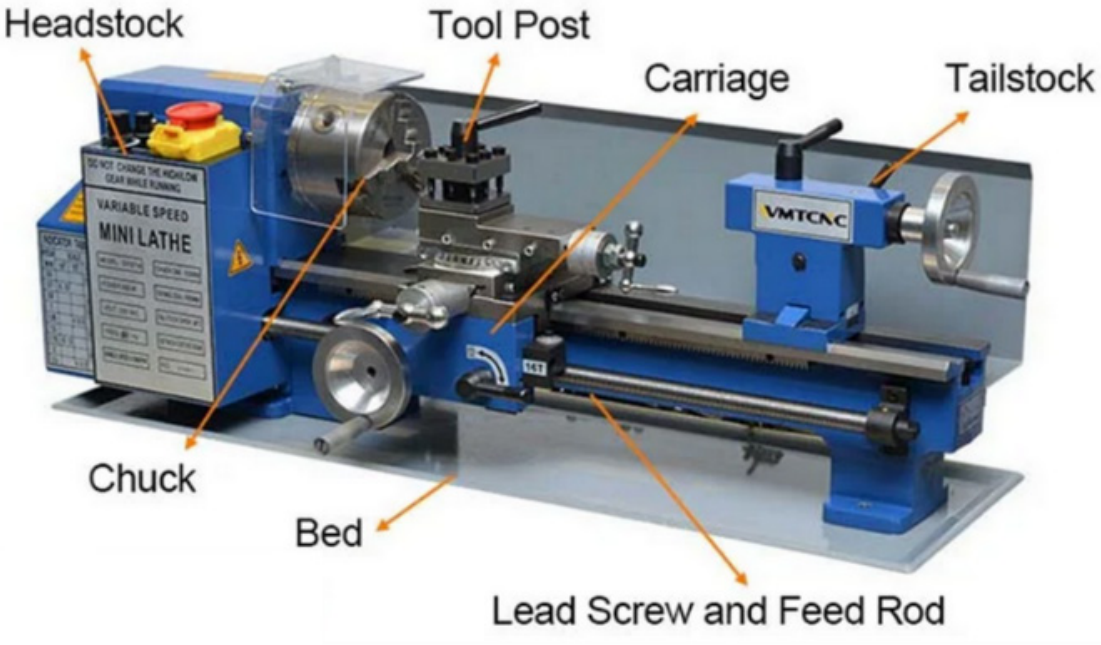


Figure 6.10: Picture of a centre-lathe machine showing the bed, headstock, tailstock, carriage, lead screw and other parts

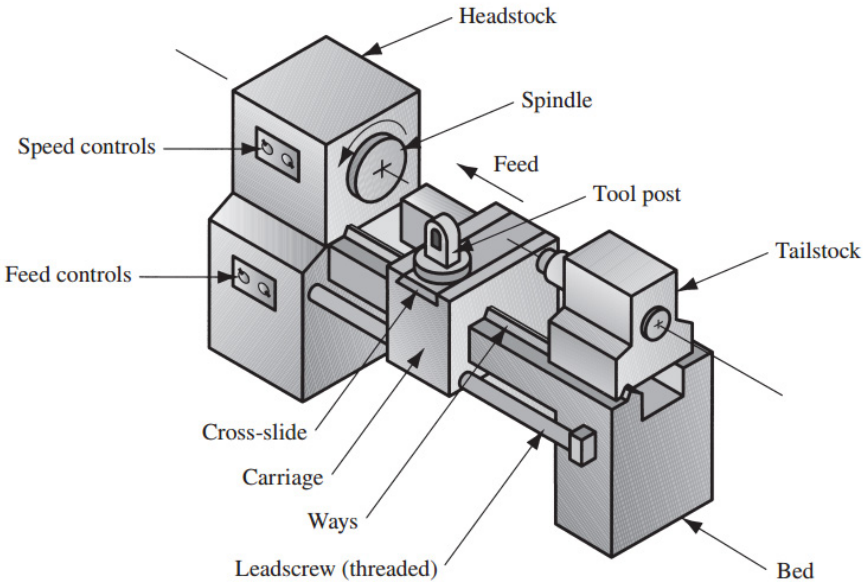


Figure 6.11: Diagram of an centre lathe indicating its principal components (Groover, 2020)

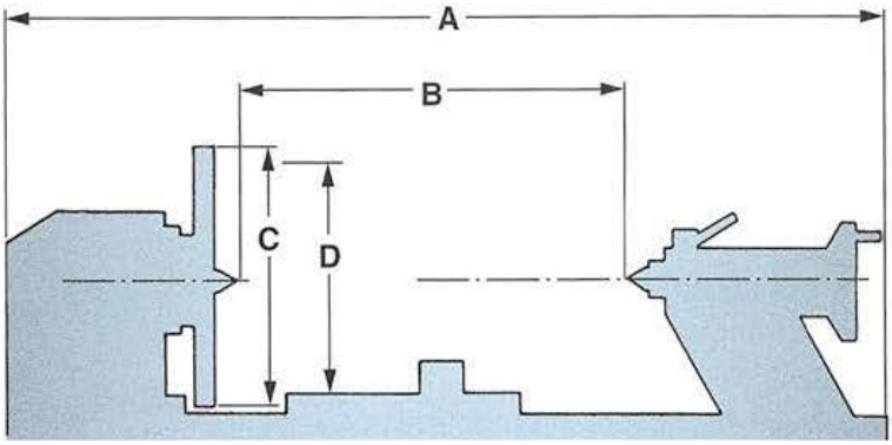


Figure 6.12: Lathe measurements. A- Length of bed. B- Distance between centres. C-Diameter of work that can be turned over in various ways. D-Diameter of work that can be turned over the cross-slide.

TYPES OF LATHE MACHINES

There are several types of lathe machines, each designed for specific tasks depending on the size and precision needed. The centre lathe is the most common and is used in most workshops for general operations, while the bench lathe is a smaller version placed on a table for lighter work and small parts, often found in schools and training centres. The toolroom lathe is built for greater accuracy with extra features to make precise parts, such as special tools or measuring devices.

The CNC lathe is a modern machine controlled by a computer and is used in factories for complex, fast, and accurate automatic production. Other types include the speed lathe, which has a simple design and high speeds but fewer speed settings, mainly used for wood turning, spinning, and polishing; the turret lathe, which can hold many tools and switch between them quickly for high-production jobs; the chucking machine, which uses a chuck instead of a tailstock for holding short, light parts and

operates mostly automatically; and bar machines, which use collets to feed long bars automatically and are often used to make screws and similar items.

Bar machines can have one spindle for working on one part at a time, or multiple spindles to produce several parts at once, making them efficient for mass production. Figure 6.13 compares a manual centre lathe with a CNC lathe machine, highlighting the differences between traditional and modern technologies.

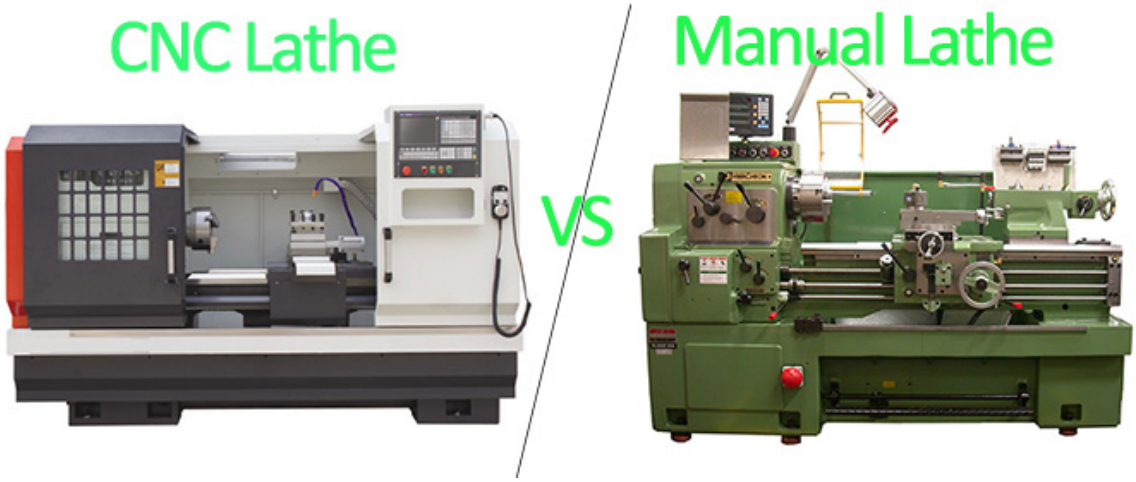


Figure 6.13: Comparing a manual centre lathe and a CNC lathe machine to show the difference between traditional and modern technology

OTHER LATHES AND TURNING MACHINES

Besides the centre lathe, there are other types of turning machines designed for special jobs or to make the turning process automatic. Figure 6.14 illustrates the type of part that can be produced on a six-spindle automatic bar machine and outlines the sequence of operations involved, which are: feeding the stock to the stop, turning the main diameter, forming the second diameter, spot facing, drilling, chamfering, and finally cutting off the finished part. These machines include:

1. **Toolroom Lathe**

Similar to the centre lathe but smaller. It can run at more speeds and is made for very accurate work, like making parts for tools and precise devices.

2. **Speed Lathe**

Simpler than the centre lathe. It does not have some parts like the carriage and cross-slide, and does not use a screw to move the cutting tool. The operator holds the cutting tool using a rest. It works at higher speeds but has fewer speed options. It is often used for wood turning, metal spinning, and polishing.

3. **Turret Lathe**

This machine replaces the tailstock with a turret that can hold up to six cutting tools. The operator can quickly switch from one tool to another, making it good for producing many parts quickly that need several cuts.

4. Chucking Machine

This machine uses a chuck to hold the work part. It does not have a tailstock, so it is only used for short and light parts. The cutting tools move automatically, but a person is still needed to load and remove the parts.

5. Bar Machine (Automatic Screw Machine)

This is like a chucking machine, but uses a collet to hold and feed long bars of metal through the machine. After each part is made, the machine cuts it off and pulls more bar forward for the next part. Everything works automatically. It is often used to make screws and similar items. There are two types: single spindle (works on one part at a time) and multiple spindle (works on several parts at the same time, making work faster).

6. Numerically Controlled Lathe (CNC Lathe)

Modern machines are now controlled by computers. A programme tells the machine what to do using codes. CNC lathes can make parts with complex shapes and do many jobs automatically with high accuracy. Today, machines like automatic chuckers and bar machines use CNC control.

In summary, these turning machines make it possible to do different types of work, from making very accurate parts to producing large numbers of items quickly and automatically.

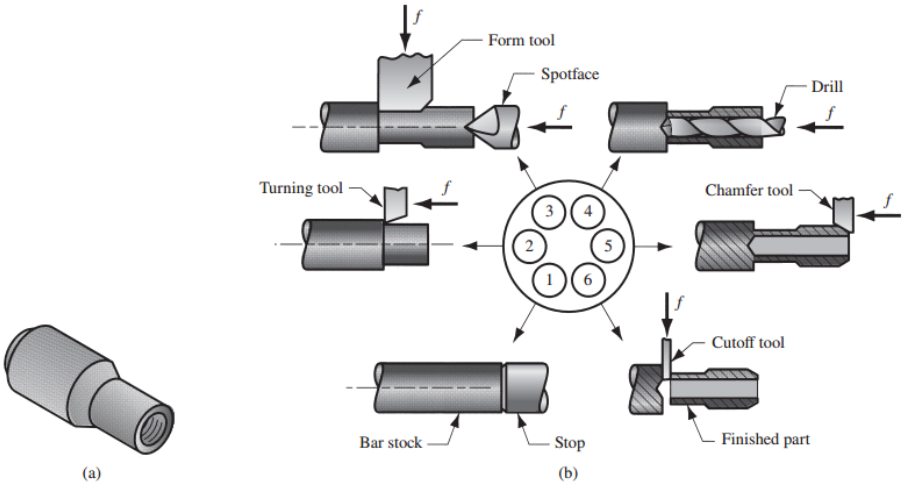


Figure 6.14: (a) Type of part produced on a six-spindle automatic bar machine and (b) sequence of operations to produce the part: (1) feed stock to stop, (2) turn main diameter, (3) form second diameter and spotface, (4) drill, (5) chamfer, and (6) cutoff.

METHODS OF HOLDING THE WORK IN A LATHE/ WORK HOLDING DEVICES

Workholding devices are tools used to keep the workpiece firmly in place while it spins on the lathe. This makes sure the workpiece stays safe and does not move, so the final product is accurate. The most common workholding device is the chuck. A three-jaw chuck has three jaws that move together and is used for holding round or hexagonal (six-sided) pieces.

A four-jaw chuck has four jaws that can be adjusted separately, and it is used for holding square or unevenly shaped pieces. Other devices include faceplates, centres, and collets. Lathe centres hold long pieces between the headstock and tailstock, so the workpiece stays balanced and supported while turning.

The headstock is the part of the lathe that contains the spindle. The spindle is the rotating shaft where different holding devices are attached. The spindle turns because of belts, gears, or both. The front part of the spindle is hollow and has a tapered shape inside, so it can hold tools and attachments with tapered ends. The hole in the spindle lets long materials pass through, so they can be worked on safely without sticking out too far. This hollow part also allows for easy removal of tools using a rod called a knockout bar. There are four main ways to hold a workpiece in a lathe during turning. These methods help to keep the workpiece secure, centred, and spinning safely while it is being shaped.

Figures 6.15 and ***6.16*** illustrate various work-holding methods and devices used in lathes, including mounting the work between centres with a dog, three-jaw and four-jaw chucks, collets, and face plates for non-cylindrical parts.

The common methods are:

1. **Between centres**

The workpiece is held at both ends using special points called centres. One centre is in the headstock (the main part that spins), and the other is in the tailstock (which supports the other end). The headstock uses a device called a dog to make the workpiece turn. The tailstock centre can be a “live centre”, which spins with the workpiece and reduces friction, or a “dead centre”, which stays still and should only be used at slow speeds to avoid overheating. This method is good for long pieces that need strong support.

2. **Chuck**

A chuck is like a clamp with three or four jaws that grab the workpiece tightly. Some chucks can hold round pieces from the outside or inside, and some let you adjust each jaw separately. Chucks are easy to use for short pieces, but for long pieces, you may also need to use the tailstock for extra support.

3. **Collet**

A collet is a metal sleeve with slits that allow it to squeeze tightly around a round workpiece, like a bar. Collets are used for pieces that are the same size and shape. Each collet is made for a certain size, so you must pick the right one for the job.

4. **Face plate**

A face plate is a flat disc that attaches to the lathe. It is used for holding workpieces with odd shapes that cannot fit in a chuck or collet. Special clamps are used to hold these unusual pieces in place.

These methods make sure the workpiece does not move or fall out while turning, so that accurate and safe machining is possible.

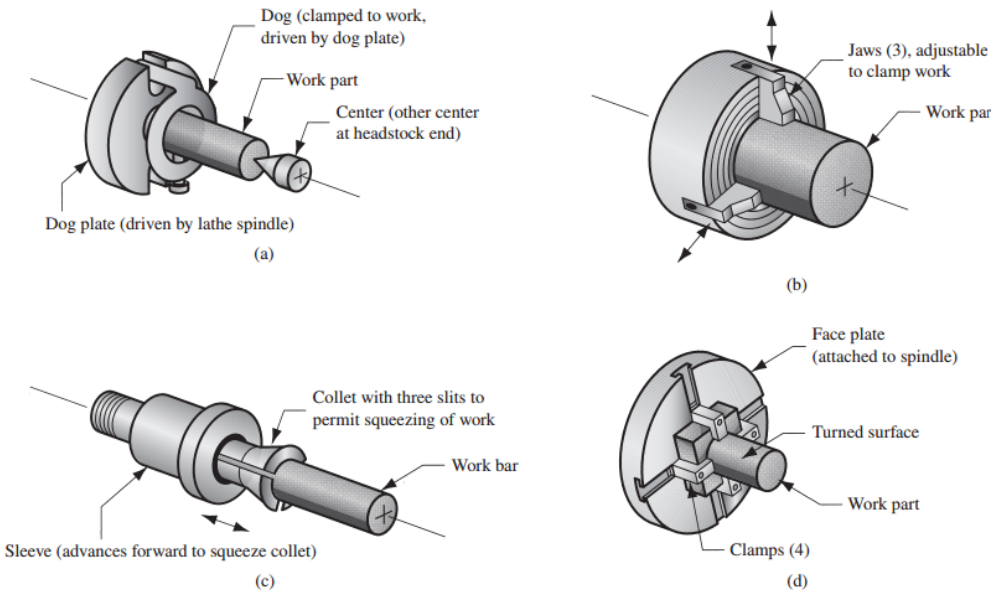


Figure 6.15: Four work-holding methods used in lathes: (a) mounting the work between centres using a dog, (b) three-jaw chuck, (c) collet, and (d) face plate for noncylindrical work parts.

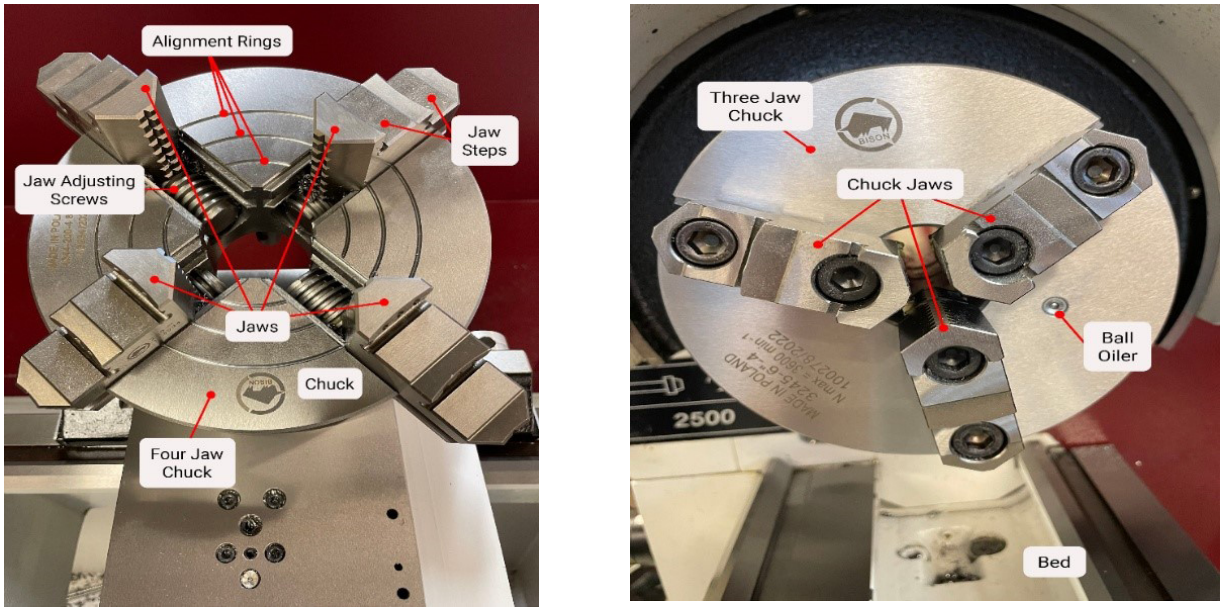


Figure 6.16: Work holding devices, a 4–jaw chuck and a 3-jaw chuck

LATHE CUTTING TOOLS

Lathe cutting tools are made from very strong materials such as high-speed steel or carbide. These tools come in different shapes because each is made for a special job. The main types are turning tools, boring tools, parting tools, facing tools, and thread cutting tools. To use these tools, they are fixed on a part of the lathe called the tool post. It is important to set each tool at the right height and angle so it can cut the material smoothly and accurately. Figure 6.17 shows a range of lathe cutting tools, each labelled with its respective name. Each tool has a unique shape that matches the job it is meant to do, so it is useful to learn how to recognise each tool by its shape and purpose.



Figure 6.17: Different lathe cutting tools with their names

PARAMETERS OF THE LATHE MACHINE

The quality of any machining work relies on three main settings: spindle speed, feed rate, and depth of cut. Spindle speed is how fast the machine spins the workpiece, measured in revolutions per minute (RPM). Feed rate is the speed at which the cutting tool moves along the surface, usually measured in millimetres per turn of the workpiece. Depth of cut is how deep the tool slices into the material in one go. The right values for these settings depend on the material being worked on, the type of tool used, and how smooth the final surface should be. Setting the spindle speed too high can make the tool too hot, and moving the tool too quickly can leave the surface rough. It is important to choose these settings carefully to achieve good results in machining. ***Table 6.1*** displays the typical cutting speeds and feed rates recommended for high-speed steel (HSS) turning tools when working with various materials on a lathe.

Table 6.1: Typical Cutting Speeds and Feed Rates for HSS Turning Tools on Various Workpiece Materials

Work Material	Feed Rate (mm/rev)	Cutting Speed (m/min)
Aluminium	0.2 – 1.0	70 – 100
Brass (Alpha) Ductile)	0.2 – 1.0	70 – 100
Brass (Free-Cutting)	0.2 – 1.0	100 – 150
Bronze (Phosphor)	0.15 – 1.0	35 – 70
Cast Iron (Grey)	0.15 – 1.0	35 – 70
Copper	0.2 – 1.0	35 – 70
Steel (Mild)	0.2 – 1.0	25 – 50

Steel (Medium Carbon)	0.2 – 1.0	25 – 50
Steel (Alloy – High Tensile)	0.08 – 0.2	20 – 35
Thermosetting Plastic	0.2 – 1.0	35 – 50

SETTING UP THE LATHE MACHINE

Before using the lathe machine, it is important to set it up correctly to keep everyone safe and to make sure the work is accurate. Start by fixing the piece of material (the workpiece) firmly in place using the chuck or by putting it between two centres. Then, line up the headstock and tailstock so the workpiece spins evenly and does not wobble.

Next, put the cutting tool into the tool post. Adjust the tool so it is at the right height and angle for the job. After setting up the tool, choose the right spindle speed, feed rate, and depth of cut. These settings depend on what material is being cut and what type of tool is being used. Always test the machine at a slow speed first to make sure everything is working as it should before starting full operations.

Just like pilots check an aeroplane before flying, the lathe needs to be checked before use. This helps prevent accidents and damage. The following steps should be done as part of the setup:

1. Clean and oil the machine with the correct lubricants as recommended by the manufacturer. Follow the suggested order to make sure no part is missed.
2. Make sure all protective covers are in place and securely locked.
3. Turn the spindle by hand to see if it moves freely and is not stuck. If using back gear, check it is set correctly.
4. Move the carriage (the part that holds the tool) along its track to check for smooth movement. It should not get stuck.
5. Test the cross-slide (which moves the tool across the workpiece). If it feels loose, adjust the gibs (sliding surfaces) to remove extra play.
6. Attach the right work-holding device (like a chuck or faceplate). Clean the spindle nose with a soft brush first and add a little oil if it is threaded.
7. Set the drive for the speed and feed rate that match the material and task.
8. If using the tailstock, check that it is lined up properly with the headstock.
9. Clamp the cutting tool tightly in the toolholder and fix it in the tool post. Do not let the compound rest (part holding the tool) stick out too far, as this can cause vibrations and poor cutting.
10. Mount the workpiece. Make sure there is enough space between the work and other parts of the machine to avoid collisions.

Following these steps will help make sure the lathe is set up properly, works safely, and produces good quality work. ***Figure 6.18*** shows the step-by-step setup of a lathe operation, detailing the necessary preparations such as cleaning, lubricating, checking

components, securing workpieces and tools, and ensuring all safety measures are followed before beginning work.



Figure 6.18: Step-by-step setup of a lathe operation

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

When operating a lathe, it is crucial to adhere to safety regulations to avoid accidents. Always wear safety glasses and an apron for protection, ensuring that your clothing is not loose, long hair is tied back, and all jewellery, including necklaces, rings, and watches, is removed before you begin, as these items could become entangled in the moving machinery. Before switching on the lathe, remove the chuck key and never touch moving parts such as the workpiece or tool, keeping your hands clear of the cutting area at all times.

Handle tools with care, return them to their designated places after use, and maintain a clean, dry workspace by promptly clearing any oil spills to prevent slips, with a teacher or supervisor always present during machine operation. Ensure sleeves are rolled up and avoid wearing anything that might get caught in the machine; do not place loose tools on the lathe but instead use a dedicated board or tray, or the built-in tray if available, to keep tools and measuring instruments organised.

Lathe chips (sharp metal fragments produced during machining) are hazardous, so never remove them by hand or with an air hose, as flying chips can cause injury; always use pliers for this task. After finishing with the lathe, clean it thoroughly using a small paintbrush (about 2 inches wide) to clear away any metal chips, helping to maintain the machine in good working order.

Follow these safety guidelines when working with a lathe:

1. Only use the lathe after you have learnt the correct steps and your teacher has shown you how to use it safely.
2. Never use the machine if you are unwell or affected by medicine.
3. Wear the right clothing and protective equipment. Remove all jewellery, tie back long hair, and wear safety glasses.

4. Make sure the workpiece is tightly fixed in place. Use the right size tool and work-holding device for your task. Get help if you need to move heavy parts.
5. Check your work often, especially when the workpiece is held between centres. As it heats up, it can expand and cause problems.
6. Always make sure all safety guards are in place before starting the lathe. Never try to bypass safety features.
7. Turn the chuck or faceplate by hand before starting the lathe, to check for anything that might get in the way.
8. Keep the machine clear of tools and other objects.
9. Stop the machine completely before you make any measurements or adjustments.
10. Do not touch metal chips with your hands. They are sharp and can cut you. Use pliers to remove them and always stop the machine first.
11. Do not let thin pieces of metal stick out too far from the chuck without extra support. They could bend or break.
12. Do not let the cutting tool hit the chuck or work clamp.
13. Always check that there is enough space before moving the tool to the farthest point it will reach.
14. Stop the machine before using a cloth to clean it, so the cloth does not get caught.
15. When doing special operations like knurling, keep the coolant brush away from the spinning workpiece.
16. Before you move or remove work from the lathe, move the cutting tool away from the area you are working on. This helps prevent injuries.
17. To stay safe, always use pliers to pick up long, stringy pieces of metal. Do not touch them with your hands, as they can easily cut your skin (***Figure 6.19***).

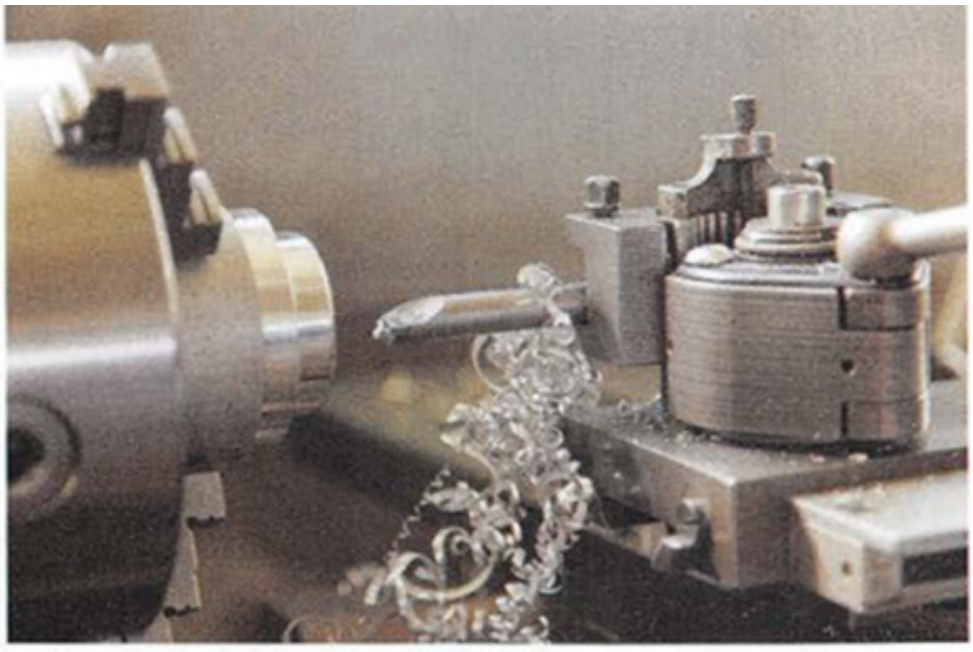


Figure 6.19: To avoid injury, always remove stringy chips with pliers. Never use your hands.

TURNING, DRILLING AND MILLING OPERATIONS USING CENTRE-LATHE MACHINE

UNDERSTANDING TURNING, DRILLING AND MILLING ON A LATHE

Turning, drilling, and milling are basic ways to shape metal or other materials using a centre lathe machine. These methods help machinists change a block or rod into a finished part with the exact size and smoothness required. On a centre lathe, the workpiece (the material being worked on) is usually spun while a cutting tool removes bits from its surface.

TURNING

Turning means removing material from the outside of a piece that is spinning. A sharp tool cuts along the surface to make the piece round, like making rods, shafts, or pipes. The tool can move straight along the spinning piece (longitudinal turning) or across it (facing). Turning can also make shapes like tapers (slopes) or grooves (small channels). This gives smooth surfaces and accurate sizes, which are very important in making machine parts.

Turning, the first step is to secure the workpiece in the chuck and make sure it is tightly clamped and centred. The appropriate cutting tool is selected and mounted in the tool post. The operator then sets the cutting parameters such as spindle speed, feed rate, and depth of cut based on the material and desired finish. The tool is moved parallel to the axis of the rotating workpiece to reduce the diameter. The operator must frequently stop to measure the diameter with a calliper or micrometre until the required size is achieved.

DRILLING

Drilling is making a round hole in the centre of the workpiece. The workpiece is held tightly and rotated, while a drill bit (which can also spin or stay still) is pushed into it from one end. The drill is held in a part called the tailstock. By turning the tailstock handwheel, the drill moves into the workpiece. After drilling, other processes like reaming (making the hole smoother and more accurate) or boring (making the hole bigger) can be done. For small holes (up to 12.5 mm wide), a straight drill is used with a special chuck. For bigger holes, a drill with a tapered end is used. Figure 6.20 shows a drill bit held in the tailstock drilling into a rotating workpiece

In drilling, the drill bit is installed in the tailstock and aligned with the centre of the workpiece. The workpiece continues to rotate, but the drill bit does not. Instead, the tailstock is moved forward using the handwheel, and the drill cuts into the rotating workpiece to form a hole. The drill is withdrawn occasionally to clear chips and allow cooling. Once the desired depth is reac hed, the drill is retracted, and the hole may be cleaned or finished with another tool.

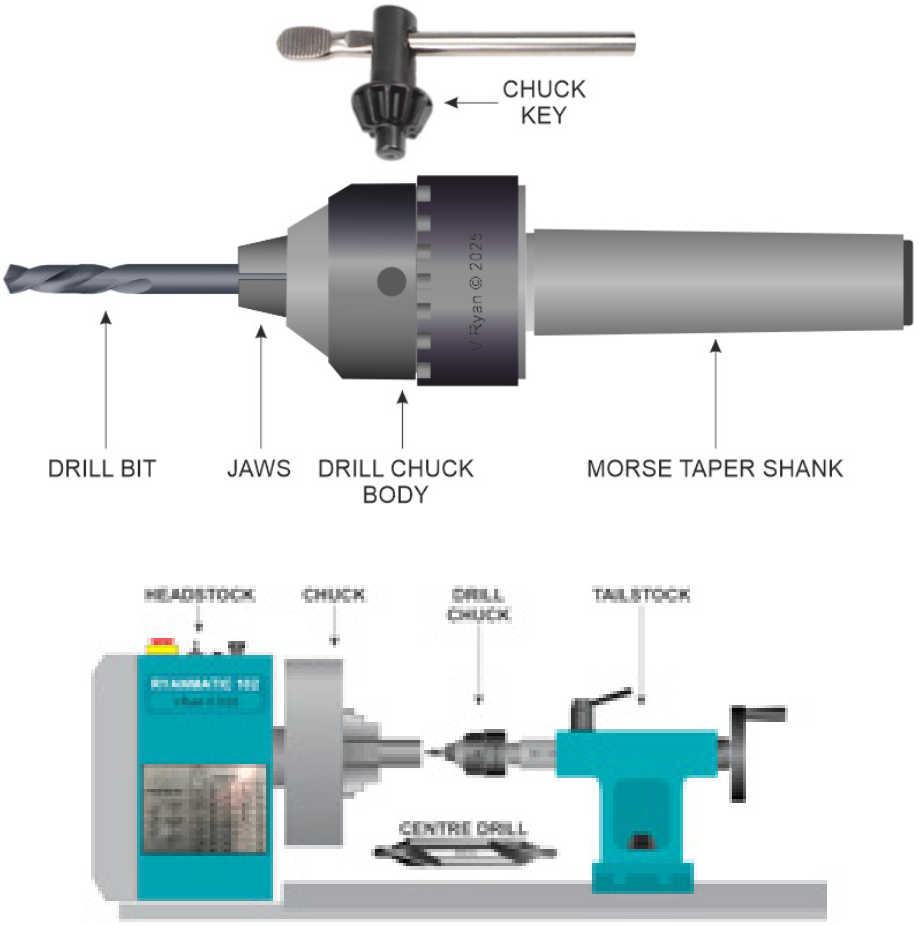


Figure 6.20: A drill bit held in the tailstock drilling into a rotating workpiece
https://technologystudent.com/equip1/mlathe4.htm

MILLING

Milling is less common on a lathe, but can be done. Here, a milling cutter is held in the tool post, and the workpiece spins. The cutter stays in one place while the spinning workpiece is moved against it. This is used to make flat surfaces, slots, or keyways (long slots) on round parts. Milling on the lathe is more advanced and requires careful setup. The workpiece is clamped in the chuck and rotated.

A milling cutter is installed in the tool post or special milling attachment. The carriage or cross-slide is then moved to feed the cutter into the rotating workpiece. Because the lathe is not designed primarily for milling, only light milling cuts should be performed. This operation is useful for making flats or slots on cylindrical parts, especially when a milling machine is not available. When performing these operations, it is important to follow safety rules, including wearing safety goggles, ensuring the chuck key is removed before switching on the machine, and keeping hands away from rotating parts. Proper lubrication and chip removal help maintain the tool and workpiece.

Figure 6.21 shows a milling cutter held in the tool post performing face milling on a workpiece.

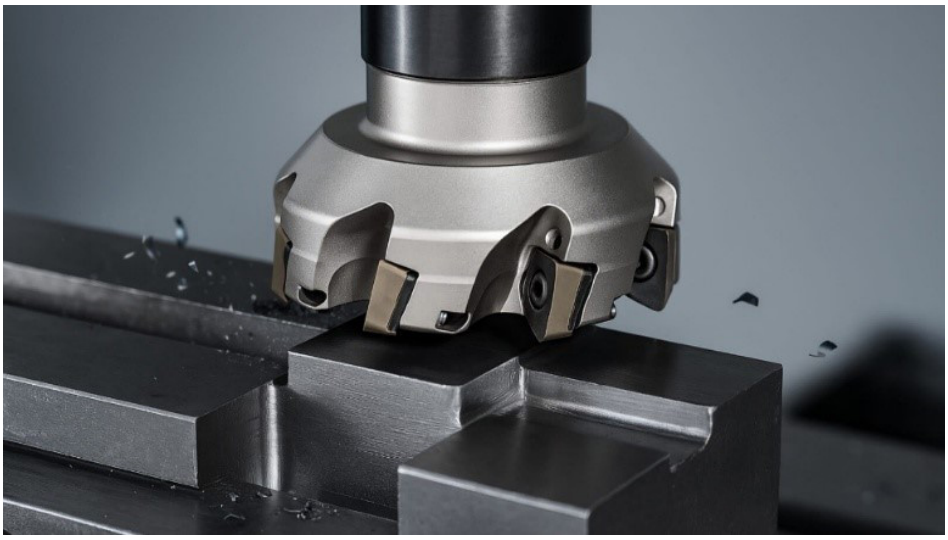


Figure 6.21: A milling cutter held in the tool post performing face milling on a workpiece
https://www.3erp.com/blog/face-milling/

In summary, turning shapes the outside, drilling makes holes, and milling creates flat areas or slots. All these are important for making precise machine parts using a centre lathe.

Activity 6.1 Machining Process Videos

Aim: To observe and understand the movement of the workpiece and tool, chip formation, and key distinctions between turning, drilling, and milling operations.

Mode of Work: Individual

Materials/Resources: Internet access (YouTube), notebook and pen

Suggested Videos

1. Different Machining Processes: Turning, Milling, Drilling – Gives a clear overview of the three processes, showing how each is set up and executed.
2. Manufacturing Process | Turning, Drilling, Milling And ... – Demonstrates each process in sequence, highlighting differences in tooling and motion.
3. Differences between Turning and Milling. – Focuses on the contrasting movement of tool and the workpiece in these two methods.
4. Order of Operations in Machining – Shows how turning, milling, and drilling fit into a complete machining workflow.
5. Basics of Machining Part 2 | Drilling, Turning, Milling, Wedge ... – Explains chip formation, cutting angles, and feed rates for each process.

Instructions

1. Watch at least two of the suggested videos, ensuring all three processes (turning, drilling, milling) are covered.

2. Record your observations on:
    a. How the workpiece and tool move in relation to each other.
    b. The process of chip formation and removal.
    c. The main differences between each machining method.
3. Pause and replay sections as needed to ensure understanding.
4. Share key insights or video recommendations with classmates via your course forum or group chat.

Portfolio Note

Compile your notes (typed or handwritten) and include links to the videos viewed. Summarise your main findings in one paragraph for your portfolio.

Activity 6.2 Library Textbook Reading (Optional)

Aim: To summarise the principles and examples of conventional, abrasive, and non-traditional machining methods.

Mode of Work: Individual

Materials/Resources

- Manufacturing engineering textbook (physical or online)
- Access to library or eresources, notebook or digital device

Instructions

1. Locate chapters or sections on:
    a. Conventional machining (turning, drilling, milling, etc.)
    b. Abrasive processes (grinding, honing, lapping)
    c. Non-traditional methods (electrical, chemical, thermal)
2. Read each relevant section carefully.
3. Summarise the key process principles and provide an example for each category in your own words.
4. Compare summaries with a peer or in a study group to check for completeness and clarity.

Portfolio Note

Add your summaries (one paragraph per process) to your portfolio, with references to the sources used.

Activity 6.3 Properties Recap Challenge

Aim: To review and connect material property concepts (e.g., hardness, ductility, toughness) to realworld engineering applications in manufacturing.

Mode of Work: Small groups

Materials/Resources

- Year 1 and Year 2 notes
- Library books, trusted engineering websites, poster paper or digital poster tools

Instructions

1. Gather in your assigned small group with your previous years' notes on material properties.
2. Use textbooks or trusted online sources to find engineering examples illustrating each property.
3. Create a table or poster listing each property, its definition, its importance in manufacturing, and at least one realworld example.
4. Prepare to present your summary to the class. Share findings in a brief peer discussion, clarifying misunderstandings and answering questions together.

Portfolio Note

Add your completed table or poster and a summary of your group's discussion to your portfolio.

Activity 6.4 Machining Basics Revision (Years 1 & 2 Learner Materials)

Aim: To consolidate foundational knowledge of machining processes (turning, drilling, milling, shaping, grinding) from Years 1 and 2, linking them to centrelathe operations.

Mode of Work: Independent

Materials/Resources

- Year 1 and 2 Learner Manuals and class notes
- Engineering workshop textbook, reputable engineering websites, notebook and pen

Instructions

1. List the main machining processes in your notebook and briefly describe each.
2. Sketch or print images of sample components produced by each process, highlighting differences in shape and finish.

3. Share your list and sketches with a peer for review and suggestions.

Portfolio Note

Include your descriptions, sketches, and peer feedback in your portfolio.

Activity 6.5 Lathe Parts Video Labelling

Aim: To identify and label the main components of a centrelathe machine by analysing video and diagram resources.

Mode of Work: Individual or pairs

Materials/Resources

- Centrelathe operation videos
  a. Lathe | Basic Components and their functions of Centre Lathe ... – Walks through each major part and its role in operation.
  b. Lathe Machine: Parts, Function, Working, Operations & Types ... – Explains parts, types, and basic operations.
  c. Parts of lathe machine – Concise visual identification of key components.
  d. Parts of an Engine Lathe – Detailed breakdown of controls and moving parts.
  e. 1 - The Centre Lathe Introduction & Parts – Shows part names and functions with closeup views.
  f. Centre Lathe | Name and Function of Lathe Parts – Summarises part functions for quick reference.
- Notebook or drawing app, online textbook diagrams

Instructions

1. Watch the provided videos, pausing to observe key parts.
2. Sketch the lathe and label its main components (bed, headstock, tailstock, carriage, tool post).
3. Compare your diagram with a partner's and discuss differences.
4. Verify and update labels using an online textbook diagram, correcting errors.

Portfolio Note

Include your final labelled diagram and a brief reflection on the learning process.

Activity 6.6 CentreLathe Video Observation

Aim: To visually explore turning, drilling, and simple milling on a centrelathe, focusing on setup, tool selection, workpiece mounting, and safety.

Mode of Work: Independent or pairs

Materials/Resources

- Curated videos such as
    a. Centre Lathe Turning Drilling (Metal) – Demonstrates basic turning and drilling setup.
    b. Metal Lathe Tutorial 10: Drilling – Shows correct drilling sequence and chip clearing.
    c. Lathe Processes – Centre Drilling – Focuses on accurate centre drilling technique.
    d. Machining Tricks – Turning on a Mill and Milling on a Lathe – Highlights process flexibility and crossmachine techniques.
    e. Lathe Facing and Centre Drilling – Covers facing operations and correct tool positioning.
    f. Centre Drills and Centre Drilling – Explains drill types and depth control.
- Notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Watch at least two of the listed videos, noting setup, tool choice, mounting, and safety steps.
2. Record key steps and differences between turning, drilling, and milling on the lathe.
3. Discuss your observations with a partner and exchange notes.

Portfolio Note

Add your notes and any peer feedback to your portfolio.

Activity 6.7 Lathe Setup Simulation

Aim: To simulate the correct procedure for mounting a workpiece on a lathe, reinforcing understanding of setup steps and their significance.

Mode of Work: Pairs

Materials/Resources

- Hand tools (e.g., chuck key), measuring instruments (e.g., vernier callipers, micrometres)
- Stepbystep guide (textbook or online resource)

Instructions

1. With a partner, collect the necessary tools and instruments.
2. Follow a stepbystep guide to simulate mounting a workpiece in a lathe chuck or between centres.
3. Take turns narrating each setup step, explaining its purpose and expected outcome.
4. Swap roles and repeat to reinforce understanding and communication skills.
5. Discuss each step's importance with your partner, then compare your process with another pair for feedback.

Portfolio Note

Document your simulated setup steps and explanations, noting challenges or insights.

Activity 6.8 Machining Methods Comparison

Aim: To compare a conventional and a nonconventional machining process, focusing on their principles, tools, and applications.

Mode of Work: Mixedability groups

Materials/Resources: Library books, internet access, poster/timeline/table materials (paper or digital)

Instructions

1. Select one conventional (e.g., turning) and one nonconventional (e.g., EDM) machining process.
2. Research each process, focusing on operating principles, required tools, and typical workpieces.
3. Summarise findings in a comparison table, poster, or visual timeline.
4. Exchange your summary with another group and review for similarities and differences.
5. Conduct a group review of another team's comparison, discussing key similarities and differences as a class.

Portfolio Note

Add your group's completed comparison and a summary of your review discussion.

Activity 6.9 Cutting Tools Identification

Aim: To identify, match, and explain the uses of various lathe cutting tools using visual resources.

Mode of Work: Small groups

Materials/Resources

- Online image galleries or textbook diagrams of cutting tools
- Worksheet or blank paper

Instructions

1. Examine images or diagrams of different lathe cutting tools.
2. Match each tool shape and name (e.g., turning, parting, facing, thread cutting) to its correct use.
3. Write a brief explanation for each tool.
4. Discuss answers with your group and reach a consensus.
5. Present and explain your group's identifications to the class, comparing with other groups' answers.

Portfolio Note

Submit your matched list and explanations, along with notes from the class discussion.

Activity 6.10 Lathe Parameters Research (Optional)

Aim: To research and analyse recommended spindle speeds, feed rates, and depths of cut for different materials in lathe operations.

Mode of Work: Individual or pairs

Resources: Textbooks or reliable online resources with parameter tables, a notebook or a digital organiser

Instructions

1. Find a table of typical spindle speeds, feed rates, and depths of cut for various materials.
2. Select two materials (e.g., aluminium and steel) and note the recommended parameters for each.
3. Analyse why these values differ and what could happen if incorrect values are used.
4. Prepare a summary of your findings to share with the class.

5. Share your summary with the class, comparing reasoning and outcomes with peers.

Portfolio Note

Add your parameter table, analysis, and class summary.

Activity 6.11 Textbook Process Sequence Review (Optional)

Aim: To summarise and internalise the correct sequence for centrelathe operations.

Mode of Work: Independent

Materials/Resources

- Engineering workshop textbook
- Sample operation sheet from course materials
- Notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Read the relevant textbook chapter on turning, drilling, and milling on the lathe.
2. Summarise the sequence for each operation, including setup, tool selection, cutting parameters (speed, feed, depth), and inspection.
3. Compare your notes with the sample operation sheet.
4. Exchange summaries with a peer for accuracy checking.

Portfolio Note

Include your finalised notes and peer review comments.

Activity 6.12 RealWorld Applications Research

Aim: To connect centrelathe operations to realworld manufacturing contexts.

Mode of Work: Independent

Materials/Resources: Internet access, notebook and pen

Instructions

- Find two examples of components manufactured using centrelathe operations (e.g., automotive shafts, machine spindles).
- For each, explain which operations were used and why precision matters.
- Share your examples in a small group and discuss other possible applications.

Portfolio Note

Add your research findings and group discussion notes.

Activity 6.13 Group Comparison of Machining Processes

Aim: To compare shaping, grinding, and turning in terms of process, advantages, and limitations.

Mode of Work: Small groups (2–4 learners)

Materials/Resources

- Lesson "Key Assessment" question
- Notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Discuss similarities and differences between shaping, grinding, and turning.
2. Each member contributes one advantage and one limitation for each process.
3. Summarise findings in a comparison table.
4. Exchange tables with another group for peer review.

Portfolio Note

Include your table and peer feedback.

UNDERSTANDING GRINDING OPERATIONS

Grinding is a process used to remove small amounts of material from a workpiece so that it becomes smoother, more accurately shaped, or has a better finish. This is done using a tool called a grinding wheel, which spins very quickly and is made from tiny, hard particles that act like sandpaper. Grinding is usually done after other machining processes, such as turning or milling, to make the surface even more precise and smooth. ***Figure 6.22*** depicts a surface grinding machine with labelled parts.

Sometimes, grinding is also used as the main method for shaping very hard or fragile materials that are difficult to cut with ordinary tools. Grinding is very important in manufacturing because it helps create parts with very exact sizes and very smooth surfaces. This is especially needed in industries like automotive, aerospace, and toolmaking, where parts need to fit together perfectly. Grinding is also used to sharpen tools, remove unwanted material from tough surfaces, and make edges smooth.

There are different types of grinding, namely:

1. Surface grinding – used to make flat surfaces.
2. Cylindrical grinding – used for round parts, like rods or shafts.
3. Centreless grinding – used for making lots of round parts quickly, without needing to hold the part in the centre.

4. Other types include internal grinding (for inside surfaces) and tool and cutter grinding (for sharpening cutting tools).

In summary, grinding is a key process in making parts that are smooth, accurate, and ready to be used in machines and tools.



Figure 6.22: Showing a surface grinding machine with labelled parts

PRINCIPLES AND STEPS OF GRINDING OPERATIONS

Grinding is a process used to make metal parts smooth and the right size. The main idea is simple: a special wheel, called a grinding wheel, spins very fast. This wheel has many tiny, sharp pieces on its surface. When the spinning wheel touches the metal part, it scrapes off small bits from the surface, making it smooth and even. The grinding wheel is made up of sharp grains that are stuck together.

As the wheel turns and some grains wear out or break, new sharp grains appear. This means the wheel always stays ready to cut. Grinding is done on a machine that has important parts: the grinding wheel, a device to hold the workpiece (like a magnet for flat pieces or a rotating holder for round shapes), a strong base, and controls to set how fast the wheel moves and how much it cuts. In surface grinding, the wheel moves back and forth over the top of a flat piece. In cylindrical grinding, the part itself turns while the wheel moves across it.

Figure 6.23 illustrates the different types of cylindrical grinding (namely, (a) traverse feed grinding, (b) plunge grinding, and (c) a combination of both) while also showing that the three main grinding processes are surface grinding, cylindrical grinding (which can be external or internal), and centreless grinding; in cylindrical grinding, the workpiece rotates about a fixed axis as its surfaces are machined.

Grinding usually follows these steps.

1. Get the workpiece ready and fix it tightly on the machine. A magnet is often used for flat pieces.
2. Choose the right grinding wheel depending on how hard the metal is and how smooth the finish needs to be.
3. Dress the wheel, which means making it sharp and clean for cutting.
4. Set the machine controls for speed, feed rate, and depth of cut. These must be set carefully to avoid damage.
5. Switch on the machine and start grinding, making several passes to get the right size and smoothness. A coolant is often used to keep things cool and reduce friction.
6. When finished, stop the machine, check the part using measuring tools, and clean up any dust. If there are sharp edges left, smooth them out (de-burring).

Grinding is important in making metal parts because it helps create surfaces that are both smooth and the exact size needed.

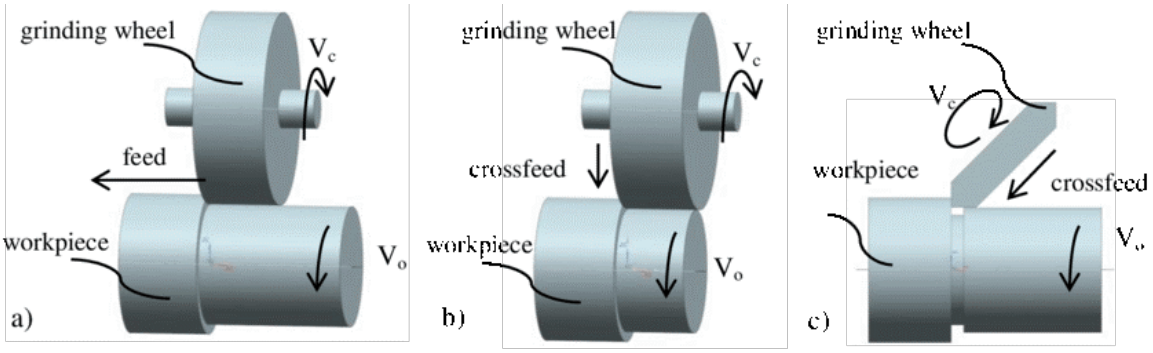


Figure 6.23: Types of cylindrical grinding: (a) traverse feed grinding, (b) plunge grinding, (c) a combination of both previous types. There are several types of grinding processes, but the three basic grinding processes are as follows: (i) surface grinding, (ii) cylindrical grinding (both external and internal), (iii) centreless grinding. In cylindrical grinding, the manufactured part rotates about a fixed axis, and the machined surfaces are https://www.researchgate.net/figure/Types-of-cylindrical-grinding-a-traverse-feed-grinding-b-plunge-grinding-c-a_fig1_308072871

PERFORM A MATERIAL REMOVAL PROCESS USING A LATHE MACHINE

PERFORMING A MATERIAL REMOVAL PROCESS USING A LATHE MACHINE

Understanding how to use a lathe machine to remove material is a key skill in manufacturing. This process helps shape raw materials into important machine parts. The following are the main steps involved in performing a material removal process with a lathe machine:

1. Select a suitable material, usually a round bar made of steel, aluminium, or plastic.

2. Cut the material to a suitable length and securely fix it in the machine's chuck.
3. Attach the cutting tool and adjust it so it sits at the same height as the centre of the bar.
4. Set important machine parameters: spindle speed (how fast the bar spins), feed rate (how quickly the tool moves), and depth of cut (how much material is removed per pass).
5. Switch on the machine and begin the cutting operation. Use different operations such as facing (to make the end flat) or turning (to shape or thin the bar).
6. Apply coolant if needed to prevent overheating and to remove chips.
7. After achieving the desired shape or size, stop the machine and use measuring tools like callipers or micrometres to check the part.
8. If necessary, make more precise cuts for a better finish.
9. Retract the tool, remove the finished part from the chuck, and clean up the workspace.

Learning these steps helps develop practical skills in measurement, machine setup, and safety, as well as an understanding of how raw materials are turned into useful machine components.

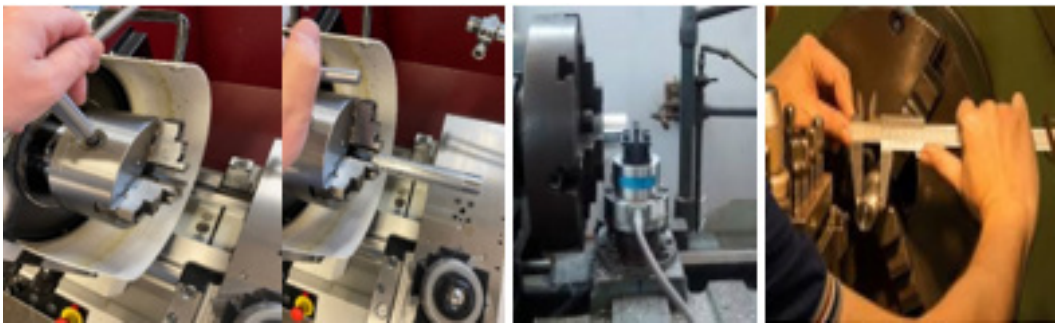


Figure 6.24: (a) setting up a workpiece in the chuck, (b) tool being aligned to centre height, (c) cutting tool performing a turning or facing operation, (d) finished part with measurement being taken using a calliper. https://openwa.pressbooks.pub/intromachining1/chapter/wa10-5/

A video demonstration of lathe machine operations, including facing, turning, grooving, and knurling, can be viewed using this link: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=SvlZHHDXCZs

Activity 6.14 Grinding Operations Video Exploration

Aim: To observe surface and cylindrical grinding operations, focusing on machine setup, safety measures, and the sequence of grinding steps.

Mode of Work: Independent

Materials/Resources

- Curated videos

a. SURFACE GRINDING part 1, basic principals, wheel dressing ... – Introduces surface grinding basics, wheel dressing, and feeds.
b. Surface Grinder Basics operation – Demonstrates setup, measurement, and safe operation.
c. What is Cylindrical Grinding? || THORS Cylindrical Grinding ... – Explains cylindrical grinding fundamentals.
d. Set up and use of the cylindrical grinder – Shows practical setup and operation for straight and taper grinding.
e. PART 1 CYLINDRICAL GRINDER 101, components, grinding ... – Breaks down grinder components and functions.
f. OD Grinder Basics- How to grind fast and accurate. – Tips for speed, accuracy, and avoiding errors.
g. The 3 Types of Cylindrical Grinding – Outlines plain, universal, and centreless cylindrical grinding.

- Notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Watch at least one surface grinding and one cylindrical grinding video.
2. Record at least three key observations for each process, focusing on setup, safety, and step sequence.
3. Share your observations with a peer and discuss differences between the two processes.

Portfolio Note

Include your observation notes and any peer feedback.

Activity 6.15 Textbook Deep Dive – Grinding Principles

Aim: To understand grinding principles, types, and applications in manufacturing.

Mode of Work: Independent

Materials/Resources

- Engineering workshop textbook
- Library or reputable online sources
- Notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Read about grinding principles, types (surface, cylindrical, centreless), and applications.
2. Summarise in your own words when and why grinding is used in manufacturing.

3. Exchange summaries with a classmate for clarity and completeness.

Portfolio Note

Add your summary and peer feedback.

Activity 6.16 Concept Map Creation – Machining Processes

Aim: To visually connect grinding with other machining processes.

Mode of Work: Independent

Resources: Notes from Activities 1 and 2, Notebook or concept mapping software

Instructions

1. Create a concept map linking turning, milling, drilling, and grinding.
2. For each process, note:
    a. Tool type
    b. Method of material removal
    c. Typical surface finish
3. Use your video and reading notes to make clear connections.
4. Share your concept map with a peer for suggestions.

Portfolio Note

Include your concept map and feedback.

Activity 6.17 Lathe Operations Video Observation

Aim: To observe and understand the sequence, techniques, and safety considerations for facing, turning, grooving, and knurling on the lathe.

Mode of Work: Independent or pairs

Materials/Resources

- Videos
    a. Lathe machine operation Facing, Turning, Grooving and ... – Demonstrates the four key operations in sequence.
    b. All Lathe Machine Operations: Turning, Facing, Taper Turning ... – Shows a wide range of lathe processes with clear visuals.
    c. Lathe Machine Operation | Facing | Taper Turning | Step ... – Covers step turning, taper turning, knurling, and grooving.
    d. Lathe operations Part-2 | Under-cutting | Grooving |Knurling ... – Focuses on grooving and knurling techniques.

e. lathe machine operation | Facing |Turning| Grooving ... – Includes practical demonstrations of multiple operations.

f. All lathe operations explained with diagram #latheoperations ... – Explains each operation with diagrams for clarity.

- Notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Watch at least two videos, ensuring you cover all four operations.
2. Take notes on the sequence of steps, techniques, and any new tips.
3. Discuss your notes with a partner and compare observations.

Portfolio Note

Include your notes and peer feedback.

Activity 6.18 Textbook Deep Dive – Lathe Setup and Operations

Aim: To deepen understanding of lathe setup and material removal procedures.

Mode of Work: Independent

Resources: Recommended engineering textbooks, notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Read sections on lathe setup and operations.
2. Summarise at least three key safety or setup tips.
3. Exchange summaries with a peer for completeness.

Portfolio Note

Add your summary and peer review notes.

EXTENDED READING

- Kalpakjian, S., & Schmid, S. R. (2016). Manufacturing Engineering and Technology (7th ed.). Pearson Education.
- Groover, M. P. (2020). Fundamentals of Modern Manufacturing: Materials, Processes, and Systems (7th ed.). Wiley.
- Rao, P. N. (2018). Manufacturing Technology: Metal Cutting and Machine Tools (4th ed.). McGraw-Hill Education.
- Rao, P. N. (2018). Manufacturing Technology: Metal Cutting and Machine Tools (4th ed.). McGraw-Hill Education.

REVIEW QUESTIONS

1.

   a. Explain the role of grinding as a finishing operation following turning or milling.

   b. For each property (surface finish, dimensional accuracy, material properties):

      i. Give one example of a manufactured component where grinding is employed to achieve the desired property (e.g., automotive camshaft, precision bearing race).

      ii. State one advantage of using grinding, overturning, or milling for achieving this property, with reference to the specific component.

2. Compare and contrast the advantages and limitations of grinding versus turning or milling.

   a. Give one example scenario where grinding is superior to other machining processes.

   b. Explain why grinding provides better results in this scenario, considering surface finish, dimensional accuracy, or material properties.



SECTION

7

SAFETY AND QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN MANUFACTURING



Manufacturing tools, equipment and processes

Safety, Quality and the Environment

INTRODUCTION

Quality control and quality assurance are important steps in making sure products from factories are safe and meet the right standards. This means checking products during and after production to find and fix any problems. There are strict rules from national bodies like the Ghana Standards Authority and international groups such as ISO. If a company does not follow these rules, it can be fined or made to correct its mistakes. These rules help keep workers safe, protect the public, and make sure Ghanaian products can be sold in other countries. Factories must also think about how their actions affect the environment, such as waste and energy use. By following these standards and laws, manufacturers help ensure that their products are high quality, safe, and made in a way that is good for people and the environment.

KEY IDEAS

- Adherence to both national and international safety standards is fundamental in ensuring the quality and safety of manufactured goods.
- National guidelines, such as those set by the Ghana Standards Authority (GSA), require regular safety tests, workplace inspections, and compliance with occupational health and safety practices.
- International standards, including those from ISO, ASTM, and IEC, facilitate global product acceptance by requiring rigorous testing, documentation, and third-party certification.
- Product safety tests encompass mechanical, electrical, and chemical checks to verify materials, components, and finished goods are free from defects and safe for use.
- Quality control in manufacturing relies on systematic testing, inspection, and record-keeping to ensure products conform to regulatory requirements and protect consumers, workers, and the environment.
- Understanding the principles and application of safety tests equips students for responsible participation in the manufacturing industry.

SAFETY TESTS BASED ON NATIONAL AND INTERNATIONAL GUIDELINES AND PRINCIPLES

Quality control in manufacturing means checking that products are safe, work well, and are reliable before they reach customers (***Figure 7.1***). To do this, companies carry out safety tests on the materials, parts, and finished products. These tests help make sure there are no dangerous faults or defects. The rules for these tests come from both Ghanaian and international organisations, which set guidelines to protect workers, customers, and the environment. Knowing how and why these safety tests are done is important for anyone planning to work in manufacturing.



Figure 7.1: Quality control overview

SAFETY TESTS FOR MANUFACTURING PROCESSES BASED ON NATIONAL GUIDELINES AND PRINCIPLES

In Ghana and many other countries, government groups like the Ghana Standards Authority (GSA) make rules to keep products and factories safe. These rules tell companies how to check if their products and the places where they are made are safe and of good quality. For example, companies must test raw materials to make sure they are strong and clean, check machines to be certain they are safe to use, and look at finished products to confirm they do not cause harm before selling them to customers. ***Figure 7.3*** presents a sample product certification by the Ghana Standards Authority (GSA)

There are different types of safety tests. Mechanical strength tests check if materials, such as metals and plastics, are strong enough and will not break when used. Electrical safety tests make sure that machines and tools will not give someone an electric shock or start a fire. Chemical tests are done to see if materials contain dangerous substances.

For example, when a company in Ghana makes cooking pots, the metal is tested to make sure it does not have too much lead or other harmful chemicals. ***Figure 7.2*** shows a product testing process diagram for product launch.

National safety rules are not just about products; they also focus on keeping workers safe in factories. Companies must check their machines regularly, make sure workers use protective gear, and train everyone to follow safe ways of working. All these checks are part of Occupational Health and Safety (OHS), a system designed to stop accidents and keep everyone safe at work.

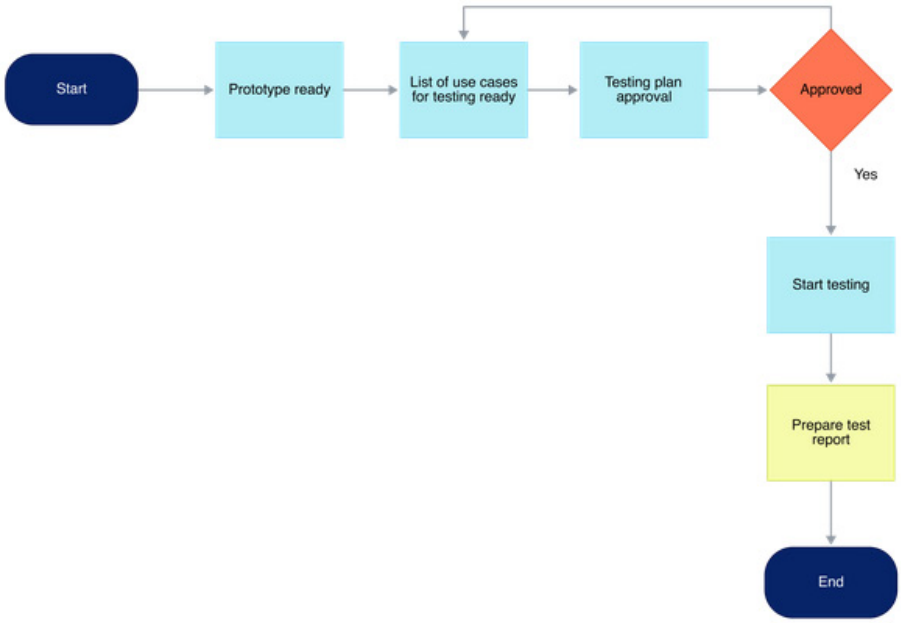


Figure 7.2: A product testing process diagram for product launch


GHANA STANDARDS AUTHORITY

GSA

LICENCE

To use the Certification Mark of the Authority

Cert. No. GSA-PCM-L-A-671-001

THE AUTHORITY HEREBY GRANTS TO

SONAPACK GHANA LIMITED

of HEAVY INDUSTRIAL AREA, TEMA, GREATER ACCRA REGION

Hereinafter called the Licensee the right and licence to use the registered Certification Mark of the Authority set out in the second column of the Schedule hereto upon and in respect of the goods set out in the third column of the said Schedule which are produced by the Licensee in accordance with the appropriate Ghana Standards referred to in the fourth column of the said Schedule as from time to time amended.

The licence is granted subject to the Ghana Standards (Certification Mark) Rules, 1970 (L.I. 662) as amended in respect of the Mark and to any undertakings into which the Licensee has been required to enter with the Authority prior to the grant of the licence and it shall be binding upon the Licensee duly to observe and perform all the said Rules and Undertakings.

Signed for and on behalf of the Authority

Date of Issue: 2021-06-24

Date of Expiry: 2022-06-23

DIRECTOR GENERAL

SCHEDULE

Mark of Conformity	Goods in respect of which the use of Mark granted	Ghana Standards according to which the goods are to be produced
LIC. NO.: GSA-PCM-L-A-671-001 STD. NO.: GS 170	CORRUGATED FIBERBOARD BOXES (3PLY & 5PLY)	GS 170: 2020

P. O. Box MB 245, Accra, Ghana, Okponglo near Tetteh Quarshie Interchange

Figure 7.3: Sample product certification by the Ghana Standards Authority (GSA)
https://www.gsa.gov.gh/product-certification/

SAFETY TESTS FOR MANUFACTURING PROCESSES BASED ON INTERNATIONAL GUIDELINES AND PRINCIPLES

When companies want to sell their products in other countries or prove their products are high quality, they must follow international safety rules. These rules are created by groups like the International Organisation for Standardisation (ISO), the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM), and the International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC). By following these rules, companies make sure their products are safe to use anywhere in the world and work as they should.

One important rule is called ISO 9001, which helps companies manage quality and check product safety. Another is ISO 45001, which focuses on keeping workers safe. International safety tests include checks for how strong a product is, whether it can catch fire easily, and how long it lasts. For example, if a company makes helmets, it must test them to make sure they protect people's heads according to ISO standards. ***Figure 7.4*** portrays the CE mark used in Europe for certification and the ISO 9001 certification log.

Companies also need to keep clear records of what materials they use, what safety tests they do, and the results. This helps them fix problems, recall unsafe products, and keep improving. Sometimes, outside experts check the products to make sure they truly meet international safety standards before they are allowed to be sold in other countries.



Figure 7.4: CE mark used in Europe for certification and ISO 9001 certification log

https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/CE_marking#/media/File:Broadcom_WLL6230B-D99-4014.jpg

https://www.shutterstock.com/image-vector/iso-9001-label-stamp-vector-on-2260390921

PENALTY AND CRITERIA FOR CORRECTIVE ACTIONS

Manufacturing companies must follow certain rules to keep the environment, workers, and the public safe. In Ghana, the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) makes sure companies do not pollute or use harmful chemicals in the wrong way. If a company breaks these rules or causes harm, the EPA can punish them or require them to fix the problem. These punishments and required actions are meant to stop companies from repeating the same mistakes and to make sure manufacturing is done in a safe and responsible way.

CRITERIA FOR CORRECTIVE ACTIONS ACCORDING TO EPA STANDARDS

Corrective actions are steps that a company must take if it breaks environmental rules. The Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) of Ghana uses clear rules to decide what these steps should be, so that the actions are fair and match how serious the problem is. If a company causes major harm, such as releasing dangerous chemicals into water or air, the EPA will demand strong and quick action (***Figure 7.5***). If the issue is less serious, like poor record-keeping, the required steps might not be as strict.

The EPA also thinks about how much harm was caused to people or the environment. For example, if a chemical spill could affect a nearby town, the company will need to fix the problem quickly (***Figure 7.6***). Other things the EPA considers include whether the company has broken the rules before, if they are ready to help solve the problem, and whether the mistake was on purpose or by accident. Depending on these points, the EPA may tell the company to clean up pollution, use safer materials, improve waste treatment, or teach workers about protecting the environment. Sometimes, the company must write a plan explaining how it will solve the problem and when it will be done.

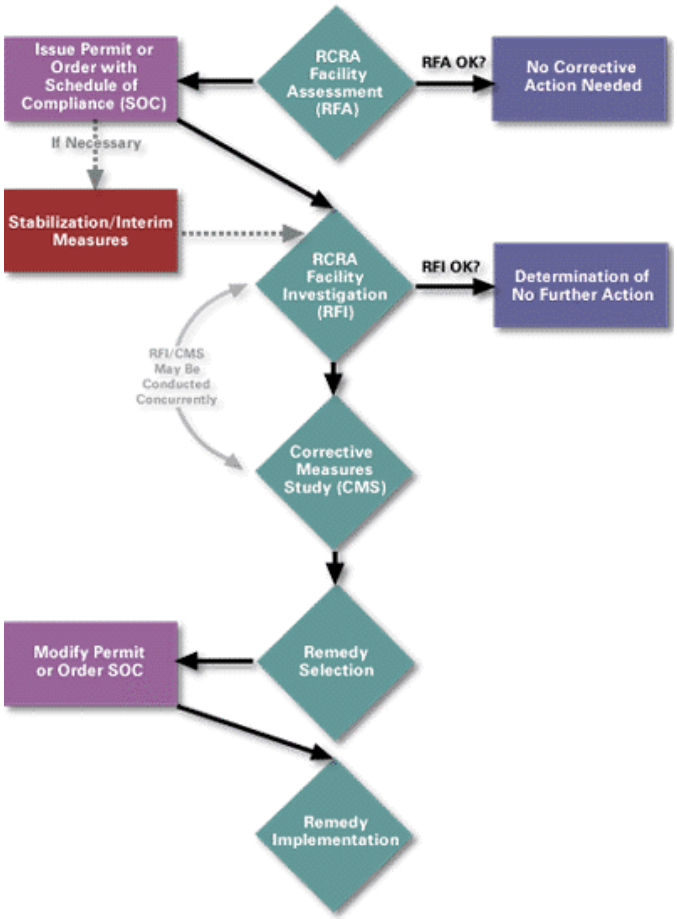


Figure 7.5: Sample flowchart of an EPA Corrective Action Process, https://www3.epa.gov/region07/waste/correctiveactionsflow.htm



Figure 7.6: Environmental clean-up efforts at a factory site. Breakage of oil in the quarry of a drainage tank for pumping wastewater
https://www.istockphoto.com/photo/breakage-of-oil-in-the-quarry-of-a-drainage-tank-for-pumping-waste-water-gm843147370-137729993?searchscope=image%2Cfilm

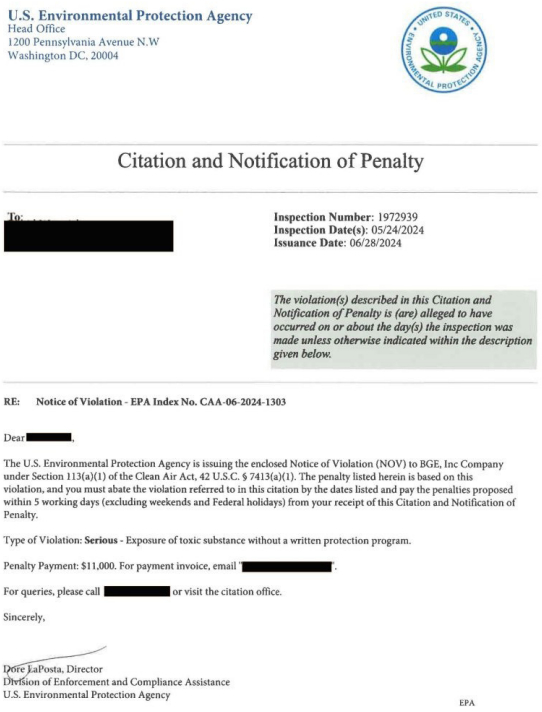
PENALTY ACCORDING TO EPA STANDARDS

Penalties are punishments given to companies that break environmental laws. These punishments are not just to make companies pay, but to make sure they follow the rules and help protect the environment in the future. In Ghana, the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) uses the Environmental Sanctions Regulations (L.I. 2251 of 2016) to decide what kind of penalty a company should get, depending on how serious the problem is.

A common punishment is a fine, which means the company must pay money. For example, if a factory pours dirty water or chemicals into a river without cleaning them first, the EPA can make them pay a fine. The amount depends on how much waste was released, how badly the environment is harmed, and how big the problem is. In Ghana, these fines can be from a few hundred to several thousand Ghana cedis. Sometimes, the EPA also makes the company pay for the cost of cleaning up the pollution, which can be very expensive. **Figure 7.9** illustrates that the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) shut down the Non-Ferrous Metal company and revoked the permit for environmental violations.

If the problem is very serious, the EPA can stop the company from working by suspending or taking away its environmental permit. This means the company must close until it solves the problem. If the company does something illegal, like dumping dangerous waste in secret, the case can go to court. The people in charge of the company can even be sent to prison if found guilty. **Figures 7.7** and **7.8** display a sample US Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) penalty notice.

Sometimes, the EPA will tell the public about the company's bad actions by announcing it in newspapers or on the radio. This can damage the company's good name and make others think twice before breaking the rules.



U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
Head Office
1200 Pennsylvania Avenue N.W
Washington DC, 20004

Citation and Notification of Penalty

To: [redacted]

Inspection Number: 1972939
Inspection Date(s): 05/24/2024
Issuance Date: 06/28/2024

The violation(s) described in this Citation and Notification of Penalty is (are) alleged to have occurred on or about the day(s) the inspection was made unless otherwise indicated within the description given below.

RE: Notice of Violation - EPA Index No. CAA-06-2024-1303

Dear [redacted],

The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency is issuing the enclosed Notice of Violation (NOV) to BGE, Inc Company under Section 113(a)(1) of the Clean Air Act, 42 U.S.C. § 7413(a)(1). The penalty listed herein is based on this violation, and you must abate the violation referred to in this citation by the dates listed and pay the penalties proposed within 5 working days (excluding weekends and Federal holidays) from your receipt of this Citation and Notification of Penalty.

Type of Violation: **Serious** - Exposure of toxic substance without a written protection program.

Penalty Payment: $11,000. For payment invoice, email [redacted].

For queries, please call [redacted] or visit the citation office.

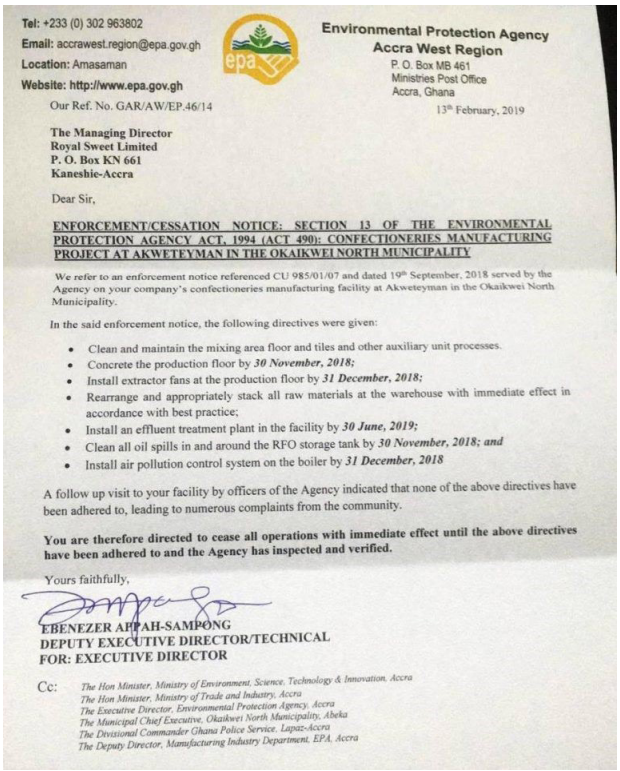
Sincerely,

Dore LaPosta, Director
Division of Enforcement and Compliance Assistance
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency

EPA

Figure 7.7: Sample US Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) penalty notice, a graph showing penalty categories by type of violation, or a photo of a factory shut down due to EPA enforcement.

https://www.epa.gov/enforcement/information-related-fraudulent-epa-notice-violation-letters



Tel: +233 (0) 302 963802
Email: accrawest.region@epa.gov.gh
Location: Amasaman
Website: http://www.epa.gov.gh

Environmental Protection Agency
Accra West Region
P. O. Box MB 461
Ministries Post Office
Accra, Ghana

Our Ref. No. GAR/AW/EP.46/14

13th February, 2019

The Managing Director
Royal Sweet Limited
P. O. Box KN 661
Kaneshie-Accra

Dear Sir,

ENFORCEMENT/CESSATION NOTICE: SECTION 13 OF THE ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY ACT, 1994 (ACT 490): CONFECTIONERIES MANUFACTURING PROJECT AT AKWETEYMAN IN THE OKAIKWEI NORTH MUNICIPALITY

We refer to an enforcement notice referenced CU 985/01/07 and dated 19th September, 2018 served by the Agency on your company's confectioneries manufacturing facility at Akweteyman in the Okaikwei North Municipality.

In the said enforcement notice, the following directives were given:

- Clean and maintain the mixing area floor and tiles and other auxiliary unit processes.
- Concrete the production floor by ***30 November, 2018;***
- Install extractor fans at the production floor by ***31 December, 2018;***
- Rearrange and appropriately stack all raw materials at the warehouse with immediate effect in accordance with best practice;
- Install an effluent treatment plant in the facility by ***30 June, 2019;***
- Clean all oil spills in and around the RFO storage tank by ***30 November, 2018; and***
- Install air pollution control system on the boiler by ***31 December, 2018***

A follow up visit to your facility by officers of the Agency indicated that none of the above directives have been adhered to, leading to numerous complaints from the community.

You are therefore directed to cease all operations with immediate effect until the above directives have been adhered to and the Agency has inspected and verified.

Yours faithfully,

EBENEZER APPAH-SAMPONG
DEPUTY EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR/TECHNICAL
FOR: EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR

Cc: *The Hon Minister, Ministry of Environment, Science, Technology & Innovation, Accra*
The Hon Minister, Ministry of Trade and Industry, Accra
The Executive Director, Environmental Protection Agency, Accra
The Municipal Chief Executive, Okaikwei North Municipality, Abeka
The Divisional Commander Ghana Police Service, Lapaz-Accra
The Deputy Director, Manufacturing Industry Department, EPA, Accra

Figure 7.8: Sample Ghana Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) penalty notice to Royal Sweets



Figure 7.9: Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) shuts down Non-Ferrous Metal company and revoked the permit for environmental violations

Activity 7.1 Watch & List – What is Quality Control?

Aim: To grasp the basic purpose and importance of quality control in manufacturing.

Mode of Work: Individual

Materials/Resources

- Internet access (YouTube or university video platforms)
- Notebook and pen

Suggested Videos

1. Inspection and Quality control in Manufacturing #inspection ... – Explains inspection types, fundamentals of statistical quality control, and why QC is essential.
2. What is Quality Control? – Gives a concise overview of QC goals and methods.
3. What Is Manufacturing Quality Control? - How It Comes Together – Shows how QC integrates into the production process.
4. What Is Quality Control In Manufacturing ... – Covers defining quality standards, control charts, and continuous improvement.
5. Introduction to Quality Control – Details QC types, benefits, and examples.
6. Manufacturing Quality Assurance – QA Best Practices for SMEs – Links QC to QA systems and continuous improvement culture.

Instructions

1. Watch one or more of the suggested videos (5–10 minutes total).
2. Make a list of:
   a. Three key reasons why quality control matters.
   b. Two common QC methods used in manufacturing.
3. Write one example of a product that could fail without proper QC.
4. Share key insights or video recommendations with classmates via your course forum or group chat.

Portfolio Note

Include your list and product example, plus links to the videos you watched.

Activity 7.2 Compare Standards – Local vs Global

Aim: To understand the difference between national and international quality standards.

Mode of Work: Individual

Materials/ Resources: Textbook or internet access, notebook or digital device

Instructions

1. Research the Ghana Standards Authority (GSA) and the International Organisation for Standardisation (ISO).
2. Create a two-column table:
   a. Column 1: Three features/rules of GSA standards for a common product.
   b. Column 2: Three features/rules of ISO standards for a similar product.
3. Write a short paragraph (3–4 sentences) explaining one key difference and why it matters for manufacturers.
4. Compare your table and paragraph with a peer for completeness and clarity.

Portfolio Note

Add your table and paragraph to your portfolio.

Activity 7.3 Revision – Social and Environmental Impacts

Aim: To connect your understanding of manufacturing's social, economic, and environmental consequences.

Mode of Work: Individual

Materials/Resources

Year 1 Learner Manual, notes or textbooks

Year 2 Learner Manual, notes or textbooks, notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Review your Year 1 and Year 2 materials.
2. Summarise in your own words:
    a. How manufacturing activities can affect individuals and society (e.g., jobs, health, local economy).
    b. Environmental impacts such as waste disposal, energy use, and pollution.
3. Write a 4–6 sentence paragraph highlighting:
    a. One key social/economic consequence
    b. One key environmental consequence
4. Share your paragraph with a peer for feedback.

Portfolio Note

Include your paragraph and any peer comments.

Activity 7.4 Case Study Video Analysis – Regulatory Intervention

Aim: To observe real-world examples of regulatory intervention in manufacturing.

Mode of Work: Individual

Materials/Resources: Internet access (YouTube or news platforms), notebook and pen

Suggested videos

1. What Is An EPA Violation? - CountyOffice.org – Explains what constitutes an EPA violation, with examples and consequences.
2. Styrofoam Packs: Government to phase out 'take-away' as ... – Shows enforcement of environmental bans and their impact on manufacturers.
3. The Pulse || EPA shuts down Non-Ferrous Metal Ltd. and ... – Demonstrates a factory shutdown due to poor environmental compliance, including penalties and worker health checks.

4. Ban on Plastics: EPA to enforce ban starting with ... – Highlights regulatory action on plastic bans and its implications for industry.
5. EPA's Recent Efforts to Address Tampering of Diesel Vehicles ... – Details enforcement against emissions tampering, showing penalties and corrective measures.
6. The EPA has reportedly drafted a plan to eliminate all limits on ... – Discusses proposed regulatory changes and their potential impact on manufacturing oversight.

Instructions

1. Watch at least one of the suggested videos.
2. Note
    a. What violation occurred
    b. Penalties or corrective actions imposed
    c. Impact on the company and community
3. Summarise your findings in bullet points.
4. Share your bullet points with a peer and compare observations.

Portfolio Note

Include your bullet points and video link(s).

Activity 7.5 Penalty Criteria Research

Aim: To understand how agencies determine penalties for environmental violations.

Mode of Work: Individual

Resources: Textbook or reliable internet sources (e.g., EPA Ghana website), notebook or digital device

Instructions

1. Research the main criteria used to decide penalties (e.g., severity, potential harm, company history, cooperation).
2. Create a set with at least four criteria, each with:
    a. Short explanation
    b. Real or hypothetical example
3. Exchange tables with a peer for completeness and accuracy.

Portfolio Note

Include your table and peer feedback.

Activity 7.6 Corrective Action Poster Creation

Aim: To visualise steps for regulatory compliance after a violation.

Mode of Work: Individual

Materials/Resources: Internet access or textbooks, poster paper or digital design tools

Instructions

1. Choose a common manufacturing violation (e.g., chemical spill, air pollution).
2. Research EPArecommended corrective actions for that violation.
3. Create a poster or infographic showing:
    a. The violation
    b. Immediate corrective actions
    c. Longterm prevention strategies
    d. Any penalties involved
4. Share your poster with a classmate or upload it for peer review.

Portfolio note

Include your poster and peer review notes.

ROLE OF QUALITY CONTROL IN MANUFACTURING

Quality control means carefully checking products during manufacturing to make sure they are the right size, shape, and strength, and that they look good and are safe to use. It is all about making sure the products are made properly and work as they should. If quality control is not done, products might have problems or faults, which could upset customers, cause safety risks, or waste materials. By using quality control, companies can avoid mistakes, keep a good reputation, make customers trust them, and ensure their products are safe to use.

FUNDAMENTAL CONCEPTS OF QUALITY CONTROL

Using environmentally friendly processes and products in manufacturing means making things in ways that do not harm the environment. This can include using less energy or water, making less waste, and choosing materials that are safe for people and nature. The benefits of doing this are many. It helps protect the air, water, and land from pollution. It also saves money in the long run, because companies use fewer

resources and avoid fines for polluting. When companies care for the environment, it builds trust with customers and helps them follow important laws and standards. In short, making products in an environmentally friendly way is good for people, the planet, and business.

Quality control is about making sure every product made in the factory is the same and meets the right standard (Figure 7.10). This means checking that the product looks and works as it should. Two main ideas are important here. First, products must match the design and rules set at the start—this is called conformance to requirements. Second, it is better to stop problems before they happen (prevention) than to find and fix them later (inspection). Quality control also uses information and measurements collected during production to make decisions. By keeping good records, companies can quickly spot and fix problems. This is called data-driven decision-making.



Figure 7.10: Quality control process (Authors' construct)

QUALITY CONTROL PROCESSES

Quality control is not just one task, but a set of steps that help make sure products are made correctly. First, clear rules are set, based on what customers want, what the company expects, or what the country requires. Next, products are checked during and after they are made, using special tools to measure if they meet the right standards. The results are then compared with the rules. If something does not match, this is called a "deviation" or "non-conformance", and steps are taken to fix the problem. Finally, the information from these checks is used to make the process better for the future. This helps ensure that products keep improving and meet the right quality every time. A flowchart of standards setting, measuring, comparing, correcting, and improving can be seen in ***Figure 7.11***.

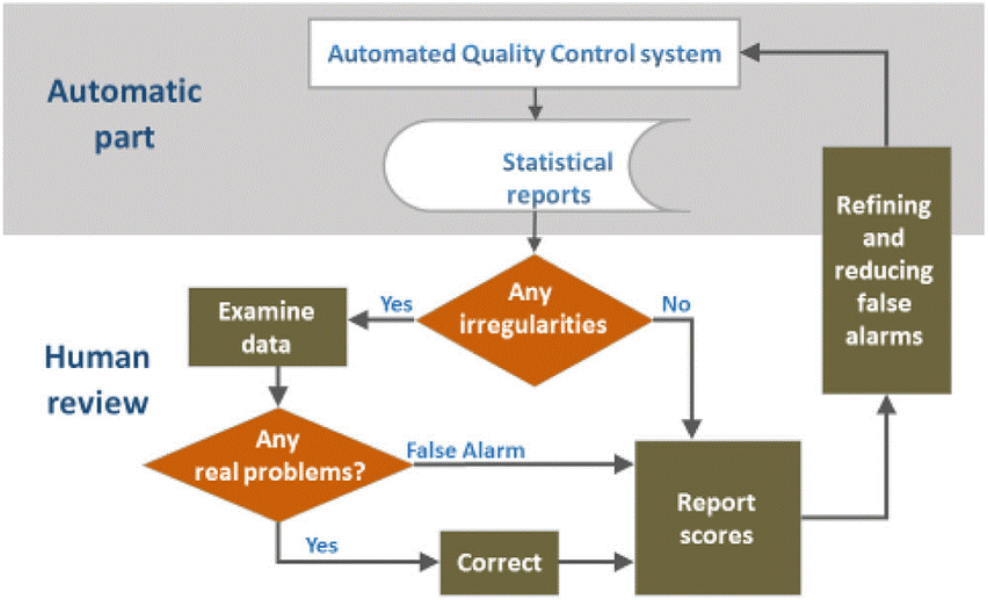


Figure 7.11: A flowchart of standards setting, measuring, comparing, correcting, and improving



Figure 7.12: Quality control processes (Authors' construct)

QUALITY CONTROL TOOLS AND TECHNIQUES

There are simple tools used in quality control to help find and fix problems in products. These include:

1. Check sheet: This is a form used to collect and write down information about how products are made or if there are any mistakes.
2. Histogram: This is a type of bar chart that shows how often different results or problems happen. It helps to see patterns or trends in the data.

3. Control chart: This chart helps to track changes in product quality over time, making it easier to see if something is going wrong during production.
4. Cause-and-effect diagram (fishbone diagram): This tool is used to find out why a problem happened by showing all the possible reasons clearly.

These tools are used by teams in factories or during investigations when something goes wrong. They help everyone understand the problem clearly so they can decide how to fix it. An image of quality control tools and techniques can be seen in ***Figure 7.13***.

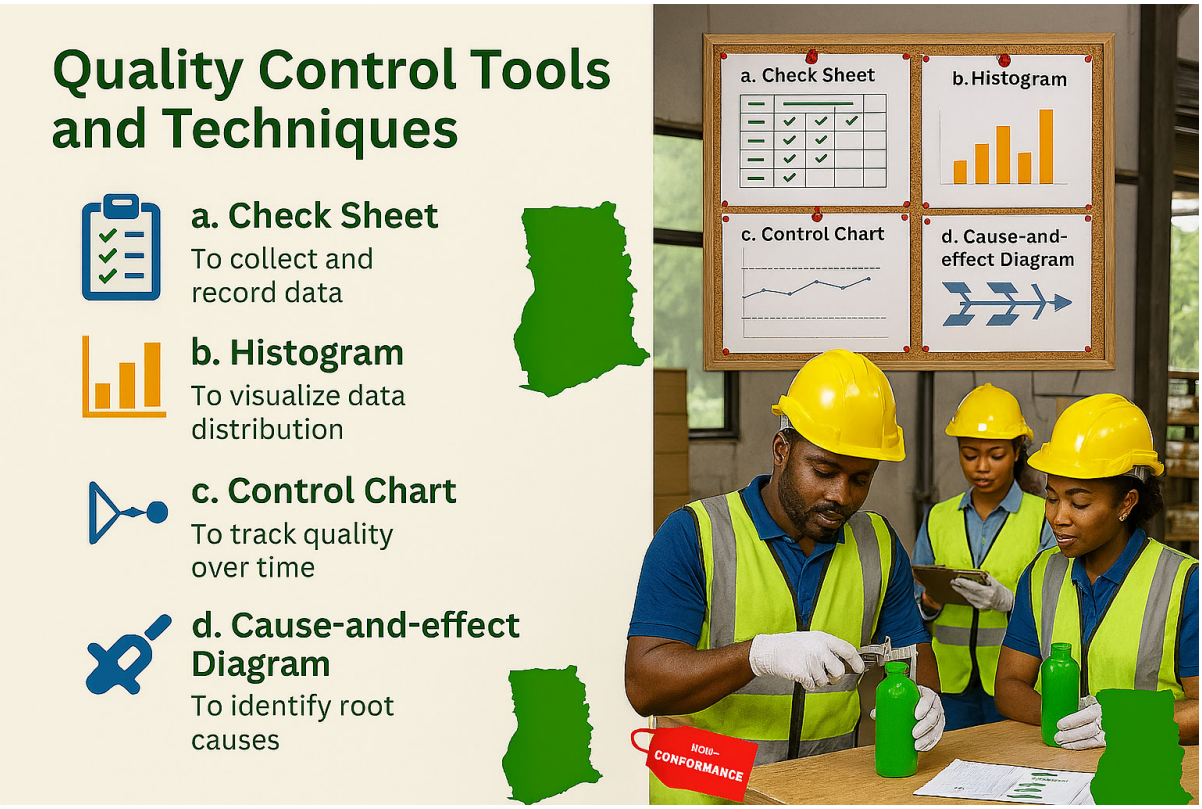


Figure 7.13: Quality control tools and techniques (Authors' construct)

QUALITY STANDARDS AND CERTIFICATIONS

Many companies want people to trust their products, so they follow special rules called quality standards. One important set of rules used all over the world is called ISO 9001. These rules help companies organise how they check and improve the quality of what they make. In Ghana, the Ghana Standards Authority (GSA) sets local rules for quality. If a company follows these rules properly, experts check their work and give them a certificate to show they meet the standards. When a company is certified, customers are more likely to trust their products, and the company can sell to more people. Quality standards help make sure products are always safe, good, and reliable (Figure 7.14).



Figure 7.14: Quality standards and certifications (Authors' construct)

QUALITY CONTROL IN MANUFACTURING

In factories, quality control means checking products at every step, starting from the raw materials all the way to the finished items. Before using any materials, workers check them to make sure they are good. Machines are also checked to see that they are working properly. After products are made, they are tested before being packed. By checking all the time, problems can be found early, so factories do not end up making lots of bad products. Many factories have people called quality control inspectors. These inspectors watch the production line, collect samples of products, and make notes about how good the products are. Quality control helps factories work better and makes sure customers get good products they can trust. Figure 7.15 shows a factory floor image showing quality inspectors working alongside production staff.



Figure 7.15: A factory floor image showing quality inspectors working alongside production staff

QUALITY CONTROL SYSTEMS AND TECHNOLOGIES

Modern factories use special machines and technology to check product quality quickly and accurately. These include machines that can inspect items automatically, sensors that measure things like size, and computer programmes that collect information as products are made. For example, a sensor can check the thickness of a part while it is being made and send this information to a computer. If there is a problem, the system warns the worker right away. Some factories use computer software to draw charts and check if the manufacturing process is running smoothly. Using these technologies helps factories find and fix problems early, so they make fewer mistakes and save money. Figures 7.16 and 7.17 show an X-ray inspection machine and an automated quality control visual inspection machine, respectively.



Figure 7.16: X-ray inspection machine



Figure 7.17: An automated quality control visual inspection machine

FUNCTIONS OF QUALITY CONTROL AND QUALITY ASSURANCE IN MANUFACTURING

In manufacturing, consistently producing high-quality products is about more than just ensuring they function correctly; it also involves meeting customer expectations and prioritising safety. To achieve this, factories rely on two key approaches: Quality Control (QC) and Quality Assurance (QA) Figure 7.18). QC focuses on inspecting and testing products after they have been made to identify and correct any defects before the items reach the customer, using methods such as visual inspection, precise measurements, and specialised equipment to detect hidden faults.

On the other hand, QA is centred on planning and refining production processes to prevent errors from occurring in the first place. This involves strategies like training staff, using reliable materials, and implementing continuous improvement systems such as Plan-Do-Check-Act and Total Quality Management. Both QC and QA play essential roles: QC catches issues post-production, while QA works proactively to minimise the chances of problems arising. Working together, these functions help manufacturers deliver safe, reliable products, reduce waste, save time, keep customers satisfied, and ensure compliance with industry standards.



Figure 7.18: Relationship between QC and QA (Authors' construct)

QUALITY CONTROL METRICS AND CRITERIA

Quality control means checking important features of a product and making sure they match what is expected. These features can be things like how long or wide something is, how much it weighs, how strong it is, or how smooth the surface feels. The "standards" show the range of values that are allowed for each feature. This allowed

range is called the tolerance. For example, if a metal rod should be 20 millimetres wide, the tolerance might be plus or minus 0.1 millimetre. That means the rod is fine if it measures anywhere between 19.9 mm and 20.1 mm. If it is outside this range, it is not good enough and cannot be used. An image of a calliper for measuring a component, with tolerance limits marked, is shown in ***Figure 7.19***. By always using these rules, factories can decide fairly and accurately if a product should be kept or rejected. This helps to make sure that all products are safe and reliable for everyone who uses them.

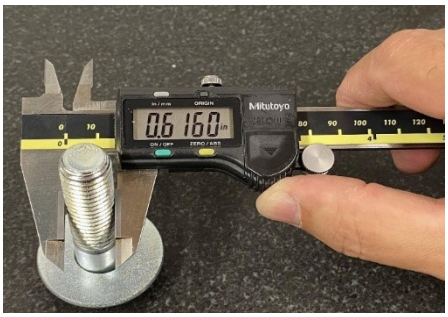


Figure 7.19: A calliper for measuring a component, with tolerance limits marked.

QUALITY CONTROL FUNCTIONS AND TECHNIQUES

The main job of quality control is to find mistakes or problems in products before they reach customers. To do this, factories use different ways to check their products. One simple way is for trained workers to look closely at each item to spot things like cracks, dents, or scratches. This is called visual inspection. Another method is measuring the size of parts using special tools such as callipers or gauges, to make sure everything is the correct size (Figure 7.20). Sometimes, factories need to find problems that cannot be seen from the outside. For this, they use special machines, like those that use sound waves or magnets, to look for hidden faults without breaking the product. Factories might also test just a few items from a big batch, instead of checking every single one, to get an idea of the overall quality. All these checks help to catch problems early, so fewer bad products are made, waste is reduced, and customers are happier.



Figure 7.20: Quality product Inspector using a vernier calliper on a factory floor

QUALITY ASSURANCE FUNCTIONS AND METHODOLOGIES

Quality assurance is all about making sure problems do not happen when making products. Instead of only checking for mistakes after things are made, quality assurance helps to stop those mistakes before and while the product is being made. This is done by planning good ways of working, teaching workers the right skills, using suitable materials, and organising the production steps so that fewer errors happen. For example, factories use a system called Plan-Do-Check-Act (PDCA), which means they plan what to do, carry it out, check how well it went, and then make improvements (Figure 7.21). Another method is called Total Quality Management (TQM), where everyone in the company helps to keep quality high. Quality assurance gives confidence that the products will meet the required standards, without depending only on checking for faults at the end.

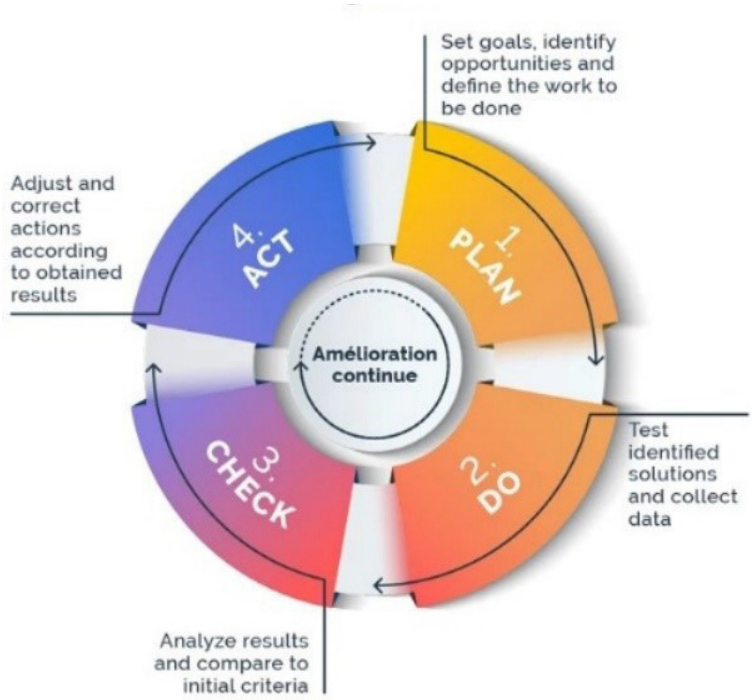


Figure 7.21: A diagram of the PDCA cycle, an example of a quality checklist used during production

HUMAN FACTORS IN QUALITY CONTROL AND QUALITY ASSURANCE

People are very important in making sure products are made well. Even though factories use modern machines and computers, the way people work, make decisions, and use their skills can affect the quality of what is produced. In quality control, workers need to be trained to see even small problems and must carefully follow the steps for checking products. In quality assurance, good results come when workers follow rules, talk about any problems they find, and share their ideas for improvement. If workers do not get enough training, work in poor conditions, or are not motivated, mistakes can happen, and product quality can drop. Because of this, companies make sure workers are well-trained, have good lighting, safe tools, and a healthy workplace. When people are supported and respected in their jobs, the quality of products improves. Figure 7.22 illustrates the role of human factors in quality control and quality assurance.

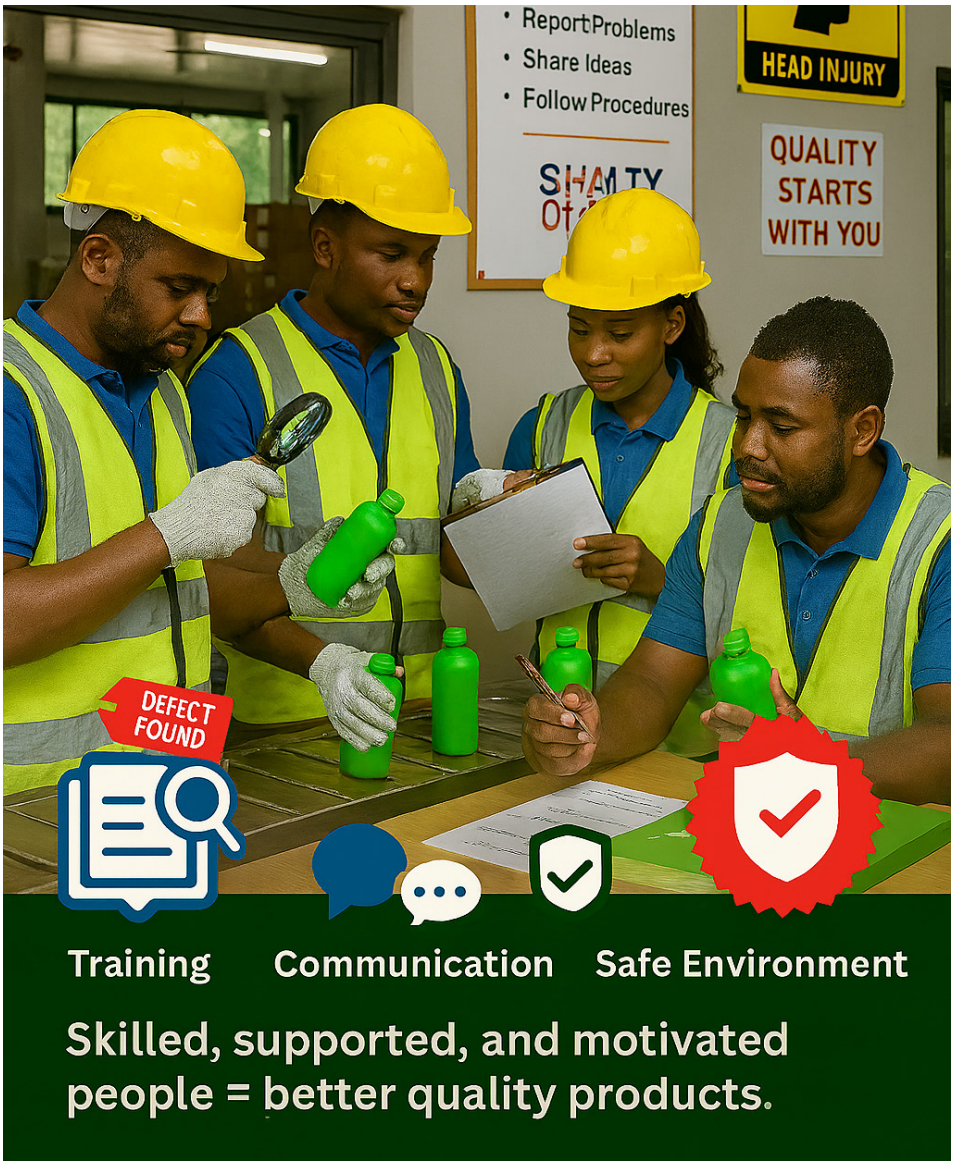


Figure 7.22: Human factors in quality control and quality assurance (Authors' construct)

ROLE OF TECHNOLOGY IN QUALITY CONTROL AND QUALITY ASSURANCE

Technology has changed the way factories ensure their products are of good quality. In quality control, modern tools like digital rulers, cameras, and machines that check items automatically help workers find problems more quickly and accurately. These machines can spot very small mistakes that people might not see.

For quality assurance, factories use computer programmes to keep track of how things are made and to check if there are any problems during production. For example, if a machine starts making parts that are too big, a sensor will notice the mistake straight away and stop the machine before too many faulty parts are made. Computers also help to collect and study information about quality, which helps factories make better decisions and improve their work in the future.

Quality control and quality assurance are both important in making sure products meet the right standards and make customers happy. Quality control is about finding

and fixing problems in the finished products. Quality assurance tries to stop problems before they happen by planning the work well, training workers, and making sure the way things are done is good. Both use special tools, good skills, and technology to keep quality high. Careful work, accurate checks, and always looking for ways to improve are all important for making good products. ***Figure 7.23*** indicates the role of technology in quality control and quality assurance.



Figure 7.23: Role of technology in quality control and quality assurance

Activity 7.7 Quality Control Video Exploration

Aim: To observe realworld quality control processes, tools, and defect detection methods in manufacturing environments.

Mode of Work: Individual, with optional smallgroup discussion

Materials/Resources: Internet access (YouTube or similar), notebook and pen

Suggested Videos

1. Virtual Plant Tour: Quality Control Lab – Shows a complete QC lab workflow, from sample intake to final reporting, highlighting inspection stations and testing equipment.
2. Precise Tool Quality Control Lab Tour – Demonstrates the use of micrometres, CMMs, and vision systems for precisionmachined parts.
3. Lilly Quality Control Laboratories Help Ensure High Quality ... – Explains pharmaceutical QC processes, including stability testing and legally binding inspections.

4. IRREGULAR DESIGN GROUP FACTORY TOUR – Offers a behindthescenes look at QC in a manufacturing line, showing integration with production.
5. A deep dive into Quality Control Laboratory in Pharmaceutical ... – Covers raw material testing, method validation, and microbiological checks.
6. Pharma Quality Control Lab: Behind the Scenes – Highlights modern lab setups, from manual inspection to advanced analytical equipment.

Instructions

1. Watch at least one of the suggested videos.
2. Take notes on the step-by-step inspection and testing procedures observed.
3. List the types of defects checked for and the equipment used (e.g., micrometers, vision systems, destructive testing rigs).
4. Discuss in small groups or write individually how these methods relate to QC functions you've learned.
5. Share your notes and defect/equipment lists with peers for comparison.

Portfolio Note

Include your notes, defect list, and discussion summary.

Activity 7.8 Textbook Standards Investigation

Aim: To understand the purpose and differences between ISO 9001, ASTM, and other quality standards, and their influence on QA/QC activities.

Mode of Work: Individual

Materials/Resources: Library or trusted online sources, notebook or digital device

Instructions

1. Research ISO 9001, ASTM, and at least one other relevant quality standard.
2. Summarise the main purpose of each in 2–4 sentences.
3. Identify and list at least two main differences between ISO 9001 and ASTM, focusing on their roles in manufacturing quality.
4. Compare how these standards might influence QA and QC activities.
5. Exchange summaries and comparisons with a peer for completeness.

Portfolio Note

Include your summaries, differences list, and comparison notes.

Activity 7.9 Defect Classification Simulation

Aim: To classify manufacturing defects and identify their root causes.

Mode of Work: Individual, with peer review

Materials/Resources

- Images/descriptions of defective products (printed or digital)
- Notebook or table template

Instructions

1. For each example, decide if the defect is due to design, material, or process.
2. Fill out a table with your reasoning for each classification.
3. Share your table with a peer or online group for feedback.

Portfolio Note

Include your completed table and peer feedback.

DECISION MAKING WITH QUALITY CONTROL DATA

QUALITY CONTROL DATA

Quality control data refers to the information collected during the manufacturing process that shows how well products or processes meet required standards (Figure 7.24). These data points include measurements such as length, weight, diameter, hardness, temperature, or time. For example, if a company is making metal rods, data may be collected on the diameter of each rod. This data is essential because it allows manufacturers to monitor consistency, detect defects, and improve product quality. Without collecting and analysing this data, companies would have no reliable way to check whether products are within acceptable limits or to make informed decisions



Figure 7.24: Quality control data in manufacturing (Authors' construct)

STATISTICAL FOUNDATIONS

Statistics is the branch of mathematics used to organise, analyse, and interpret data. In quality control, statistics help manufacturers understand variation, which refers to the natural differences that occur in materials or processes. Two common statistical terms are mean, which is the average value, and standard deviation, which tells us how spread out the data is. For example, if the average diameter of rods is 20 mm, and most rods are very close to this size, the process is under control. However, if the measurements vary widely, there may be a problem. Understanding basic statistics allows students to know when variation is normal and when it signals a deeper issue that needs to be addressed. A chart showing the normal distribution curve (bell-shaped curve) is portrayed in Figure 7.25.

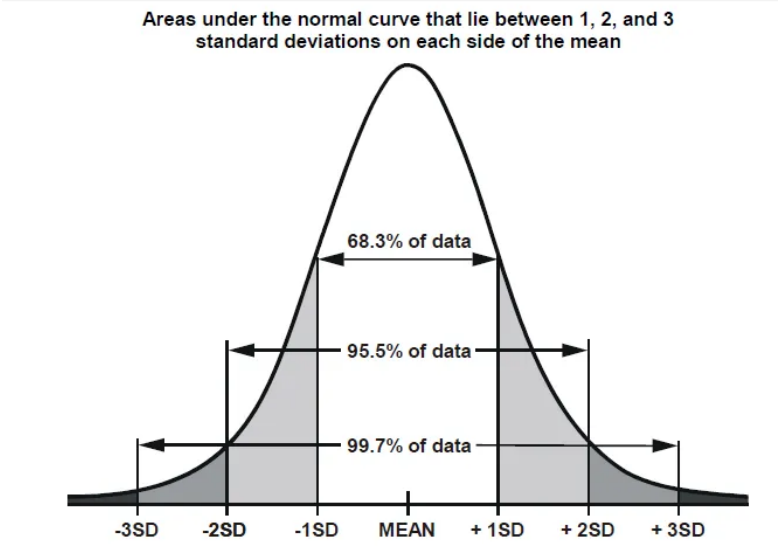


Figure 7.25: A chart showing the normal distribution curve (bell-shaped curve)

DATA COLLECTION AND MEASUREMENT

Collecting accurate data is the first step in effective quality control (Figure 7.26). In manufacturing, data can be collected using tools like vernier callipers, micrometres, pressure gauges, or thermometers. These instruments are used by trained workers or machines at different points in the production line. It is important to collect data regularly and consistently to track the performance of processes over time. The quality of the decision made depends on how accurate and complete the collected data is. If the data is wrong or missing, decisions based on it can lead to more defects and higher costs. Therefore, students must understand the importance of careful measurement, calibration of instruments, and proper recording of results.



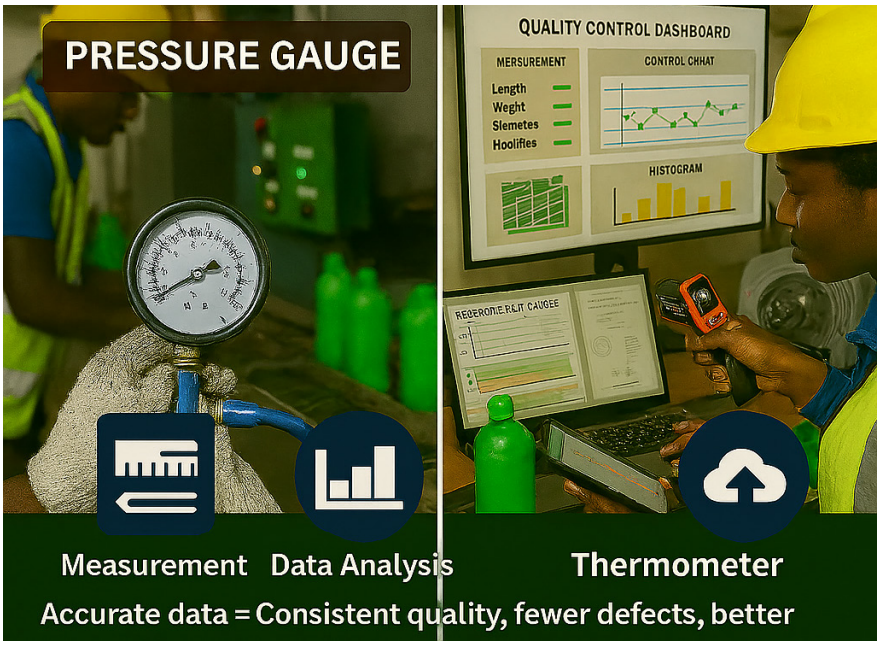


Figure 7.26: Data collection and measurement in manufacturing (Authors' construct)

DATA VISUALISATION AND INTERPRETATION

Once data is collected, it needs to be organised and displayed in a way that makes it easy to understand. This is where data visualisation comes in. Charts and graphs, such as bar charts, line graphs, histograms, and control charts, help identify patterns, trends, and outliers. For example, a line graph can show how product quality changes over time, while a control chart can indicate whether the process is stable or needs attention (Figure 7.27). Interpreting these visuals correctly helps identify whether a process is working well or needs adjustment. Teaching learners to read and analyse these charts improves their ability to make smart and timely decisions in manufacturing settings. Special causes of variation are detected on control charts by noticing certain types of patterns that appear on the control chart. The point beyond the control limits is one such pattern.

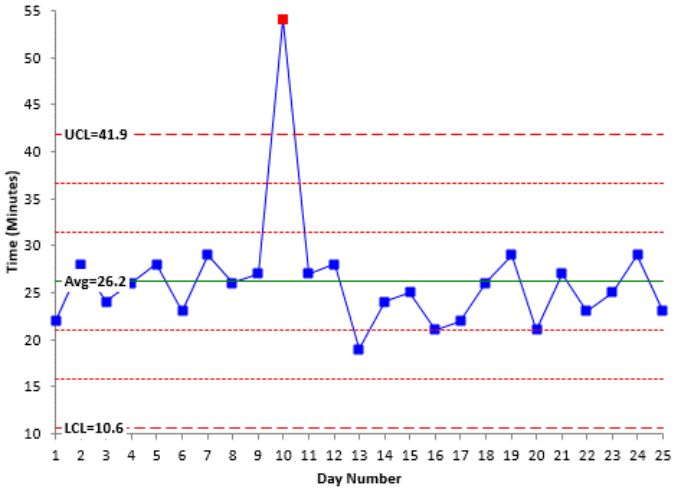


Figure 7.27: A control chart showing points within and outside control limits This is the first pattern that signifies an out-of-control point, a special cause of variation

STATISTICAL PROCESS CONTROL (SPC)

Statistical Process Control (SPC) is a method used to monitor and control a process using statistics. It uses control charts to track process behaviour and helps determine whether a process is operating consistently or if there are special causes of variation (Figure 7.28). For instance, if a measurement goes above or below certain control limits on the chart, it signals that something unusual is happening, such as tool wear or material defects. SPC helps reduce waste, prevent defects, and maintain a high level of quality. High school students learning about SPC develop a better understanding of how data can be used in real time to keep manufacturing operations efficient and under control

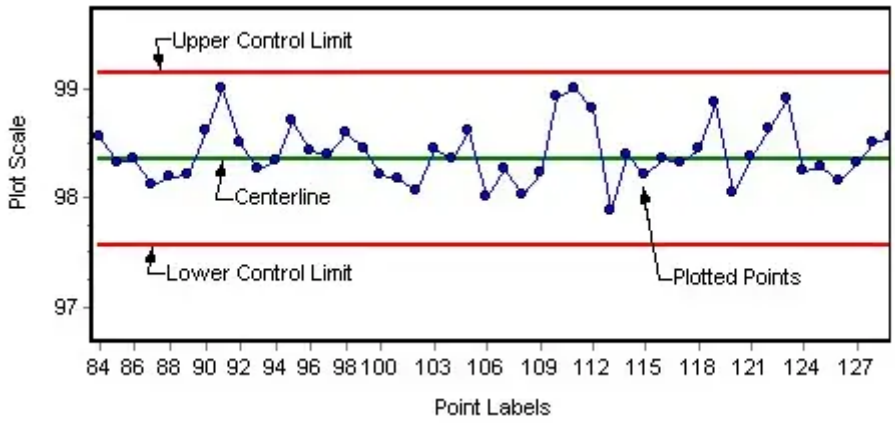


Figure 7.28: Control charts with labelled upper and lower control limits.

ROOT CAUSE ANALYSIS AND PROBLEM SOLVING

When a defect or quality problem occurs, it is not enough to fix the symptom; the root cause must be identified and corrected. Root Cause Analysis (RCA) is the process of finding out why a problem happened and how to prevent it in the future. One popular tool for RCA is the fishbone diagram (also called the cause-and-effect diagram), which helps break down possible causes into categories such as materials, machines, methods, and manpower. Another tool is the 5 Whys technique, where you ask "why" multiple times until the real reason is found (Figure 7.29). Teaching students to look beyond surface-level causes helps them become better problem solvers and quality thinkers.

QUALITY IMPROVEMENT TOOLS

To support quality control and decision-making, manufacturers use tools such as check sheets, Pareto charts, histograms, scatter diagrams, and flowcharts. Each of these tools serves a unique purpose. For example, a Pareto chart helps prioritise the most common defects so that efforts can be focused on the biggest issues first (Figure 7.30). These tools are part of the Seven Basic Quality Tools, which are simple but powerful methods used to analyse data, track problems, and improve processes. These tools make quality control more systematic and ensure that decisions are based on real evidence rather than guesswork.

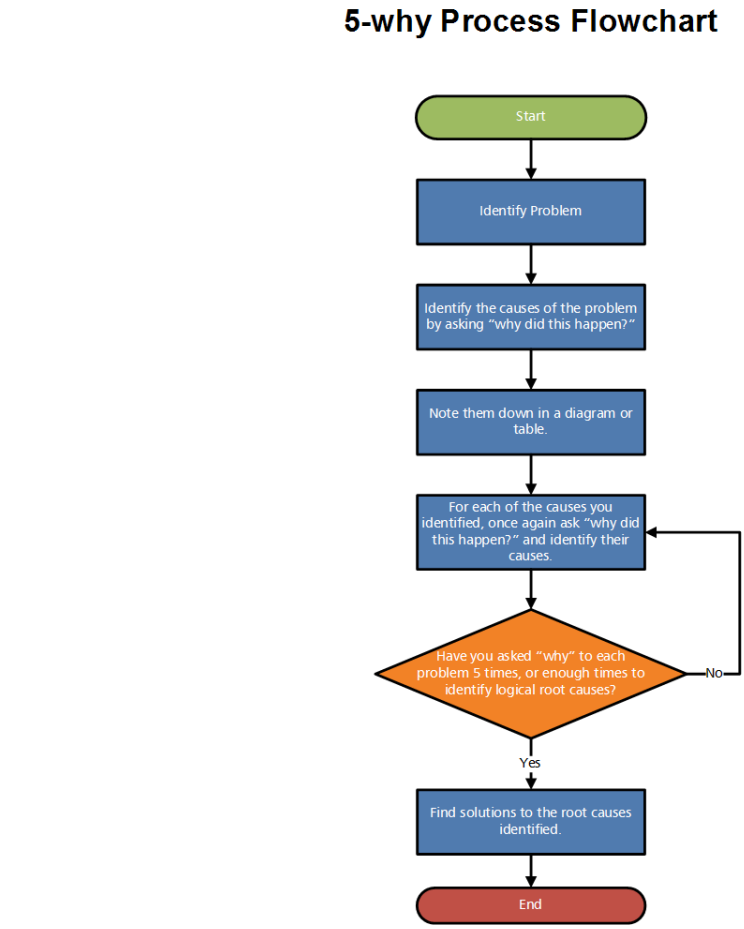


Figure 7.29: A step-by-step 5 Whys breakdown.

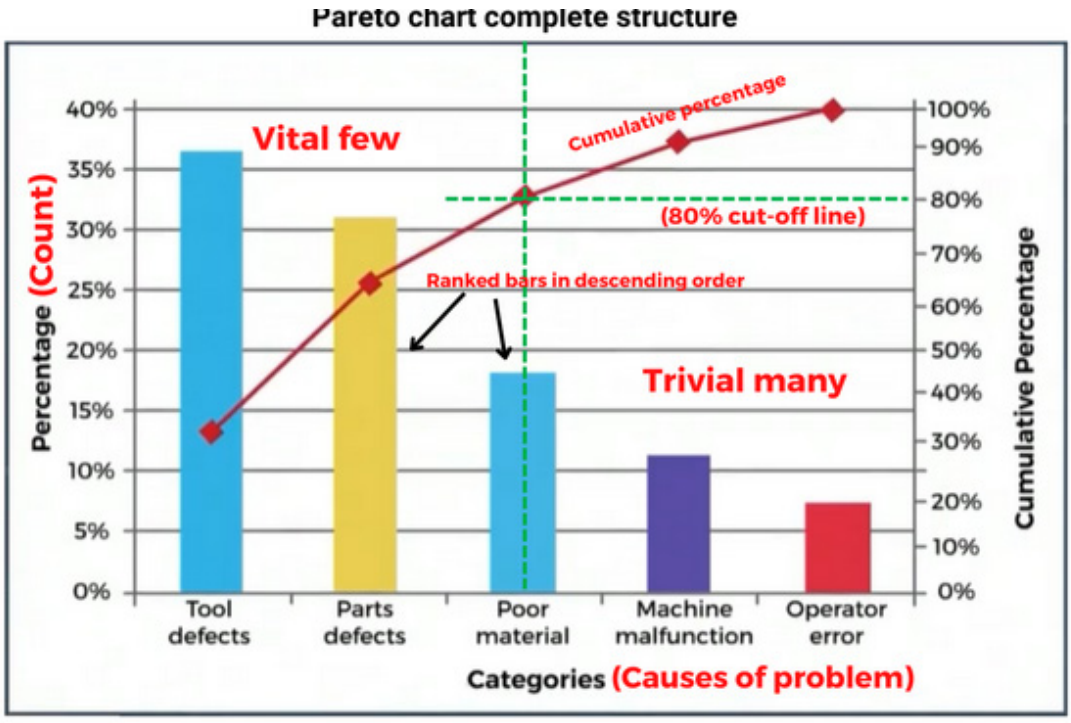


Figure 7.30: Pareto chart showing types of defects and their frequency

DECISION-MAKING FRAMEWORKS

Making good decisions using quality control data involves following a structured approach. One popular decision-making framework is the PDCA cycle: Plan, Do, Check, Act. In this model, manufacturers plan an improvement, carry it out, check the results using quality data, and act on what they learn (Figure 7.31). Another model is the DMAIC framework used in Six Sigma (Define, Measure, Analyse, Improve, Control), which is especially helpful for solving complex quality problems. These frameworks help guide teams through each step of the improvement process and make sure that decisions are well thought out and backed by data.

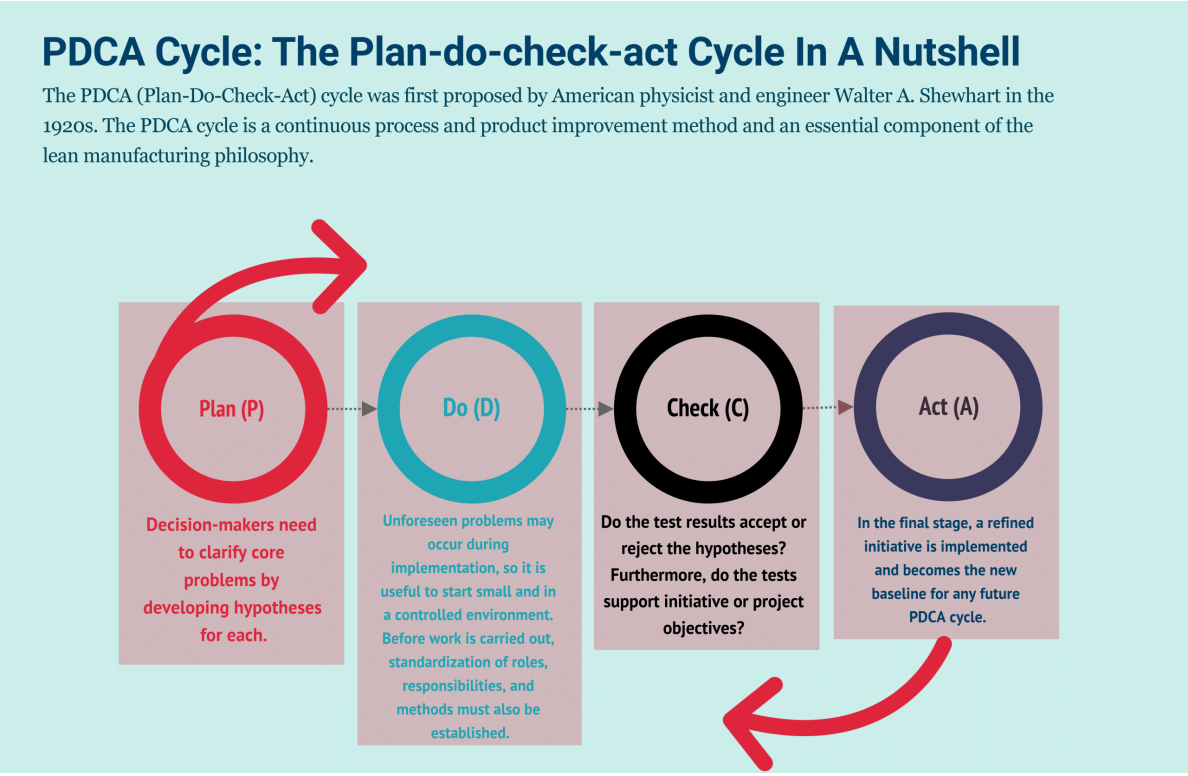


Figure 7.31: PDCA cycle

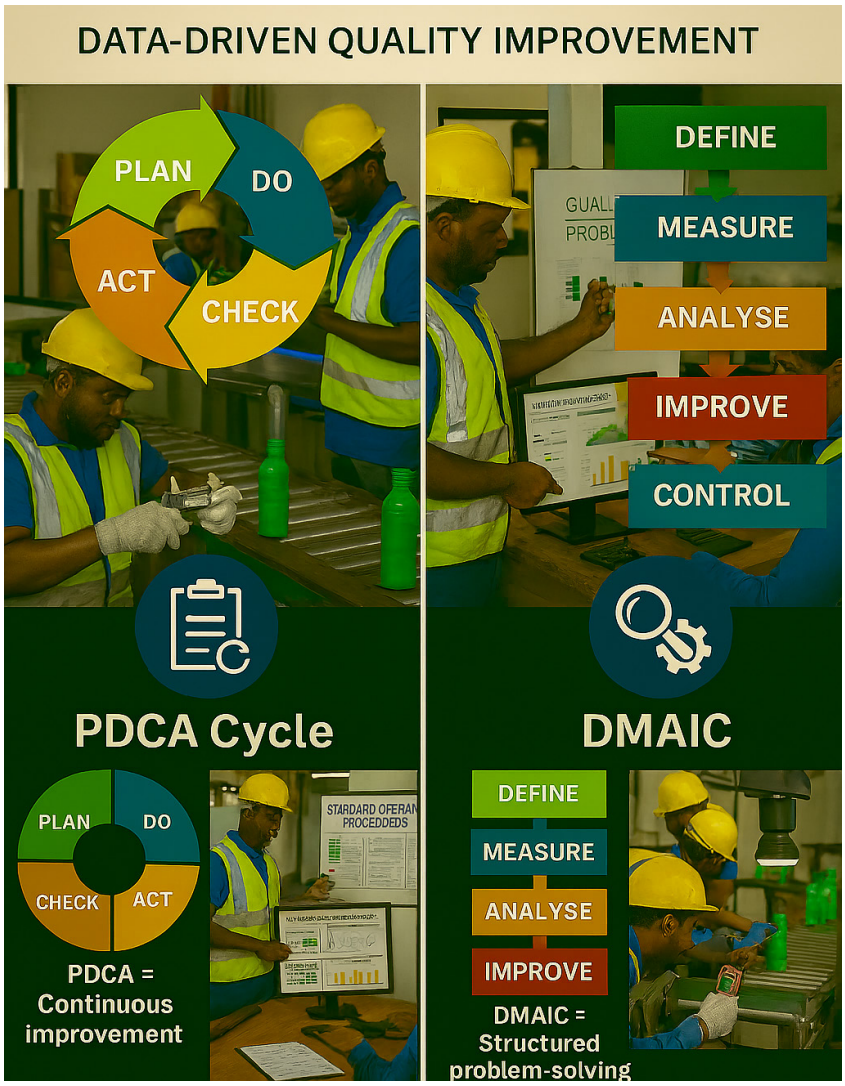


Figure 7.32: Decision-making framework in QC and QA (Authors' construct)

Activity 7.10 Revision– Material Failures

Aim: To review key material failure modes and link them to the importance of quality control in manufacturing.

Mode of Work: Individual

Resources

- Year 1, Year 2 and Year 3 Learner Materials/notes on material failures
- Notebook and pen

Instructions

1. Review sections on creep, fatigue, and fracture.
2. Write a summary (2–3 sentences each) explaining:

a. What the failure mode means
b. Why it matters in manufacturing

3. Link each summary to how QC can help prevent such failures.
4. Share your summaries with a peer for feedback.

Portfolio Note

Include your summaries and any peer comments.

Activity 7.11 Quality Control Video Analysis

Aim: To observe quality control processes in a factory setting and identify key steps, tools, and technologies.

Mode of Work: Individual

Resources: Internet access (YouTube or similar), notebook and pen

Suggested Videos

1. Inspection and Quality control in Manufacturing #inspection ... – Explains inspection types, QC fundamentals, and statistical quality control basics.
2. Manufacturing Quality Assurance – QA Best Practices for SMEs – Shows how QA and QC integrate to maintain product quality and drive continuous improvement.
3. SMART Quality Control for Manufacturing – Demonstrates how smart QC systems reduce variability and improve efficiency.
4. What is Quality Control? – Defines QC, outlines its importance, and shows practical examples.
5. What is Quality Control 4.0? | Technology in Manufacturing ... – Explores how digital tools enhance QC processes.
6. Introduction: Fundamental concepts of quality, inspection and ... – Covers inspection principles, inprocess checks, and appraisal costs.

Instructions

1. Watch at least one of the suggested videos.
2. List the main QC steps observed (e.g., inspection, measurement, testing).
3. Note any tools or technologies used.
4. Summarise in a paragraph how QC helps prevent defects and ensure product reliability.
5. Share your list and summary with classmates via a forum or group chat.

Portfolio Note

Include your list, notes on tools/technologies, and summary.

Activity 7.12 Library Research on Standards

Aim: To understand the purpose and differences between ISO 9001 and ASTM standards in manufacturing quality.

Mode of Work: Individual

Materials/Resources

- Library or online access to ISO 9001 and ASTM information
- Notebook or digital device

Instructions

1. Summarise the purpose of ISO 9001 in 2–4 sentences.
2. Summarise the purpose of ASTM standards in 2–4 sentences.
3. List two main differences between ISO 9001 and ASTM, focusing on their roles in manufacturing quality.
4. Compare your summaries and differences with a peer.

Portfolio Note

Include your summaries and comparison list.

Activity 7.13 Defect Identification Simulation

Aim: To classify manufacturing defects and identify their root causes.

Mode of Work: Individual

Materials/Resources

- Sample images/descriptions of defective products (printed or digital)
- Notebook or table template

Instructions

1. For each sample, classify the defect as caused by design, material, or process.
2. Write your reasoning for each classification in a table.
3. Exchange tables with a peer for review and discussion.

Portfolio Note

Include your completed table and peer feedback.

Activity 7.14 QA vs QC Comparison Chart

Aim: To compare the functions of Quality Assurance (QA) and Quality Control (QC).

Mode of Work: Individual

Materials/Resources: Textbook or trusted internet sources, notebook or spreadsheet software

Instructions

1. Research QA and QC functions.
2. Create a comparison table with at least three aspects:
    a. When it occurs
    b. Focus
    c. Implementation methods
4. Share your table with a peer and discuss differences.

Portfolio Note

Include your comparison table and discussion notes.

Activity 7.15 Quality Control Video Exploration

Aim: To observe realworld quality control processes, tools, and defect detection methods in manufacturing environments.

Mode of Work: Individual, with optional smallgroup discussion

Materials/Resources

- Internet access (YouTube or similar)
- Notebook and pen

Suggested Videos

1. Virtual Plant Tour: Quality Control Lab – Shows a complete QC lab workflow, from sample intake to final reporting, highlighting inspection stations and testing equipment.
2. Precise Tool Quality Control Lab Tour – Demonstrates the use of micrometers, CMMs, and vision systems for precisionmachined parts.
3. Lilly Quality Control Laboratories Help Ensure High Quality ... – Explains pharmaceutical QC processes, including stability testing and legally binding inspections.
4. IRREGULAR DESIGN GROUP FACTORY TOUR – Offers a behindthescenes look at QC in a manufacturing line, showing integration with production.

5. A deep dive into Quality Control Laboratory in Pharmaceutical ... – Covers raw material testing, method validation, and microbiological checks.
6. Pharma Quality Control Lab: Behind the Scenes – Highlights modern lab setups, from manual inspection to advanced analytical equipment.

Instructions

1. Watch at least one of the suggested videos.
2. Take notes on the step-by-step inspection and testing procedures observed.
3. List the types of defects checked for and the equipment used (e.g., micrometers, vision systems, destructive testing rigs).
4. Discuss in small groups or write individually how these methods relate to QC functions you've learned.
5. Share your notes and defect/equipment lists with peers for comparison.

Portfolio Note

Include your notes, defect list, and discussion summary.

Activity 7.16 Textbook Standards Investigation

Aim: To understand the purpose and differences between ISO 9001, ASTM, and other quality standards, and their influence on QA/QC activities.

Mode of Work: Individual

Materials/Resources: Library or trusted online sources, notebook or digital device

Instructions

1. Research ISO 9001, ASTM, and at least one other relevant quality standard.
2. Summarise the main purpose of each in 2–4 sentences.
3. Identify and list at least two main differences between ISO 9001 and ASTM, focusing on their roles in manufacturing quality.
4. Compare how these standards might influence QA and QC activities.
5. Exchange summaries and comparisons with a peer for completeness.

Portfolio Note

Include your summaries, differences list, and comparison notes.

Activity 7.17 Defect Classification Simulation

Aim: To classify manufacturing defects and identify their root causes.

Mode of Work: Individual, with peer review

Materials/Resources: Images/descriptions of defective products (printed or digital), notebook or table template

Instructions

1. For each example, decide if the defect is due to design, material, or process.
2. Fill out a table with your reasoning for each classification.
3. Share your table with a peer or online group for feedback.

Portfolio Note

Include your completed table and peer feedback.

Activity 7.18 Quality Control Recap Challenge

Aim: To review the fundamentals of quality control in manufacturing and understand the role of QC data in decision-making.

Mode of Work: Individual

Materials/Resources

- Textbook chapter or reputable online article/video on QC basics
- Notebook or digital document for glossary and notes

Suggested Videos

1. Inspection and Quality control in Manufacturing #inspection ... – Explains inspection types, the definition and importance of QC, and introduces statistical quality control fundamentals.
2. Quality Control – Defines QC, outlines its role in identifying substandard products, and discusses business benefits.
3. Basics of Quality Control You Should Know – Provides a concise overview of QC principles applicable across industries.
4. The 7 Quality Control (QC) Tools Explained with an Example! – Demonstrates practical QC tools like Pareto charts, control charts, and causeandeffect diagrams.
5. Quality Control Basics (Part 2): The AQL (Acceptance Quality ... – Introduces the Acceptance Quality Limit concept and its application in manufacturing.
6. What is Quality Control? – Summarises QC goals, processes, and how it ensures product reliability.

Instructions

1. Watch at least one of the suggested videos or read a textbook/article on QC basics.
2. Create a glossary with definitions for: quality control, data types (discrete/continuous), mean, median, mode, range, and variation.
3. Review examples of QC in manufacturing (e.g., checking part sizes, testing material strength).
4. Summarise in your own words why QC data is important for decision-making.
5. Write and answer five recap questions based on your notes. Quiz a peer using your questions.

Portfolio Note

Include your glossary, summary, and quiz questions/answers.

Activity 7.19 Data Analysis Practice

Aim: To practise calculating and interpreting basic statistical measures for QC datasets.

Mode of Work: Individual

Materials/Resources: Small dataset (e.g., measurements of 10 screws' lengths), Calculator, spreadsheet, or online statistical tool

Instructions

1. Calculate mean, median, mode, range, and standard deviation.
2. Interpret the results: What do they reveal about dataset consistency and spread?
3. Write a short paragraph explaining when a high or low standard deviation would be a concern in manufacturing.
4. Compare interpretations with a peer.

Portfolio Note

Include your dataset, calculations, and interpretation.

Activity 7.20 Measurement Workshop

Aim: To collect and evaluate measurement data for manufactured items.

Mode of Work: Individual

Materials/Resources

- Objects to measure (e.g., screws, bolts, pens)
- Measuring tools (calliper, micrometre, or ruler)
- Notebook or spreadsheet

Instructions

1. Measure at least 10 items, recording length and diameter.
2. Check for visual defects and note pass/fail status.
3. Reflect on measurement variation and possible causes.
4. Discuss findings with a peer.

Portfolio Note

Include your measurement table and reflection.

Activity 7.21 Visualising Quality Data

Aim: To present QC data visually and interpret trends, clusters, and outliers.

Mode of Work: Individual

Materials/Resources

- Measurement data from A
- Graphing tools (paper, spreadsheet, or charting software)

Instructions

1. Create bar charts, line graphs, and, if possible, a simple control chart.
2. Label charts clearly and include all measurements.
3. Interpret visuals for trends, clusters, or outliers.
4. Write a summary explaining what the charts reveal about item quality.
5. Share charts with a peer for feedback.

Portfolio Note

Include your charts and written interpretation.

EXTENDED READING

- Besterfield, D. H. (2018). Total Quality Management (5th ed.). Pearson.
- Evans, J. R., & Lindsay, W. M. (2017). Managing for Quality and Performance Excellence (10th ed.). Cengage Learning.
- Ghana Standards Authority. (2019). National Quality Policy. Accra: GSA.
- ISO (2021). ISO 9001:2015 Quality Management Systems — Requirements. Geneva: International Organisation for Standardisation.
- Evans, J. R., & Lindsay, W. M. (2017). Managing for Quality and Performance Excellence (10th ed.). Cengage Learning.
- Gitlow, H. S., & Levine, D. M. (2019). Statistics and Quality Control for Engineers and Manufacturers. McGraw-Hill.

REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. Describe the role of quality control in a manufacturing process. Using a specific product example (e.g., bolts or cooking pots), explain how quality control checks are applied at different stages of production.
2. Research and compare national (e.g., Ghana Standards Authority) and international (e.g., ISO, ASTM) safety test standards for a selected manufactured product. Present your findings in a single-page document, highlighting two similarities and two differences.

ANSWERS TO REVIEW QUESTIONS

Section 1

1. Two key benefits of using bamboo as a construction material are its high mechanical strength relative to its weight and its rapid renewability. Bamboo grows quickly, making it a highly sustainable resource, and its engineered composites can offer impressive structural integrity. However, there are also challenges, such as its susceptibility to moisture, insect damage, and ultraviolet radiation, which can compromise durability if not properly treated. These factors impact bamboo's overall effectiveness in building projects: when adequately processed and protected, bamboo can be a highly effective, eco-friendly construction material. Conversely, without suitable treatment and maintenance, its performance and longevity may fall short compared to conventional materials.

2. Bamboo and reinforcement steel bars both exhibit significant tensile strength, but steel typically surpasses bamboo in both tensile strength and breaking elongation (ductility). According to Table 1, the average tensile strength of reinforcement steel bars is approximately 400–600 MPa, with breaking elongation values ranging from 10% to 18%. In contrast, bamboo's tensile strength varies depending on species and treatment but generally falls between 100–300 MPa, with breaking elongation typically in the range of 1.5% to 2.5%. This means that while bamboo is strong in tension, which is often comparable to mild steel at the lower end of the steel range, it is less ductile and tends to break with less elongation before failure. Understanding these properties is crucial in construction: bamboo's high strength-to-weight ratio makes it suitable for lightweight structures, but its lower ductility means it is best used in applications where flexibility and stretching under load are less critical. Knowledge of these mechanical characteristics allows engineers to select appropriate materials and design safe, efficient structures that leverage bamboo's strengths while mitigating its limitations.

3. Advanced materials and nanotechnology are transforming the development of smart buildings, medical devices, and equipment. In smart buildings, materials such as nanomaterial-enhanced membranes are used for water purification, improving efficiency and reducing maintenance. Nanotechnology enables the creation of sensors and coatings that enhance energy efficiency, self-cleaning surfaces, and air quality control. In medical devices, nanomaterials can be used for targeted drug delivery systems, improved imaging, and biosensors that monitor patient health in real-time. For example, silver nanoparticles are employed in filtration systems to remove bacteria and viruses, while carbon nanotubes enhance the strength and sensitivity of medical diagnostic equipment. These innovations contribute to safer, more efficient, and intelligent environments both in construction and healthcare.

4. Innovative Prototype: Modular Solar-Powered Water Purification and Storage Unit

An effective and sustainable response to water scarcity in communities can be achieved through the development of a modular, solar-powered water purification and storage unit. This prototype incorporates advanced engineering materials and intelligent design strategies to ensure the efficient and reliable delivery of clean water.

Design Objectives

- To ensure consistent access to safe drinking water, particularly in areas where water infrastructure is insufficient or water sources are contaminated.
- To utilise renewable energy and advanced materials, aiming for long-term sustainability with minimal environmental footprint.

Key Components

- Bamboo-Based Structural Frame: The main structure employs engineered bamboo composites, selected for their high mechanical strength, low weight, and rapid renewability. These composites are specially treated to enhance durability and resistance to moisture, insect damage, and ultraviolet radiation.
- Solar Photovoltaic Panels: Solar panels are integrated on the unit's roof to capture solar energy and provide power for the purification process. This design supports off-grid operation and decreases reliance on fossil fuels.
- Nanomaterial-Enhanced Filtration Membranes: The core purification system uses filtration cartridges embedded with nanomaterials such as silver nanoparticles or carbon nanotubes. These advanced membranes remove bacteria, viruses, heavy metals, and organic contaminants more effectively, while also reducing the risk of clogging and lowering maintenance requirements.
- Smart Monitoring Sensors: The unit includes embedded piezoresistive and chemical sensors that continuously monitor water quality parameters (such as pH, turbidity, and microbial content) and system status. Data is transmitted in real time to a mobile application or central monitoring station.
- Modular Storage Tanks: The storage system comprises stackable, lightweight tanks made from high-strength polymer composites. These tanks are designed to resist biological growth and UV degradation, and the modular approach allows for scalable water storage to meet varying community needs.

- User Interface and IoT Integration: A user-friendly interface, accessible via smartphone or display panel, enables users to monitor water levels, system status, and maintenance schedules.

Design Process Steps

- Problem Identification: Surveys and water quality tests in the targeted community highlight a clear need for reliable and safe water sources, often due to drought, contamination, or inadequate infrastructure.
- Concept Development: Collaborative brainstorming with engineers, local stakeholders, and materials scientists results in the concept of a sustainable purification unit, integrating bamboo structures, solar energy, and nanotechnology-based membranes.
- Material Selection: Careful evaluation of local material availability, life cycle impacts, and performance requirements leads to the choice of engineered bamboo, efficient solar cells, and nanomaterial membranes.
- Prototyping and Testing: A small-scale prototype is constructed and assessed for mechanical strength, purification performance, energy self-sufficiency, and user experience. Community feedback informs iterative improvements.
- Implementation and Scaling (Manufacturing Processes): After successful pilot trials, the design is scaled up to serve larger populations. Local manufacturing and training are incorporated to encourage community ownership and ensure long-term sustainability.

Benefits and Sustainability Impact

- Delivers clean water with minimal dependence on grid electricity or chemical treatments.
- Encourages the use of renewable, locally available materials.
- Contributes to a reduction in waterborne diseases and improvement in public health.
- Fosters community empowerment by supporting local manufacturing and maintenance capacity.

Section 2

1. Introduction to Selected Case Studies

For this comparative analysis, I have selected two well-documented structural failure case studies from the sample videos in Activity 3.4: the collapse of the Tacoma Narrows Bridge (USA, 1940) and the Hyatt Regency walkway disaster

(USA, 1981). Both incidents serve as critical learning points in engineering history, each highlighting distinct underlying material and design failures.

Investigation of Underlying Causes

The Tacoma Narrows Bridge collapse was primarily due to aeroelastic flutter, a phenomenon where wind-induced vibrations amplified structural oscillations beyond the bridge's capacity. The designers underestimated the effects of dynamic wind loads on the slender suspension structure, with insufficient torsional stiffness in the materials selected In contrast, the Hyatt Regency walkway failure was caused by a flawed change in the connection design of the walkways, resulting in a load path that exceeded the capacity of the supporting rods and nuts. This change was not adequately reviewed, leading to a catastrophic material failure under stress.

Assessment of Decision-Making Processes

Both cases reveal shortcomings in the decision-making processes. The Tacoma Narrows design team relied heavily on static load analysis and failed to account for dynamic environmental factors, indicating a gap in interdisciplinary communication and risk assessment. The Hyatt Regency disaster stemmed from a breakdown in design review and approval, whereby a seemingly minor modification was implemented without rigorous structural analysis or proper documentation. In both instances, the lack of robust peer review and insufficient integration of material science principles contributed directly to the failures.

Synthesis of Findings and Proposed Engineering Solutions

To prevent similar incidents, engineering solutions must incorporate thorough dynamic analysis and material selection that accounts for all possible load conditions. For bridges, integrating wind tunnel testing and computer-aided simulations during the design phase could reveal vulnerabilities to aeroelastic effects. For building structures, establishing mandatory checkpoints for design changes, coupled with comprehensive documentation and peer review, is essential. Utilising high-strength alloys and composites with verified fatigue resistance would further enhance safety margins.

Justification Using Principles from Years 1 and 2

Principles from foundational engineering modules such as stress-strain relationships, failure modes, and safety factors should inform every stage of structural design. For example, applying the concepts of material deformation and fracture mechanics allows engineers to predict and mitigate potential points of failure. Additionally, understanding the importance of redundancy and load distribution ensures that structures can withstand unexpected stresses.

Critique of Current Industry Standards

Although modern standards have evolved to address many historical shortcomings, there remain gaps in the adoption of dynamic analysis and holistic risk management. Industry codes often provide minimum requirements, but true safety demands proactive engineering judgement and continuous improvement. The integration of advanced simulation tools and interdisciplinary collaboration must become standard practice to ensure resilient, safe structures.

2 Introduction to Selected Ghanaian Incident

On 6 August 2025, a Ghanaian military helicopter tragically crashed, drawing national attention to the issue of engineering failures in local infrastructure and transport. For the purposes of this analysis, I will examine the incident from the perspective of material failure, while also considering alternative local infrastructure failures for comparative context.

Examination of Root Causes (Material Failure)

Preliminary investigations suggested that the helicopter's rotor assembly failed due to fatigue cracking in a key titanium alloy component, exacerbated by inadequate maintenance and environmental exposure. The component exhibited signs of corrosion and microstructural degradation, possibly due to non-compliance with recommended inspection intervals and suboptimal material selection for local climatic conditions. Similar failures have occurred in bridges and buildings across Ghana, often linked to the use of low-quality construction materials and insufficient consideration of environmental stressors.

Lessons from Local and International Case Studies

Local case studies, such as the collapse of the Melcom shopping centre in Accra (2012), demonstrate a recurring pattern: lack of adherence to material specification standards and poor maintenance regimes. Internationally, incidents like the Tacoma Narrows Bridge and Hyatt Regency walkway failures illustrate the universal importance of integrating material science, periodic inspection, and context-specific risk assessment into engineering practice (Ashby & Jones, 2015).

Proposed Prevention Plan

A robust prevention plan should include the following steps: (1) strict enforcement of material certification and quality control during procurement, (2) mandatory, regular inspection schedules tailored to local conditions, (3) ongoing training for maintenance personnel in material degradation and failure detection, and (4) investment in research to identify materials best suited to Ghana's environment. Collaboration with international experts and

adoption of global best practices would further strengthen local engineering resilience. Implementation of digital monitoring systems could enable early detection of material fatigue and corrosion, reducing the risk of catastrophic failure.

Application of Years 1 and 2 Knowledge

Fundamental principles such as the analysis of stress concentrations, fatigue, and environmental effects on materials are directly applicable in diagnosing and preventing such failures. Understanding the mechanics of materials, including the behaviour of alloys under cyclic loading and the impact of corrosion, provides the tools necessary for effective intervention. By applying these concepts, engineers can design safer structures and systems, tailored to the specific challenges of Ghana's infrastructure.

Section 3

1. In production drawings, there are three main ways to show different types of materials, making it easier for everyone to understand what is needed for each part. First, different patterns are drawn on the materials. For example, straight lines might show steel, criss-cross lines could mean bronze, and dots may stand for rubber. This helps people know which material to use just by looking at the drawing. Second, sometimes different colours are used. For instance, blue could be used for aluminium, and red for copper, so it is easy to spot the materials in a complicated drawing. Third, short forms or abbreviations are written next to the parts. For example, 'SS' means stainless steel and 'PVC' means polyvinyl chloride. These methods help everyone understand the materials required, reduce mistakes, and make sure the right materials are used from the beginning to the end of production.
2. Using standardised symbols for machine parts in production drawings is important because it creates a common way for everyone to read and understand these drawings. This means that engineers, technicians, and manufacturers, no matter where they are from, can quickly know what each part is, just by looking at the drawing. When everyone uses the same symbols, there is less chance of confusion or mistakes.

   If these standard symbols are not used, two problems can happen. First, using different or unclear symbols can cause errors in making or putting together parts, leading to wasted time and money. Second, if people misunderstand the drawings, unsafe designs might be made, which could result in machines not working properly or even causing accidents.
3. Specifying the wrong tolerance in manufacturing means not clearly stating how much bigger or smaller a part can be from its exact size. If the allowed difference (tolerance) is too small, making the parts becomes expensive

because special machines and more checks are needed. If the tolerance is too big, the parts might not fit together properly or may not work as they should, leading to poor product quality. This can cause the finished product to break easily or not last long.

Bad tolerances also make putting parts together difficult, leading to mistakes and more wasted materials. For example, think about building a gearbox. If the gears are made with sizes that are too exact, they might not fit into their spaces at all, and fixing this is costly. But if the gears are made with sizes that are not exact enough, they might be too loose, which can make the gearbox noisy, wear out quickly, or even stop working completely.

4. Standard rules and careful conversion between units are very important when creating production drawings. These rules make sure that everyone, such as engineers, workers, and people from other countries, can read and use the drawings without confusion. When people use different measurement systems like metric (millimetres) and imperial (inches), it is important to change the units correctly. If this is not done, mistakes can happen. For example, if a drawing says a part is "25.4" but does not say if it is millimetres or inches, someone might make the part the wrong size. Making a part in millimetres instead of inches will make it much smaller than it should be. This can cause problems when putting parts together, waste money, and slow down production. That is why it is important to follow standard rules and always show which units are being used in the drawings, so mistakes and costly errors are avoided.

Section 4

1. Selective Laser Sintering (SLS) is an additive manufacturing technique that creates objects layer by layer by using a high-powered laser to selectively fuse powdered material. The main steps involved in the SLS process are as follows:

- Prepare a digital 3D CAD model and convert it into an STL file.
- Spread a thin layer of powdered material (such as nylon or polyamide) across the build platform.
- Use a laser to selectively sinter, or fuse, the powder according to the cross-section of the object for that specific layer.
- Lower the build platform and repeat the process of powder spreading and laser sintering for each subsequent layer until the part is complete.
- Remove the finished part from the powder bed and carry out post-processing, which may include depowdering and finishing steps.

In terms of safety precautions for SLS, it is essential to wear appropriate personal protective equipment (PPE) such as gloves, goggles, and dust masks

to prevent inhalation or contact with fine powders. The process should be conducted in well-ventilated areas and equipped with proper dust extraction systems to minimise the risk of powder explosions. Operators must also exercise caution around the laser, ensuring that all interlocks and safety mechanisms are functioning correctly to prevent accidental exposure to the laser beam.

2. Compare the bonding mechanisms of FDM and SLA technologies. Use a Table to illustrate your answer.

Technology	Bonding Mechanism	Material Example
Fused Deposition Modelling (FDM)	Thermal extrusion: Thermoplastic filament is heated and extruded through a nozzle. Layers are bonded by melting and re-solidification of the material.	ABS, PLA
Stereolithography (SLA)	Photopolymerisation: Liquid photopolymer resin is cured by a UV laser, causing the resin to solidify and bond at the molecular level, layer by layer.	Photopolymer Resin

In summary, FDM relies on thermal fusion of thermoplastic materials, while SLA achieves bonding through photochemical reactions initiated by a light source.

Comparison of Suitable Prototyping Techniques for Artificial Mandible Design

Technique	Bonding Mecha-nism	Material Options	Accu-racy	Surface Finish	Biocom-patibility	Cost	Suit-ability for Mandi-ble Pro-totype
Fused Deposition Modelling (FDM)	Thermal extru-sion and melt-ing of thermo-plastic filament	ABS, PLA, PETG, medi-cal-grade thermo-plastics	Mod-erate	Moder-ate (may require post-pro-cessing)	Possible with certified filaments	Low	Good for initial concept and fit testing

ANSWERS TO REVIEW QUESTIONS

Stereolithography (SLA)	Photo polymerisation by UV laser	Photopolymer resin and biocompatible resins are available	High	Excellent (smooth surface)	Good with specialised resins	Moderate to high	Ideal for detailed anatomical prototypes
Selective Laser Sintering (SLS)	Laser sintering of powdered material	Nylon, medical-grade polymers, and some metals	High	Good (slightly grainy texture)	Good (with medical-grade powders)	High	Suitable for functional testing and strength
Direct Metal Laser Sintering (DMLS)	Laser sintering of metal powders	Titanium, CoCr alloys, stainless steel	Very high	Good, may require finishing	Excellent (especially titanium for implants)	Very high	Best for final prosthesis, less for prototyping due to cost

For the prototyping stage of an artificial mandible, Stereolithography (SLA) stands out as the most suitable technique. SLA offers high accuracy and excellent surface finish, which are crucial for replicating the complex anatomical features of the mandible. Furthermore, biocompatible resins are available, allowing for safe handling and potential trial fittings in a clinical environment. While FDM is cost-effective and useful for basic fit and form checks, it lacks the precision and surface quality required for detailed medical prototypes. SLS and DMLS, though highly accurate and suitable for functional and final parts, may present unnecessary complexity and cost at the prototyping stage, especially when the primary goal is to verify geometry and fit rather than final mechanical performance or implantation.

Therefore, SLA is recommended as the optimal prototyping method for Mrs. Ananse's artificial mandible, balancing accuracy, surface quality, biocompatibility, and cost-effectiveness for iterative design refinement before progressing to final manufacturing using medical-grade metals if required.

ANSWERS TO REVIEW QUESTIONS

Section 5

1. Conventional machining processes involve direct physical interaction between a cutting tool and a workpiece to remove material. This is typically accomplished through operations such as turning, milling, and drilling, all of which utilise mechanical energy and produce chips as a by-product. For example, turning a steel rod on a lathe and drilling holes in a metal plate are representative examples of conventional machining.

   In contrast, nonconventional machining processes do not require direct contact between the tool and the workpiece. Instead, they use alternative energy sources, such as electrical, chemical, or thermal energy, to facilitate material removal. Notable examples include Electrical Discharge Machining (EDM), where material is eroded by electrical discharges, and Laser Beam Machining (LBM), which employs a concentrated laser beam to cut or engrave materials.

2. Milling and grinding are two important machining processes, each with unique mechanisms and applications. Milling uses a rotating, multi-point cutting tool to remove material from a workpiece, making it ideal for creating flat surfaces, slots, and complex shapes. This process is valued for its versatility and ability to remove material quickly. However, milling can leave visible tool marks on the finished surface and sometimes struggles to achieve the finest surface finishes.

   In contrast, grinding employs an abrasive wheel as the cutting tool, which gradually removes material to produce exceptionally precise finishes and maintain tight dimensional tolerances, particularly on hardened materials. Grinding is well-known for its ability to achieve superior surface quality, but it is generally less efficient than milling when large amounts of material need to be removed, due to its slower operational speed.

3. Advancements in cutting tool technology, including the development of carbide and ceramic materials, have greatly improved tool life, cutting speeds, and surface finish quality. For instance, carbide inserts enable higher cutting speeds and feed rates compared to traditional high-speed steel tools, which leads to increased productivity. Additionally, the introduction of coated tools, such as those with titanium nitride coatings, has enhanced wear resistance and heat dissipation. This allows for more efficient machining of challenging materials, like stainless steel and titanium alloys.

4. CNC (Computer Numerical Control) machines have revolutionised manufacturing by automating complex machining tasks with exceptional accuracy, repeatability, and versatility. By integrating computer systems with machine tools, CNC technology allows for precise control over multiple axes,

enabling intricate operations that would be difficult or impossible to achieve manually. Three common applications of CNC machines include:

a. Precision Component Production for the Aerospace Industry: In aerospace manufacturing, CNC machines are essential for creating high-precision parts such as turbine blades, structural components, and engine housings. These components often require tight dimensional tolerances and complex geometries to meet stringent safety and performance standards. CNC machining ensures consistent quality and traceability, which are critical in an industry where reliability is paramount.

b. Mass Production of Automotive Parts: The automotive sector relies heavily on CNC machines for high-volume production of components like engine blocks, transmission cases, and suspension parts. Automated CNC systems can run continuously, reducing cycle times and labour costs while maintaining uniformity in every part produced. This automation also enables manufacturers to quickly adapt to design changes or produce different models on the same equipment with minimal downtime.

c. Custom Engraving or Prototyping in Tool and Die Making: CNC technology is widely used in tool and die workshops for both engraving and rapid prototyping. Engraving logos, serial numbers, or intricate patterns onto metal surfaces is efficiently accomplished with CNC milling or engraving tools. Additionally, CNC machines can rapidly produce prototypes or custom dies, allowing engineers to test new designs and make adjustments before committing to full-scale production, thereby reducing development time and costs.

Beyond these applications, CNC machines offer several advantages: they enable consistent quality by minimising human error, allow for complex multi-axis machining in a single setup, and support flexible manufacturing by facilitating quick transitions between different part programmes. This flexibility is especially valuable in modern manufacturing environments, where small batch sizes and customised products are increasingly in demand. Furthermore, CNC systems support advanced features such as integration with CAD/CAM software, remote monitoring, and predictive maintenance, further boosting productivity and reducing downtime. Overall, CNC technology has transformed manufacturing operations across industries, making it possible to achieve higher throughput, better surface finishes, and more intricate designs, all while ensuring safety and efficiency. Its continued evolution is central to the growth of smart manufacturing and Industry 4.0 initiatives.

5. The most suitable CNC process for engraving a logo on a stainless-steel plate is CNC milling, specifically using an engraving or V-bit tool. CNC milling allows for precise control over depth and detail, which is essential for intricate logo

designs. For stainless steel, a solid carbide engraving tool is recommended due to its hardness, wear resistance, and ability to maintain sharp edges, ensuring clean and accurate engraving on the tough material.

Section 6

1.

a. Role of Grinding as a Finishing Operation Following Turning or Milling: Grinding is typically the final machining step after turning or milling, used when tight tolerances, superior surface finish, or specific material properties are required.

It removes very small amounts of material (often in microns) using abrasive particles, producing high precision and repeatability.

b. Properties, Examples, and Advantages

Property	Example Component	Advantages of Grinding over Turning/Milling
Surface Finish	Automotive camshaft lobes	Grinding produces a much finer surface roughness (Ra $< 0.2\,\mu m$) than turning or milling, reducing friction and wear in the cam–follower interface, which is critical for engine efficiency and durability.
Dimensional Accuracy	Precision bearing race	Grinding can achieve tolerances in the range of ± 0.002 mm, far tighter than typical turning/milling, ensuring perfect roundness and fit for highspeed, lownoise bearing operation.
Material Properties (e.g., hardness retention, residual stress control)	Hardened gear teeth	Grinding can machine hardened steels (>60 HRC) without altering heattreated properties, unlike turning/milling which may require softer premachining and risk distortion during heat treatment.

Summary Evaluation

- After turning/milling: Grinding removes tool marks, corrects minor geometric errors, and achieves the final required dimensions.
- Precision edge: Especially valuable for hard or brittle materials where conventional cutting tools wear quickly.
- Performance impact: Improves component life, reduces friction, and ensures consistent assembly fit.

2. Grinding vs. Turning or Milling Comparison

a. Grinding offers several key advantages over turning or milling, particularly in applications demanding high precision and superior surface quality. It achieves exceptionally low surface roughness (Ra below 0.2 μm), making it ideal for precision contact surfaces such as bearing races, and it consistently holds much tighter dimensional tolerances (often as fine as ±0.002 mm) than conventional turning or milling. Additionally, grinding is uniquely capable of machining hardened steels and wear-resistant alloys (above 60 HRC) without compromising their hardness, and it is frequently used after heat treatment to correct any distortion and restore precise geometry. The process also exerts lower cutting forces, which minimises the risk of deflection in slender or delicate components. However, grinding does have limitations: it removes material more slowly than turning or milling, involves higher equipment and wheel costs, demands specialised setups and skilled operators, and carries a risk of thermal damage if not performed correctly. Furthermore, it is less suited to complex 3D shapes compared to the versatility of turning and milling. In scenarios such as finishing the inner and outer races of precision ball bearings after heat treatment, grinding excels by delivering the required surface finish, dimensional accuracy, and material property retention that alternative methods struggle to match.

b. Why Grinding Excels in This Scenario

Factor	Grinding Advantage
Surface Finish	Produces a mirror-like finish (Ra ~0.05–0.1 μm) essential for low-friction rolling contact.
Dimensional Accuracy	Achieves micrometre-level roundness and diameter control, ensuring a perfect fit between balls and races.
Material Properties	Can cut hardened bearing steel (~62 HRC) without softening or altering heat-treated microstructure, unlike turning/milling, which would require pre-hardening machining and risk distortion.

Section 7

1. Quality control (QC) plays a crucial role in manufacturing by systematically monitoring, testing, and documenting products and processes to ensure they comply with established specifications and customer expectations. By reducing defects and waste, QC helps protect the manufacturer's reputation and ensures regulatory requirements are consistently met. This is achieved through regular inspections, precise measurements, and timely corrective actions implemented throughout the production cycle.

For example, consider the production of bolts in a metalworking factory. Quality control is integrated at various stages:

- Incoming Material QC: The process begins with verifying the diameter, chemical composition, and hardness of the steel rods used. Any batch that fails to meet the required standards is rejected, and supplier performance is documented for future reference.
- In-Process QC: During critical steps such as heading and thread rolling, go/no-go gauges, thread micrometres, and statistical process control (SPC) charts are employed to detect deviations from specifications. If measurements approach control limits, machines are promptly adjusted to prevent out-of-spec production.
- Post-Heat-Treatment QC: After heat treatment, bolts undergo hardness testing and checks for distortion. Any bolts that do not meet the required hardness or exhibit geometric deviations are either reground or re-rolled to restore conformity.
- Final Inspection: Before shipment, a sample of bolts is tested for tensile strength, proof load, and surface defects. Only those lots that conform to all standards are released, with detailed records maintained for traceability.

This multi-stage approach ensures that only high-quality bolts reach the customer, minimising defects and reinforcing product reliability and brand trust.

2. Comparison of National and International Safety Test Standards for Packaged Drinking Water

National and international standards play vital roles in safeguarding the quality and safety of manufactured products such as packaged drinking water. This brief report compares the Ghana Standards Authority (GSA) and leading international organisations (ISO and AST), highlighting their approaches to safety testing and certification.

National Standards: Ghana Standards Authority (GSA)

The GSA develops, adopts, and disseminates standards for various products, including packaged drinking water. It undertakes product certification, laboratory testing, and market surveillance to ensure consumer health and safety. Certification by the GSA follows ISO/IEC 17065 principles and involves awarding a Standard Mark to products that conform to published national standards and pass thorough conformity assessment procedures.

International Standards: ISO and ASTM

ISO publishes management system standards (e.g., ISO 9001, ISO 14001) and frameworks that support conformity assessment, with many countries

incorporating ISO standards into their national systems. ASTM specialises in developing detailed test methods and specifications widely adopted for product and material testing across the globe. While ISO and ASTM set the technical benchmarks and testing protocols, they do not certify products directly; their standards are used by certifiers and laboratories worldwide.

Similarities

- Standards as baselines: Both national and international bodies provide technical benchmarks and comprehensive documentation to assure product quality and safety in the marketplace.
- Support for conformity assessment: GSA certification and international frameworks (including ISO/IEC 17065 and ASTM test methods) underpin reliable testing and certification decisions, ensuring products meet established safety criteria.

Differences

- Certification role: The GSA, as a national regulator, directly certifies products and grants a Standard Mark for items meeting its standards. In contrast, ISO and ASTM do not certify products; ISO provides management and assessment frameworks, while ASTM offers test methods utilised by third-party certifiers and laboratories.
- Organisational scope: The GSA operates as a national standards body with regulatory authority and testing laboratories. ISO and ASTM, however, function as international standards developers and do not possess regulatory enforcement powers.

In summary, while both national and international standards organisations establish robust frameworks to assure product safety and quality, their roles in certification and regulatory enforcement differ significantly. The GSA provides direct oversight and certification in Ghana, whereas ISO and ASTM set global technical standards adopted by certifiers and regulators worldwide.

REFERENCES

1. Adams, P. (2018). Materials Science for Engineers. London: TechBooks Publishing.
2. AGC (2024). Semiconductor, a small but significant presence that support everyday lives. [Available online] https://www.agc.com/en/everyday/semiconductor/semiconductor.html,
3. Aggor, D. S. (2024). Collapse of bridge linking Adidome, Juapong leaves residents stranded. Citinewsroom - Comprehensive News in Ghana. https://citinewsroom.com/2024/01/collapse-of-bridge-linking-adidome-juapong-leaves-residents-stranded/
4. Al-Rukaibawi, L. S., & György Károlyi. (2023). Through-thickness distribution of bamboo tensile strength parallel to fibres. SN Applied Sciences, 5(7). https://doi.org/10.1007/s42452-023-05392-x
5. Alamy (2009). Computer chips on a circuit board. [Available online] https://www.alamy.com/stock-photo-computer-chips-on-a-circuit-board-94836340.html?imageid=4986103D-5BF7-4C43-A261-B21D81F5DA2B&p=279792&pn=1&searchId=df510f891f96eadc054c8518c978073c&searchtype=0
6. Alomarah, A., Ruan, D., Masood, S., & Gao, Z. (2019). Compressive properties of a novel additively manufactured 3D auxetic structure. Smart Materials and Structures, 28(8), 085019.
7. Anon. (2025). Guide for bamboo furniture | Bloomingville. Bloomingville.com. https://www.bloomingville.com/en/inspiration/guide-for-bamboo-furniture
8. Ashby, M. F., & Johnson, K. (2013). Materials and design: the art and science of material selection in product design. Butterworth-Heinemann.
9. Ashby, M. F., & Jones, D. R. H. (2015). Engineering Materials 1: An Introduction to Properties, Applications, and Design. Elsevier.
10. Awalluddin, D., Mohd Ariffin, M. A., Osman, M. H., Hussin, M. W., A. Ismail, M., Lee, H.-S., & Abdul Shukor Lim, N. H. (2017). Mechanical properties of different bamboo species. MATEC Web of Conferences, 138, 01024. https://doi.org/10.1051/matecconf/201713801024
11. Besterfield, D. H. (2018). Total Quality Management (5th ed.). Pearson.
12. Brennan, K. F. (2018). Introduction to semiconductor materials. Cambridge University Press.
13. Brown, L., & Green, T. (2015). Engineering Materials and Their Properties. Boston: Academic Press.
14. Büttgenbach, S., Constantinou, I., Dietzel, A., Leester-Schädel, M. (2020). Piezoresistive Pressure Sensors. In: Case Studies in Micromechatronics. Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-662-61320-7_2
15. Cadu, S. (2018). General information PCM, Iolitec GmbH. [Available online] https://iolitec.de/node/608
16. Calderone L. (2018). 3D printing for surgical procedures. [Available online] https://www.manufacturingtomorrow.com/article/2018/03/3d-printing-for-surgical-procedures/11119/
17. Callister, W. D., & Rathish, D. G. (2020). Materials Science and Engineering: An Introduction. New York: Wiley.
18. Callister, W. D., & Rethwisch, D. G. (2020). Materials Science and Engineering: An Introduction, 9th Edition, John Wiley & Sons.
19. Casini, M. (2016). Smart Buildings: Advanced Materials and Nanotechnology. Woodhead Publishing.

20. Chen, H., Cheng, H., Wang, G., Yu, Z., & Shi, S. Q. (2015). Tensile properties of bamboo in different sizes. Journal of Wood Science, 61(6), 552–561. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10086-015-1511-x
21. Chen, M., Dai, C., Liu, R., Lian, C., Yuan, J., Fang, C., & Fei, B. (2020). Influence of cell wall structure on the fracture behavior of bamboo (Phyllostachys edulis) fibers. Industrial Crops and Products, 155, 112787. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.indcrop.2020.112787
22. Chua, C. K., & Leong, K. F. (2014). 3D Printing and Additive Manufacturing: Principles and Applications. World Scientific Publishing.
23. Chua, C. K., & Leong, K. F. (2017). 3D Printing and Additive Manufacturing: Principles and Applications (5th ed.). World Scientific.
24. Courtney, T. H. (2013). Mechanical Behavior of Materials. Waveland Press.
25. Dey, A. K. (2021). Brittle Fracture and Ductile Fracture: Definition, Mechanism, Differences. What Is Piping. https://whatispiping.com/brittle-fracture-ductile-fracture/
26. Diegel, O., Nordin, A., & Motte, D. (2020). A practical guide to design for additive manufacturing (p. 226). New York, NY, USA: Springer.
27. Dixon, P. G., & Gibson, L. J. (2014). "The Structure and Mechanics of Mosco Bamboo Material." Journal of the Royal Society Interface.
28. Dowling, N. E. (2012). Mechanical Behavior of Materials: Engineering Methods for Deformation, Fracture, and Fatigue. Pearson.
29. Draftings.com.au. (2023). Importance of Accurate Manufacturing Drawings In Product Development. Retrieved from https://draftings.com.au/the-importance-of-accurate-manufacturing-drawings-in-product-development/
30. Drury, B., Padfield, C., Russo, M., Swygart, L., Spalton, O., Froggatt, S., & Mofidi, A. (2023). Assessment of the Compression Properties of Different Giant Bamboo Species for Sustainable Construction. Sustainability, 15(8), 6472. https://doi.org/10.3390/su15086472
31. El-Hofy, H. (2018). Fundamentals of machining processes: Conventional and nonconventional processes (3rd ed.). CRC Press.
32. ElProCus – Electronic Projects for Engineering Students. (2019). Piezoelectric Material: Types, Properties, and Characteristics.
33. Evans, J. R., & Lindsay, W. M. (2017). Managing for Quality and Performance Excellence (10th ed.). Cengage Learning.
34. Evans, J. R., & Lindsay, W. M. (2017). Managing for Quality and Performance Excellence (10th ed.). Cengage Learning.
35. Fahim, M., Haris, M., Khan, W., & Zaman, S. (2022). Bamboo as a construction material: prospects and challenges. Advances in Science and Technology. Research Journal, 16(3).
36. García, F. (2020). Bamboo and Sustainable Materials. CRC Press.
37. Gebhardt, A., Kessler, J., & Thurn, L. (2019). Additive Manufacturing: 3D Printing for Prototyping and Manufacturing (2nd ed.). Hanser Publishers.
38. Ghana Standards Authority. (2019). National Quality Policy. Accra: GSA.
39. Gibson, I., Rosen, D., Stucker, B., & Khorasani, M. (2020). Additive Manufacturing Technologies (3rd ed.). Springer
40. Gibson, I., Rosen, D., Stucker, B., & Khorasani, M. (2021). Additive Manufacturing Technologies (4th ed.). Springer.

41. Gibson, I., Rosen, D.W., & Stucker, B. (2014). Additive Manufacturing Technologies: 3D Printing, Rapid Prototyping, and Direct Digital Manufacturing (2nd ed.). Springer.
42. Gibson, I., Rosen, D. W., & Stucker, B. (2015). Additive Manufacturing Technologies: 3D Printing, Rapid Prototyping, and Direct Digital Manufacturing. Springer.
43. Gielis, J. (2015). Bamboo–The plant and its uses. The Journal of the American Bamboo Society, 40.
44. Giesecke, F. E., Mitchell, A., Spencer, H. C., Hill, I. L., Dygdon, J. T., Novak, J. E., Loving, R. O., Lockhart, S., & Johnson, C. M. (2016). Technical Drawing with Engineering Graphics. Peachpit Press.
45. Gitlow, H. S., & Levine, D. M. (2019). Statistics and Quality Control for Engineers and Manufacturers. McGraw-Hill.
46. Groover, M. P. (2012). Fundamentals of Modern Manufacturing. Wiley, Hoboken, NJ. Chapters 6–9.
47. Groover, M. P. (2020). Fundamentals of Modern Manufacturing (8th ed.). Wiley.
48. Groover, M. P. (2020). Fundamentals of Modern Manufacturing: Materials, Processes, and Systems (7th ed.). Wiley.
49. Groover, M. P. (2021). Fundamentals of modern manufacturing: Materials, processes, and systems (7th ed., International adaptation). John Wiley & Sons.
50. Halbleiter (2020). Conductors-insulators-semiconductors. [Available online] https://www.halbleiter.org/en/fundamentals/conductors-insulators-semiconductors/
51. Handana, M. A. P., Surbakti, B., & Karolina, R. (2020). The Effect of Borax Solution as Preservative to the Mechanical Properties of Bamboo. International Journal of Sustainable Construction Engineering and Technology, 11(2). https://doi.org/10.30880/ijscet.2020.11.02.009
52. Hu, C. (2020). Modern semiconductor devices for integrated circuits. Wiley.
53. Husna, A., Ashrafi, S., Tomal, A. A., Tuli, N. T., & Rashid, A. B. (2024). Recent advancements in stereolithography (SLA) and their optimization of process parameters for sustainable manufacturing. Hybrid Advances, 100307.
54. ISO (2021). ISO 9001:2015 Quality Management Systems — Requirements. Geneva: International Organisation for Standardisation.
55. Janssen, J. J. A. (2018). Building with Bamboo: A Handbook. Intermediate Technology Publications.
56. Jariwala, D., Marks, T. J., & Hersam, M. C. (2017). Mixed-dimensional van der Waals heterostructures. Nature materials, 16(2), 170-181.
57. John, J., & Smith, A. (2017). Introduction to Material Properties. New York: Manufacturing Press.
58. Kalpakjian, S., & Schmid, S. (2014). Manufacturing Engineering and Technology (7th ed.). Pearson.
59. Kalpakjian, S., & Schmid, S. (2020). Manufacturing Engineering & Technology (8th ed.). Pearson.
60. Kalpakjian, S., & Schmid, S. R. (2016). Manufacturing Engineering and Technology (7th ed.). Pearson Education.
61. Kelkar, B. U., Shukla, S. R., Nagraik, P., & Paul, B. N. (2023). Structural bamboo composites: a review of processing, factors affecting properties and recent advances. Advances in Bamboo Science, 3, 100026.

62. Khorasani, M., Loy, J., Ghasemi, A. H., Sharabian, E., Leary, M., Mirafzal, H., ... & Gibson, I. (2022). A review of Industry 4.0 and additive manufacturing synergy. Rapid Prototyping Journal, 28(8), 1462-1475.

63. Lakkad, S., & Patel, J. (2018). Mechanical Properties of Bamboo. INBAR Technical Report.

64. Liesel, W., & Tang, T. K. H. (2015). Bamboo: The Plant and its Uses. Springer.

65. Liu, T.-H., Wen, Y.-L., Li, G.-Q., & Nie, X.-N. (2020). Optimization and Experimental Study of an Intelligent Bamboo-Splitting Machine Charging Manipulator. Journal of Robotics, 2020, 1–10. https://doi.org/10.1155/2020/4675301

66. Madsen, D. A., & Madsen, D. P. (2017). Engineering drawing & design (Sixth). Delmar Thompson Learning.

67. Manufacturing-Engineering-Curriculum. (2023). Ghana Education Service.

68. Meviy Europe. (2024). Understanding Technical Drawings for CNC Parts – Cycle 1. Retrieved from [https://de.meviy.misumi-ec.com/info/en/blog-en/design-school-en/

69. Monika. (2024). Understanding Creep Deformation in Engineering Materials. Goldsupplier. https://blog.goldsupplier.com/creep-in-engineering-materials/

70. Monikh, F. A., Peijnenburg, W., Oomen, A. G., Valsami-Jones, E., Stone, V., Kortet, R., Akkanen, J., Zhang, P., Kekäläinen, J., Sevcu, A., & Kukkonen, J. V. K. (2022). "Advanced materials" and the challenges on the horizon for testing their (eco)toxicity and assessing their hazard. Environmental Science Advances, 2(2), 162–170. https://doi.org/10.1039/d2va00128d

71. Mousavi, S. R., Zamani, M. H., Estaji, S., Tayouri, M. I., Arjmand, M., Jafari, S. H., Nouranian, S., & Khonakdar, H. A. (2022). Mechanical properties of bamboo fiber-reinforced polymer composites: a review of recent case studies. Journal of Materials Science. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10853-021-06854-6

72. Mwema, F. M., & Akinlabi, E. T. (2020). Basics of fused deposition modelling (FDM). Fused deposition modelling: strategies for quality enhancement, 1-15.

73. Narayana, K. L., Kannaiah, P., & Venkata Reddy, K. (2009). Machine Drawing (Third, pp. 1–451). New Age International.

74. Neamen, D. (2020). Semiconductor physics and devices (5th ed.). McGraw-Hill.

75. Neupane, P. (2022). Common biomaterials questions. Kathmandu, Nepal. [Available Online] https://www.pravhakar.com.np/2022/07/common-biomaterials-question.html.Top of Form

76. Oberg, E., Jones, F. D., Horton, H. L., Ryffel, H. H., & McCauley, C. J. (Eds.). (2020). Machinery's handbook (31st ed.). Industrial Press.

77. Ogunbiyi, M. A., Olawale, S. O., Tudjegbe, O. E., & Akinola, S. R. (2015). Comparative analysis of the tensile strength of bamboo and reinforcement steel bars as structural member in building construction. Int. J. Sci. Technol. Res, 4, 551-553.

78. Omnifab. (2024). Manufacturing drawing: definition, role and types. Retrieved from https://omnifab.ca/en/manufacturing-drawing/

79. Pacheco-Torgal, F. et al. (2013). Nanotechnology in Eco-Efficient Construction. Woodhead Publishing.

80. Pooja. (2020). Most Common Causes of Gear Failure. Santram. https://www.santramengineers.com/most-common-causes-of-gear-failure/

81. Prianto, E., & Pramono, H. S. (2021). IOT-based 3D printer development for Student Competence Improvement. In Journal of Physics: Conference Series (Vol. 2111, No. 1, p. 012002). IOP Publishing.

82. Rao, P. N. (2018). Manufacturing Technology: Metal Cutting and Machine Tools (4th ed.). McGraw-Hill Education.

83. Rao, P. N. (2018). Manufacturing Technology: Metal Cutting and Machine Tools (4th ed.). McGraw-Hill Education.

84. Rashid, A. B., Haque, M., Islam, S. M., & Labib, K. R. U. (2024). Nanotechnology-enhanced fibre-reinforced polymer composites: Recent advancements on processing techniques and applications. Heliyon, 10(2).

85. Ratner, B. D., Hoffman, A. S., Schoen, F. J., Lemons, J. E., Wagner, W. R., Sakiyama-Elbert, S. E., ... & Yaszemski, M. J. (2020). Introduction—biomaterials science: an evolving, multidisciplinary endeavor. Biomaterials Science: An Introduction to Materials in Medicine; Wagner, W., Sakiyama-Elbert, S., Zhang, G., Yaszemski, M., Eds, 3-19.

86. Rieder, H., Dillhöfer, A., Spies, M., Bamberg, J., & Hess, T. (2014, October). Online monitoring of additive manufacturing processes using ultrasound. In Proceedings of the 11th European Conference on Non-destructive testing (Vol. 1, pp. 2194-2201).

87. Sabner, S. (2020). Fundamentals of Technical Drawings - Essential Information. Retrieved from https://sabner.com/fundamentals-of-technical-drawings/

88. Sekmen, K., Rehbein, T., Johlitz, M., Lion, A., & Constantinescu, A. (2024). Thermal analysis and shrinkage characterisation of the photopolymers for DLP additive manufacturing processes. Continuum Mechanics and Thermodynamics, 36(2), 351-368.

89. Shakor, P., Nejadi, S., Paul, G., & Malek, S. (2019). Review of emerging additive manufacturing technologies in 3D printing of cementitious materials in the construction industry. Frontiers in Built Environment, 4, 85.

90. Simpson, T.W., Yu, J., & Jiao, J. (2020). Design for Additive Manufacturing: Guidelines and Applications for Industrial 3D Printing. CRC Press.

91. Singh, L. P., & Singh, H. (2021). Engineering Drawing. Cambridge University Press.

92. Smith, G. T. (2016). “Cutting Tool Technology: Industrial Handbook.” Elsevier

93. Smith, W. F., & Hashemi, J. (2018). Foundations of Materials Science and Engineering. McGraw-Hill Education.

94. Tiwari, A., Murugan, N. A., & Ahuja, R. (2016). Advanced Engineering Materials and Modeling. John Wiley & Sons.

95. Trujillo, D. J., & Lopez, L. F. (2020). Bamboo material characterisation. In Nonconventional and vernacular construction materials (pp. 491-520). Woodhead Publishing.

96. Velling, A. (2020). Material Fatigue Strength - Limits & Failure Explained. Fractory. https://fractory.com/material-fatigue-strength/

97. Walker, J. R., & Dixon, B. (2021). Machining Fundamentals (11th ed.). Goodheart-Willcox.

98. Wang, L., Zhang, Z., Zhang, R., Tai, Z., Liu, Z., & Lu, B. (2024). Non-heat source forming technology of binder jetting metal powder and its post-treatment process. The International Journal of Advanced Manufacturing Technology, 132(3), 2077-2089.

99. Wen, M., Afshar, Y., Elliott, R. S., & Tadmor, E. B. (2022). KLIFF: A framework to develop physics-based and machine learning interatomic potentials. Computer Physics Communications, 272, 108218.

100. Wikipedia contributors. (2024). Engineering drawing. In Wikipedia, The Free Encyclopedia. Retrieved from https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Engineering_drawing

101. Wikipedia contributors. (2024). Geometric dimensioning and tolerancing. In Wikipedia, The Free Encyclopedia. Retrieved from https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Geometric_dimensioning_and_tolerancing

102. Yu, Z., Xu, W., Shao, J., Zhao, H., & Wang, W. (2015a). Experimental investigation of creep behavior of clastic rock in Xiangjiaba Hydropower Project. Water Science and Engineering, 8(1), 55–62. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.wse.2015.01.005

103. Zhang, B. T., Zheng, X., Li, H. F., & Lin, J. M. (2013). Application of carbon-based nanomaterials in sample preparation: A review.

104. Živanović, S., Tabaković, S., & Randjelović, S. (2019). Rapid prototyping of art sculptural shapes according to the sample. Advanced Technologies and Materials, 44(1), 27-32.

GLOSSARY

- **3D Printing:** A rapid prototyping technology that creates objects by adding material layer by layer from a digital design.
- **Abrasive Process:** Material removal using hard particles to smooth or finish surfaces.
- **Alloy:** A mixture of two or more metals, or a metal and another element.
- **Bamboo:** A fast-growing woody grass used as a sustainable construction material.
- **Biomaterials:** Materials engineered to interact with biological systems for medical purposes.
- **Brittle fracture:** A type of material failure that occurs with little or no plastic deformation, often propagating rapidly and resulting in a smooth, shiny fracture surface.
- **CAD (Computer-Aided Design):** The use of software to create precise drawings and technical illustrations for engineering and manufacturing purposes.
- **Calibration:** Adjusting measuring instruments to ensure accuracy.
- **Centre Lathe:** A Machine tool for rotating workpieces and shaping them with cutting tools.
- **Certification:** Official recognition that a product or process meets set standards.
- **Chip:** Small piece of material removed during machining.
- **Chuck:** A Device that securely holds the workpiece in a lathe.
- **CNC (Computer Numerical Control):** A process using computerised controls to operate and manipulate machine tools for manufacturing parts.
- **Composites:** Materials made from two or more constituent substances with different properties.
- **Compressive loads:** Forces that act to compress or shorten a material or structure, typically resulting in a pushing or squeezing action that can lead to buckling or crushing if the material's strength is exceeded.
- **Control Chart:** A graph used to monitor process stability in manufacturing.
- **Conventional machining:** Traditional processes such as turning, milling, and drilling.
- **Creep:** The slow, continuous deformation of a material under constant stress, usually occurring at elevated temperatures over a long period.
- **Cutting Speed:** Rate at which the cutting tool moves against the material.
- **Cutting tool:** Device used to remove material from a workpiece.
- **Defect:** An error or flaw that makes a product unsuitable for use.
- **Depth of Cut:** How deep the tool penetrates the workpiece in one pass.
- **Dimensioning:** The process of adding measurements to a drawing to define the size and location of features.
- **Drilling:** Process of making holes in a material using a rotating drill bit.
- **Ductile fracture:** A type of material failure characterised by significant plastic deformation before separation, often resulting in a rough and fibrous fracture surface.
- **Eco-Efficient Construction:** Building methods that minimise environmental impact and resource use.
- **Engineering Drawing:** A technical illustration that communicates how something is constructed or functions, commonly used in engineering and manufacturing.

- **Failure:** The loss of ability of a material or structure to perform its intended function.
- **Fatigue:** The progressive and localised structural damage that occurs when a material is subjected to repeated or fluctuating stresses, often leading to failure after a certain number of cycles.
- **Feed:** The rate at which the cutting tool advances into the workpiece.
- **Feedback:** Information from users or testers is used to improve prototypes during the rapid prototyping process.
- **Feed rate:** Speed at which the tool advances into the workpiece.
- **Fibre-Reinforced Polymer:** A composite material made by reinforcing a polymer with fibrous materials.
- **Forensic engineering:** The application of engineering knowledge to investigate material or structural failures.
- **Geometric Dimensioning and Tolerancing (GD&T):** A symbolic language used on engineering drawings to specify allowable variations in geometry and dimensions.
- **Grinding:** Using a spinning wheel with hard particles to smooth or shape a material.
- **Inspection:** Examining products or materials to identify defects or ensure quality.
- **Interatomic Potentials:** Mathematical models to describe interactions between atoms in materials.
- **Isometric Drawing:** A method of visually representing three-dimensional objects in two dimensions, using angles to show three sides.
- **Machine Learning:** Computer algorithms that improve automatically through experience and data.
- **Machining:** Manufacturing process involving the removal of material by cutting.
- **Manufacturing Drawing:** Detailed drawings that provide all the information required to manufacture a part or product.
- **Material properties:** Characteristics that define the behaviour of a substance under various conditions.
- **Material removal rate:** Volume of material removed per unit time.
- **Mean:** The average value of a set of measurements.
- **Metal Printing:** A rapid prototyping method using strong metals to create durable test parts, often used in aerospace.
- **Milling:** Removing material from a workpiece using a rotating multi-edge cutter.
- **Nanotechnology:** The manipulation of matter on an atomic or molecular scale, usually below 100 nanometres.
- **Non-destructive Testing:** Methods of inspecting materials without causing damage.
- **Nonconventional machining:** Advanced processes not using direct tool-workpiece contact, e.g., EDM.
- **Nonconventional Materials:** Building materials not traditionally used in mainstream construction.
- **Nontraditional Process:** Material removal using energy sources like electricity or chemicals.
- **Orthographic Projection:** A way of representing a three-dimensional object using several two-dimensional views, typically front, top, and side.

- **Pareto Chart:** A bar graph that highlights the most frequent causes of problems.
- **Polymer:** A large molecule composed of many repeated subunits, used in plastics and composites.
- **Process:** A series of actions used to manufacture a part.
- **Product Development:** The process of designing, creating, and bringing a new product to market.
- **Projection:** The method of depicting three-dimensional objects on a two-dimensional surface by projecting points onto planes.
- **Prototype:** A test model of a product made quickly to check design, function, and usability before mass production.
- **Quality Assurance (QA):** Systematic activities to prevent defects by improving processes.
- **Quality Control (QC):** Activities focused on detecting and removing defects in products.
- **Rake Angle:** Angle of the cutting tool's face that affects chip removal.
- **Rapid Prototyping:** The process of quickly creating physical models from digital designs to test and improve products.
- **Reinforcement Steel Bars:** Steel rods used to strengthen and support concrete structures.
- **Relief Angle (Clearance Angle):** The Tool angle that prevents scraping on the finished surface.
- **Resilience:** The ability of a material or system to recover from failure or stress.
- **Risk analysis:** The process of evaluating potential causes and consequences of material failure.
- **Sample Preparation:** The process of treating materials for analysis or testing.
- **Sampling:** Selecting a portion of products for inspection to represent the whole batch.
- **Scale:** The ratio between the dimensions in a drawing and the actual dimensions of the object.
- **Section View:** A drawing view that shows the internal features of an object by cutting through it.
- **Specification:** The detailed requirements a product or process must meet.
- **Standard Deviation:** A measure of how spread out the measurements are from the mean.
- **Structural analysis:** The examination of how structures respond to loads, stresses, and potential failures.
- **Surface finish:** The texture or smoothness of a machined surface.
- **Technical Drawing:** A precise and detailed graphic representation used to communicate how something is constructed or functions.
- **Tensile Strength:** The maximum stress a material can withstand while being stretched or pulled.
- **Tensile stress:** The force per unit area experienced by a material when subjected to a stretching or pulling load.
- **Testing:** The process of trying out prototypes to identify strengths and weaknesses, helping guide improvements.
- **Tolerance:** The acceptable range of variation in a product's feature.
- **Tolerance:** The allowable variation in a physical dimension.

- **Tolerance:** The permissible limit or limits of variation in a physical dimension or measured value.
- **Tool wear:** Gradual loss of material from the cutting tool during use.
- **Turning:** A Machining process where a cutting tool removes material from a rotating workpiece.
- **Turning:** Shaping a rotating workpiece by removing material from its exterior.
- **Vernacular Construction:** Building using local materials and traditional methods.
- **View:** A specific angle or perspective from which a drawing of an object is made, such as front, top, or side.
- **Visual Inspection:** Checking products by sight for obvious defects or inconsistencies.
- **Workholding Device:** Apparatus to secure a workpiece during machining operations.
- **Workpiece:** The item or material being machined or shaped.
- **Workpiece:** The object being machined or processed.
- **Yield strength:** The stress at which a material begins to deform permanently.

Acknowledgements

Ghana Education Service (GES)

List of Contributors

Name	Institution
Isaac Appiah Mensah	GHANA SEC TECH SCHOOL
Benjamin Asaaga	Kwame Nkrumah University of Science and Technology